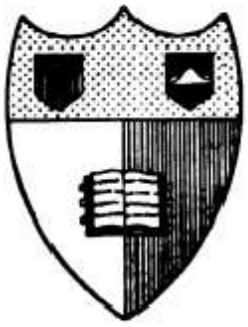
Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

QJ
161
H15
Cop. 2
M050



Cornell University Library
Ithaca, New York

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME OF THE
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND
THE GIFT OF
HENRY W. SAGE
1891

Digitized by Google
Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

DATE DUE

JAN 16 1995

JUN 1 1998

SEP 18 2004

Due Back Upon
Recall or Leaving
The University

GAYLORD PRINTED IN U.S.A.

Cornell University Library
G 161.H15 2nd ser. no.47,50
v.2
The chronicle of Muntaner.
3 1924 020 315 952

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google
Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

WORKS ISSUED BY

The Hakluyt Society

THE

CHRONICLE OF MUNTANER.

VOL. II.

SECOND SERIES.

No. L.

ISSUED FOR 1921

W

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

A501143

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

COUNCIL

OF

THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

SIR ALBERT GRAY, K.C.B., K.C., *President.*
SIR JOHN SCOTT KELTIE, LL.D., *Vice-President.*
ADMIRAL OF THE FLEET THE RIGHT HON. SIR EDWARD HOBART SEYMOUR, G.C.B., O.M., G.C.V.O., LL.D., *Vice-President.*
BOLTON GLANVILL CORNEY, ESQ., I.S.O.
M. LONGWORTH DAMES, ESQ.
WILLIAM FOSTER, ESQ., C.I.E.
EDWARD HEAWOOD, ESQ., *Treasurer.*
ARTHUR R. HINKS, ESQ., C.B.E., F.R.S.
SIR JOHN F. F. HORNER, K.C.V.O.
SIR EVERARD IM THURN, K.C.M.G., K.B.E., C.B.
T. ATHOL JOYCE, ESQ., O.B.E.
LIEUT.-COLONEL SIR FREDERIC G. KENYON, K.C.B., P.B.A., LITT.D.
SIR CHARLES LUCAS, K.C.B., K.C.M.G.
ALFRED P. MAUDSLAY, ESQ., D.SC.
LIEUT.-COLONEL RIGHT HON. SIR MATTHEW NATHAN, G.C.M.G. R.E.
BRIG.-GEN. SIR PERCY M. SYKES, K.C.I.E., C.B., C.M.G.
H. R. TEDDER, ESQ.
LIEUT.-COLONEL SIR RICHARD CARNAC TEMPLE, BART., C.B., C.I.E., F.S.A.
SIR BASIL HOME THOMSON, K.C.B.
SIR REGINALD TOWER, K.C.M.G., C.V.O.
J. A. J. DE VILLIERS, ESQ., *Hon. Secretary.*

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

THE

CHRONICLE OF MUNTANER.

TRANSLATED FROM THE CATALAN

BY

LADY GOODENOUGH.

VOL. II

WITH ONE MAP.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

MCMXXI.

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

LONDON :

PRINTED AT THE BEDFORD PRESS, 20 AND 21, BEDFORDBURY, W.C.

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER CXLVII.

PAGE

How the death of the Lord King En Pedro became known in Mallorca and in Sicily; and of the laments and weepings of all the people of Messina . . 371

CHAPTER CXLVIII.

How the Infante En Jaime was crowned King of Sicily at Palermo; and of the great feasts that were made there; and how he had twenty galleys equipped and made En Berenguer de Sarriá commander thereof . . 372

CHAPTER CXLIX.

How the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá harried all the coast of Amalfi as far as the fief of Rome where he captured galleys, lenys and barges 373

CHAPTER CL.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily passed into Calabria to wage war; and how he took it all easily, except the castle of Stilero 375

CHAPTER CLI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon on hearing of the death of his father hastened in such manner that in a short time he took Mallorca and Ibiza and returned to Barcelona where a feast was made for him . . 376

CHAPTER CLII.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria harried all the coast of Provence and sacked Serignan and Agde and Vias, without any woman or child under fifteen, or man over sixty years old being killed . . . 378

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLIII.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon went to Santas-Creus, where he had the sarcophagus of his father absolved and fifty masses said daily for a time . 382

CHAPTER CLIV.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria went to Tortosa with the fleet and left his nephew En Juan de Luria as head and chief of the fleet whilst he was at the coronation of the Lord King 383

CHAPTER CLV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon was crowned at Saragossa; and of the feasts and sports that were held; and how En Juan de Luria burned and pillaged many places in Barbary; and how the admiral embarked to pass into Sicily 384

CHAPTER CLVI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon decided to take revenge for the fault committed by King En Sancho of Castile against the Lord King En Pedro, his father, and to bring the sons of the Infante En Fernando of Castile out of the castle of Jativa and make one of them King of Castile 385

CHAPTER CLVII.

How, the council over, the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon decided to defy King En Sancho of Castile and sent two knights with the challenges; and how the Infante En Pedro prepared to invade Castile . . . 387

CHAPTER CLVIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon received the crown of the Kingdom of Valencia and took his cousins out of Játiva; and how he decided to invade Castile in person with all his men; and how, as he was marching to Castile, there came a message to him from the count of Ampurias that the French wished to invade Ampurdan 389

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLIX.

PAGE

How the admiral En Roger de Luria on the way to Sicily ravaged Barbary and harried the island of Jerba and Tolmetta and won the battle of Matagrifon, and fought with the French at Brindisi, and took the bridge from them and arrived at Messina where a great feast was made for him 393

CHAPTER CLX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon summoned his hosts in Catalonia with pay for four months; and how he entered Roussillon with them to see whether Frenchmen had invaded Ampurdan 397

CHAPTER CLXI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon held a tournament at Figueras of two hundred against two hundred; and how he fought Viscount Rocaberti and En Gisbert de Castellnou 397

CHAPTER CLXII.

How messengers from the Pope and from the King of France and from the King of England came to the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon to sue for peace and for the release of King Charles who was in prison . . 398

CHAPTER CLXIII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily prepared to pass into Calabria and the Principality with all his hosts and to conquer Naples and Gaeta 399

CHAPTER CLXIV.

How the Count of Artois, hearing of the preparations made in Sicily, went to Naples and Salerno with all his forces and with succours from the Apostolic . . . 401

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXV.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily set his course for Salerno and the admiral sailed along the coast of Amalfi and carried off all the ships and terides from the port of Naples and besieged Gaeta . . . 402

CHAPTER CLXVI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon had an interview with the King of England and married the daughter of the said King of England; and of the great feasts and dances and sports made 403

CHAPTER CLXVII.

How the King of England negotiated to get King Charles out of prison; and how the said King Charles, being in prison, had a vision bidding him seek the body of my Lady Saint Mary Magdalen, which he found in the place he had seen in his vision 405

CHAPTER CLXVIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon departed from Oloron, accompanied by the King of England; and how King Charles had an interview with the King of Mallorca and with the King of France 406

CHAPTER CLXIX.

How King Charles sent his three sons with twenty sons of nobles of Provence to the Lord King of Aragon as hostages; and how he asked for succour from the King of France and the Apostolic because he had heard that the King of Sicily was besieging Gaeta . . . 407

CHAPTER CLXX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon resolved to conquer Minorca and sent to tell his brother, the Lord King of Sicily; and sent to tell the admiral En Roger de Luria to come with forty armed galleys; and how the admiral came, and went to conquer Minorca . . . 409

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXI.

PAGE

Recounts the great miracle which happened to an almugavar who was from Segorbe because he would eat meat on Christmas Eve 411

CHAPTER CLXXII.

How the Lord King of Aragon and all his fleet met with a great storm as he was going to conquer Minorca; and how he conquered all the island, and in what manner; and how the admiral, on returning to Sicily, met with a storm and ran as far as Trapani 413

CHAPTER CLXXIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon sent his messengers to negotiate the peace with King Charles at Tarascon where peace was arranged as suited the Lord King of Aragon and to the great honour of the Lord King of Sicily; and how the Lord King En Alfonso fell ill of a tumour 417

CHAPTER CLXXIV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon passed from this life owing to a tumour which formed in his groin . 421

CHAPTER CLXXV.

How the count of Ampurias and other richs homens were elected to go to Sicily to bring the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily to Catalonia; and how my Lady the Queen, his mother, and the Infante En Fadrique, his brother, remained as heads and chiefs of Sicily and all Calabria 422

CHAPTER CLXXVI.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon embarked at Trapani to pass into Catalonia and disembarked at Barcelona where he had masses celebrated for the soul of King En Alfonso, his brother, and at Santas Creus for the Lord King En Pedro, his father; and how he was crowned at Saragossa and promised succour to Don Alfonso of Castile 424

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXVII.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon came to Valencia and was crowned with the crown of the Kingdom and how messengers of King En Sancho of Castile came to him begging for peace, which he concluded between himself and the King of Castile and his nephews . 427

CHAPTER CLXXVIII.

How the Lord King of Aragon and Sicily maintained all his kingdom in peace and curbed factions which he would not allow in cities nor towns, and especially destroyed the faction of the Garidells and the Carbons and the Puixs at Tortosa 431

CHAPTER CLXXIX.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria held a round table at Calatayud; and how the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon and Sicily and the King of Castile visited him, which was a great honour . . . 432

CHAPTER CLXXX.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria returned to Sicily and passed into Calabria with the Lord Infante En Fadrique and they governed the country with truth and justice . 434

CHAPTER CLXXXI.

How King Charles proceeded to treat for peace with the House of Aragon and how, for this purpose, the Apostolic sent a cardinal with King Charles to the King of France to beg him to make peace between the House of Aragon and King Charles; which monsenyer En Charles would not grant unless King Charles gave him the county of Anjou 436

CHAPTER CLXXXII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon confirmed the peace between himself and King Charles and the House of France; and how the marriage of the said Lord En 439

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

PAGE

Jaime of Aragon with my Lady Blanca, daughter of King Charles, was celebrated; and how the eldest son of King Charles and the eldest son of the King of Mallorca renounced the kingdoms and entered the Order of monsenyer Saint Francis 439

CHAPTER CLXXXIII.

How my Lady Queen Blanca obtained from the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon that he assign an hereditament to the Infante En Pedro and arrange a marriage for him; wherefore the Infante took to wife my Lady Guillerma de Moncada 443

CHAPTER CLXXXIV.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon sent messengers to Sicily to En Ramon Alamany and En Vilaragut with orders to abandon Sicily; and how the people seized villages and castles in the name of the Infante Fadrique 444

CHAPTER CLXXXV.

How the Lord Infante En Fadrique seized the Kingdom of Sicily and assigned a day on which all should be at Palermo where with great solemnity he was crowned with the crown of the Kingdom of Sicily . . . 445

CHAPTER CLXXXVI.

How the Lord King of Aragon surrendered the islands of Mallorca and Minorca and Ibiza to the King of Mallorca, his uncle, and went to the Pope to treat of peace between his brother, King Fadrique, and King Charles; and how the King of Castile defied the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon 448

CHAPTER CLXXXVII.

How war broke out again between the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon and King Fernando of Castile; and how the Infante En Pedro invaded Castile with large forces and besieged the city of Leon; and the Lord King En Jaime decided to invade the Kingdom of Murcia by sea and by land 450

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXXVIII.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon took the city of Alicante and the castle by assault and many other castles and towns of Murcia and the greater part of the Kingdom; and how he garrisoned all the country and left, as procurator, the noble En Jaime Pedro, his brother 451

CHAPTER CLXXXIX.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon had news that the Infante En Pedro, his brother, and En Ramon de Anglesola had died at Leon; and how he returned to Aragon with banners unfurled 454

CHAPTER CXC.

How two knights of Catania and Ser Virgili of Naples surrendered the city of Catania to Duke Robert, eldest son of King Charles, whom the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon left at Catania when he was going for the second time to the Pope 455

CHAPTER CXCI.

How three barons came from France with three hundred knights to aid King Charles and to avenge the death of their kinsmen; and how they, wishing to procure the death of Count Galceran and of Don Blasco de Alagon, procured their own 456

CHAPTER CXCII.

How King Charles sent his son, the prince of Taranto, to Sicily with twelve hundred armed horse and fifty galleys; and how he was defeated at Trapani by the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily and taken and imprisoned in the castle of Cefalu 459

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXCIII.

PAGE

How King Charles and the Apostolic sent word to King Philip of France to be pleased to send his brother, micer Charles, to Sicily for the Pope would provide for him from the treasure of St. Peter; which was granted by him and the Twelve Peers of France . . . 464

CHAPTER CXCIV.

Recounts the beginnings of Frey Roger, who was afterwards so exalted; and of the great deeds of prowess he performed in his life 466

CHAPTER CXCV.

How Duke Robert besieged Messina with all his power and how, hearing this, the Lord King En Fadrique sent Don Blasco and count Galceran to Messina with succours, and how Duke Robert, hearing this, passed into Calabria, whereat all they of Messina were much displeased 472

CHAPTER CXCVI.

How Messina being on the point of being abandoned owing to famine was revived by Frey Roger with ten galleys loaded with wheat; wherefore the duke had to raise the siege on the following day and returned to Catania 474

CHAPTER CXCVII.

How micer Charles of France passed into Sicily with four thousand knights and landed at Termini and besieged Sciacca, where out of four thousand they could not collect five hundred, for all had died of sickness . . 476

CHAPTER CXCVIII.

How the interview between the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily and micer Charles of France took place and of the peace which was treated of and concluded; and how the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily married Naleonor, daughter of King Charles . . 477

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXCIX.

PAGE

How Frey Roger began to treat of the passage into Romania and sent messengers to the Emperor of Constantinople to let him know that he was ready to go there with Catalans and that the Emperor was to marry him to the niece of the Emperor Lantzaura and must make him Grand Duke; all of which was granted by the Emperor 480

CHAPTER CC.

How the messengers of Frey Roger returned from Constantinople to Messina with every success and all grants; and he was made Grand Duke of all Romania; and how the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily caused ten galleys and two lenys to be given him, and assisted him with money and provided him with victuals . 484

CHAPTER CCI.

How Frey Roger, Grand Duke of Romania, took leave of the Lord King of Sicily and passed into Romania with two thousand five hundred armed knights and five thousand almugavars and footsoldiers . . . 485

CHAPTER CCII.

How the Grand Duke landed at Monemvasia and passed into Constantinople, where he was well received by the Emperor and his son; and how Catalans and Genoese had a quarrel in which full three thousand Genoese were killed 486

CHAPTER CCIII.

How the Grand Duke passed into Anatolia and landed at Cape Artaqui without the knowledge of the Turks and attacked them and delivered from captivity all the country conquered by them, and wintered at Artaqui 489

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCIV.

PAGE

How the Grand Duke went to Constantinople to leave the Grand Duchess there; and how he obtained four months' pay from the Emperor; and of the great presents he made to all his Company 494

CHAPTER CCV.

How the Grand Duke and his Company had a second battle with the bands of Cesa and Tiu and vanquished and killed them near Philadelphia 496

CHAPTER CCVI.

How the Turks were vanquished by En Corberan de Alet at Tyre where he was wounded by an arrow and died; and how En Berenguer de Rocafort came to Constantinople with two galleys and two hundred knights and went to Ephesus, where is the tomb of monsenyer Saint John the Evangelist 497

CHAPTER CCVII.

How the Grand Duke went to Ayasaluck and made En Berenguer de Rocafort seneschal of the host; and how they discomfited the Turks of the band of Atia who, joined a second time with all the Turks, were vanquished and full eighteen thousand killed at the Iron Gate . . 500

CHAPTER CCVIII.

How the Emperor of Constantinople sent to tell the Grand Duke to leave everything and return to Constantinople in order to come and help him against the Emperor Lantzaura, who had rebelled against the Empire . 502

CHAPTER CCIX.

How the Grand Duke, having received the message of the Emperor of Constantinople, held a council to consider what he should do, in which it was agreed that he should at all costs go and assist the Emperor . 503

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCX.

PAGE

How when the Emperor Lantzaura knew of the arrival of the Grand Duke he treated with the Emperor of Constantinople, saying he would do all he wished; and how hatred arose between the Emperor of Constantinople and the Grand Duke 505

CHAPTER CCXI.

How the noble En Berenguer de Entenza came to Romania with his Company and was made Grand Duke by Frey Roger 506

CHAPTER CCXII.

How, at the end of four hundred years, during which the Empire had been without a Cæsar, Frey Roger was made Cæsar by the Emperor of Constantinople; and how he wintered at Gallipoli, and by agreement passed into Anatolia 507

CHAPTER CCXIII.

How the Cæsar resolved to go and take leave of Skyr Miqueli, in spite of his mother-in-law and of his wife, who were sure of the envy Skyr Miqueli felt towards him . 509

CHAPTER CCXIV.

In which is recounted what sort of country Gallipoli is, and what forces are there and mention is made also of Paris and Arena 510

CHAPTER CCXV.

How the Cæsar came to the city of Adrianople to take leave of Skyr Miqueli, who had him and all his retinue killed by Gircon, chief of the Alans; not more than three escaped; and how he sent men to Gallipoli to raid the country and destroy the Company of the Cæsar . 512

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXVI.

PAGE

How the Company of the Cæsar resolved to defy the Emperor and impeach him for bad faith and for what he had done; and how the Emperor of Constantinople had En Ferran de Ahones, the admiral, killed with all the Catalans and Aragonese who were at Constantinople 515

CHAPTER CCXVII.

How the messengers sent to the Emperor to defy him were taken prisoners and massacred in the city of Rodosto; and of the miracle of the Bay of Marmora, where a great number of Babes have been killed by Herod . 516

CHAPTER CCXVIII.

How En Berenguer de Entenza after sacking Eregli met eighteen Genoese galleys, by whom he was taken prisoner owing to his trusting to their word; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, wanted to give ten thousand gold hyperpers in order that he should be delivered through me 517

CHAPTER CCXIX.

How, hearing of the taking of En Berenguer de Entenza and of the death of the messengers at Gallipoli, we assembled a council to consider what we should do, in which it was resolved to scuttle the galleys and all vessels, so that no one could escape or flee without fighting 519

CHAPTER CCXX.

How the Company resolved to fight those Skyr Miqueli had sent against Gallipoli; and how the Company vanquished them and killed full twenty-six thousand, horse and foot 520

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXI.

PAGE

How the Company hearing of the coming of Skyr Miqueli, eldest son of the Emperor of Constantinople, agreed to attack his van, which they defeated; and how Skyr Miqueli escaped, wounded in the face by a dagger . 523

CHAPTER CCXXII.

How the Company plundered the cities of Rodosto and of Panido; and how they did at Rodosto what had been done to their messengers; and how they removed to Rodosto and to Panido; and how En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos came to succour them . . . 527

CHAPTER CCXXIII.

How En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos raided up to near Constantinople and attacked the castle of Maditos at midday and took it; and how the Company divided into three parts 528

CHAPTER CCXXIV.

How Sir Jorge de Cristopol, of the Kingdom of Salonica, made a raid on Gallipoli with eighty horsemen whom I, Ramon Muntaner, defeated with fourteen horsemen . 530

CHAPTER CCXXV.

How En Rocafort went to harry Lestenayre and sacked and burnt all the ships and galleys and terides which were there; and how the Company resolved to fight the Alans and the lot fell to me, En Ramon Muntaner, to stop and guard Gallipoli . 532

CHAPTER CCXXVI.

How the Company departed to fight the Alans and killed Gircon, their chief, and cut down their banners and killed his followers; and what happened to a knight of the Alans for delivering his wife out of the hands of the Company 533

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXVII.

PAGE

Recounts the treaty Sir Antonio Spinola made with the Emperor of Constantinople, and how he defied the Company in the name of the whole Commune of Genoa and came to besiege Gallipoli where he was killed and his men were defeated 536

CHAPTER CCXXVIII.

How the Turk Ximelich wanted to join the Company with eighty horsemen; and how the said Company was increased by eighteen hundred Turkish horsemen . 542

CHAPTER CCXXIX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon delivered En Berenguer de Entenza out of prison, who went to the Pope and to the King of France to beg them for assistance; and how, it being denied him, he passed into Gallipoli; and of the discord there was between him and En Rocafort 544

CHAPTER CCXXX.

How the Most High Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca came to Gallipoli in Romania, where the Company was, under assured covenants with the Lord King Fadrique, King of Sicily; and how he was accepted and fealty was sworn to him as their chief and lord, except by Rocafort and his company, who wished to take the oath to him personally and not for the King of Sicily . . 546

CHAPTER CCXXXI.

How the Lord Infante and the Company departed from the Kingdom of Macedonia and abandoned Gallipoli and the castle of Maditos and burned them and went to the Kingdom of Salonica to wage war . . 552

CHAPTER CCXXXII.

How the Company set out to go to the Kingdom of Salonica, and how, two marches distant from Cristopol, a quarrel arose in the company, in which En Berenguer de Entenza was killed by the hands of the men of En Rocafort . 553

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXXIII.

PAGE

How En Rocafort made his company maintain the resolution on no account to accept the Lord Infante En Ferrando as representative of the Lord King Fadrique, King of Sicily, but only in his own person; wherefore the Lord Infante parted from the Company and came to Sicily and I, En Ramon Muntaner, with him . . . 556

CHAPTER CCXXXIV.

How Sir Ticino Zaccaria came to Gallipoli to beg me, Ramon Muntaner, to be pleased to help him with a company with whom to sack the castle and town of Fogliari, where there were three relics which monsenyer Saint John had left on the altar when he entered the tomb at Ephesus 559

CHAPTER CCXXXV.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando set his course for the port of Almyros and burnt and levelled all there was there, whence he set his course for the island of Spoll, where he attacked the castle and sacked the town; and how he went to the point of the island of Negroponte, where he was captured through trusting the Venetians 562

CHAPTER CCXXXVI.

How the Company rejoiced to see me, Ramon Muntaner, return; and how En Rocafort proceeded to approach micer Charles of France, and made all the Company, against their will, take the oath to En Thibaut de Chépoi as their commander for micer Charles of France 565

CHAPTER CCXXXVII.

How the Venetian galleys parted from the Company and I, Ramon Muntaner, with them, to go and recover what they had taken from me; and how I went to the city of Thebes in order to take leave of the Lord Infante En Ferrando and to show him honour . . . 567

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXXVIII.

PAGE

How I, Ramon Muntaner, took leave of the Lord Infante En Ferrando to go to Sicily; and how the Venetian galleys met those of En Riambaldo Desfar and sent the Lord Infante to King Robert and he came out of prison 569

CHAPTER CCXXXIX.

How En Rocafort was taken prisoner by the Company and handed over to En Thibaut de Chépoi who, without the knowledge of the Company, brought him away and handed him over to King Robert, who had him put in a vault in Aversa where he died of starvation . 572

CHAPTER CCXL.

How the Duke of Athens left the Duchy to the count de Brienne, and how the said count being defied by the Despot of Arta and by the lord of Vlachia and by the Emperor, had the Company to aid him and how when he had recovered all his territory, he wished to procure the death of the Company, in which attempt he and his men were killed 575

CHAPTER CCXLI.

How the Turks parted from the Company and the Genoese captured them at Boca Daner owing to their trusting them; and how those who had remained about Gallipoli were killed by the Emperor of Constantinople 578

CHAPTER CCXLII.

How the Company elected the Infante Manfredo, second son of the King of Sicily, as chief and swore fealty to him as chief and lord; and how he, being so young, the Lord King sent as commander for the Infante, En Berenguer Estanyol, who ruled the host a long time very wisely . 580

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXLIII.

PAGE

How En Berenguer Estanyol having died, the Lord King of Sicily sent En Alfonso Federico, his son, to the Company as representative of the Infante Manfredo; and how, the Infante Manfredo having died, they took the oath to En Alfonso Federico as chief and lord, and the daughter of micer Bonifazio of Verona was given him to wife 581

CHAPTER CCXLIV.

Recounts who micer Bonifazio of Verona was and his descent; and how the Duke of Athens chose to be knighted by the said micer Bonifazio of Verona and bestowed a very great gift and honour on him on the day he was knighted . 583

CHAPTER CCXLV.

How a peace was negotiated between the Lord King of Aragon and the King of Castile, with a covenant that the eldest son of En Jaime of Aragon should marry the daughter of King En Fernando of Castile . . 587

CHAPTER CCXLVI.

How it was arranged between the Lord King of Aragon and the King of Castile that they should march resolutely against the King of Granada, because he had broken the truce; and how the King of Castile went to besiege Algeciras and the King of Aragon Almeria . . 588

CHAPTER CCXLVII.

How the King of Castile raised the siege of Algeciras without the knowledge of the Lord King of Aragon; and how the Lord King of Aragon fought a battle at Almeria against the Saracens and the Lord Infante En Ferrando killed the son of the Saracen king Godix; and how the King of Granada begged the Lord King of Aragon for a truce 589

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXLVIII.

PAGE

How En Roger de Luria, son of the admiral En Roger de Luria, with the help of the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily, went to raise the siege of Jerba, which was besieged by the King of Tunis; and how, passing through Naples, he died and the country was left to his brother En Carlet 593

CHAPTER CCXLIX.

How the Misconas and some Moabias besieged the castle of Jerba and En Carlet with the help of the Lord King of Sicily, Fadrique, going to Jerba, expelled the chivalry and died a short time after; and how, Jerba rebelling a second time, the Lord King sent En Jaime de Castellar who also died there 595

CHAPTER CCL.

How En Simon de Montoliu asked the guardians of En Roger and my Lady Saurina, and the Apostolic and King Robert for help, who all said no to him; and how, they failing him, he came to the Lord King of Sicily, Fadrique, who sent micer Pelegri de Pali with eighteen galleys to where he was defeated and taken prisoner . 597

CHAPTER CCLI.

How En Simon de Montoliu entreated the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily of his mercy to bestow the castle of Jerba and the tower of the Kerkennas upon whomsoever he pleased; and how the said Lord King offered the conquest of Jerba to me, R. Muntaner, and I fitted myself out to conquer it 600

CHAPTER CCLII.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, went to Jerba as commander and received the castle and the homage of all who were there; and how I summoned the Misconas and Alef, their chief, three times and defied them, and put them into a corner of the island, where there was such a famine amongst them that they made bread of the sawdust of palm trees 603

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLIII.

PAGE

How Alef left the island and collected full eight thousand horsemen with fourteen barges, by whom the Christians of the country were discomfited; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, in person attacked them and vanquished them and obtained seventeen barges and took the sound 606

CHAPTER CCLIV.

How all they of Miscona with Alef wished to surrender to me, En Ramon Muntaner; and how the Lord King of Sicily sent micer Conrado Lansa with twenty galleys, with the object of taking vengeance on all; and how the command of the van was given to me, Ramon Muntaner 609

CHAPTER CCLV.

How we had a battle with the Moors of Miscona and defeated them and took twelve thousand people prisoners, what between women and children; and how the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily, by special favour, gave me the island and the Kerkennas for three years . . 611

CHAPTER CCLVI.

How the war between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert broke out again; and how the Lord King of Sicily passed into Calabria and took castles and towns 616

CHAPTER CCLVII.

How the Infante En Fernando of Mallorca passed a second time into Sicily and of the honour shown him; and how En Berenguer de Sarriá stayed at Palermo with his Company and En Dalmau de Castellnou passed into Calabria as Commander and proceeded to wage war 616

CHAPTER CCLVIII.

How King Robert passed into Sicily and landed at Palermo and took Castellamare and besieged Trapani; and how the Lord King sent the Infante En Ferrando to Mount Saint Julian, whence he did great damage to the said King Robert 618

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLIX.

PAGE

How whilst I, Ramon Muntaner, was in Jerba, the noble En Berenguer Carros came with a great force to besiege it for King Robert; and how whilst I was thinking about defending myself, a messenger from King Robert came to Pantanella, whom he sent to tell En Berenguer Carros to return to Trapani 619

CHAPTER CCLX.

How the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily had sixty galleys armed in order to destroy all the host of King Robert; and how the Queen, mother of King Robert and mother-in-law of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord King of Sicily, knowing this, negotiated a truce for a year between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert 621

CHAPTER CCLXI.

Treats of how the Lord of the Morea descends from the Duke of Burgundy who was a grandson of the King of France, and from whom my Lady Isabel, wife of the Lord Infante Ferrando of Mallorca descended in the direct line 625

CHAPTER CCLXII.

How the barons of the Principality of Morea decided to make a marriage between the infant princess of Morea and Philip, second son of King Charles; and it was so agreed and also that the son of the Count of Aria should marry the sister of the said princess, Lady of Matagrifon 628

CHAPTER CCLXIII.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca took to wife my Lady Isabel, daughter of the Count of Aria and grand-daughter of the Prince of Morea; and how the Lady of Matagrifon endowed her daughter with the barony of Matagrifon and all rights she had in the Principality of Morea 631

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXIV.

PAGE

How I, Ramon Muntaner, sent a message to the Lord King of Sicily to entreat him of his mercy to allow me to go to Catania, where the Lord Infante was with the Infanta, his wife, who gave birth to a son called Jaime; and how the said Lord Infante prepared to pass into Morea 634

CHAPTER CCLXV.

How the Infanta, my Lady Isabel, wife of the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca, passed from this life; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, gave up the islands of Jerba and of Kerkenna to the Lord King of Sicily and went to where the Lord Infante En Fernando was . 636

CHAPTER CCLXVI.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca entrusted to me, Ramon Muntaner, the Lord Infante En Jaime, his dear son, in order that I should carry him and deliver him to the Queen, his mother; and gave me full authority by a formal document to do whatever I wished 638

CHAPTER CCLXVII.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca passed into Morea and took Clarenza by force of arms, and took all the district; and how all they of Clarenza and of the Morea took the oath to him as head and chief . 640

CHAPTER CCLXVIII.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, apparelled myself to pass into Catalonia with the Lord Infante En Jaime, to his grandmother; and how I had news that they of Clarenza had equipped four galleys in order to capture the said Infante, and how I landed at Salou on All Saints' Day 642

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXIX.

PAGE

Recounts how I, Ramon Muntaner, delivered the Lord Infante En Jaime to my Lady the Queen, his grandmother, who was at Perpignan; I delivered him with all the solemnity with which an Infante or a son of a king should be delivered 645

CHAPTER CCLXX.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca sent for knights and men afoot; and how before they came to the Morea the said Infante passed from this life and all the territory was seized by monsenyer En Juan, brother of King Robert 648

CHAPTER CCLXXI.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon agreed to send the Infante En Alfonso, his son, to conquer the Kingdom of Sardinia and Corsica, with the assistance given him by the Lord King of Mallorca with twenty galleys . 650

CHAPTER CCLXXII.

Recounts the sermon which I, Ramon Muntaner, sent to the Lord King about the expedition to Sardinia and Corsica, by way of advice to give to the Lord Infante En Alfonso, or at least to remind him of everything . 652

CHAPTER CCLXXIII.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso departed from Port Fangós and landed at Palma de Sols, where the Judge of Arborea and a great number of Sardinians received him as their lord; and how he sent the admiral to besiege Cagliari 660

CHAPTER CCLXXIV.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso took Villadeiglesias and went to besiege the castle of Cagliari and erected, opposite the said castle of Cagliari, another castle with another town, called castle Bonaire. . . 662

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXV.

PAGE

How Count Ner came to succour Cagliari with full eight hundred German knights and four hundred Pisans and six thousand men afoot and thirty galleys; and how they fought with the Lord Infante En Alfonso, and the count fled and all the Germans and Pisans were killed and the count died a short time after from the wounds he had received 663

CHAPTER CCLXXVI.

How they of Cagliari thought to enter Castle Bonaire but the Lord Infante En Alfonso discomfited them; and of the crime they of Cagliari committed against En Gilabert de Centelles and other knights; and how the Pisans resolved to make peace with the Lord Infante En Alfonso 670

CHAPTER CCLXXVII.

How the Lord King of Aragon sent the Lord Infante En Alfonso twenty light galleys; and how a messenger of the Pisans negotiated a peace with micer Barnabo Doria, who made himself spokesman for the peace between the Commune of Pisa and the Lord Infante . 673

CHAPTER CCLXXVIII.

How peace was made between the Lord Infante En Alfonso and the Pisans, and with what covenants; and how they of Bonifacio and other places in Corsica did homage to the Lord Infante En Alfonso . . 674

CHAPTER CCLXXIX.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso returned to Catalonia and left the noble En Felipe de Saluça as procurator-general, and the noble En Berenguer Carros as commander of Castle Bonaire, and Pedro de Lebia and Agustin de Costa as treasurers of the island . 676

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXX.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Sancho of Mallorca passed from this life and left as heir his nephew, the Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando; and how he was buried at Perpignan, in the church of Saint John 678

CHAPTER CCLXXXI.

How the Lord King of Aragon surrendered Reggio and the other castles, which the Lord King of Sicily had in Calabria, to the Holy Apostolic Father, to hold in trust; and how the Apostolic Father shortly after surrendered them to King Robert, whereat the said Lord King of Sicily was greatly displeased . . 679

CHAPTER CCLXXXII.

How the galleys of King Robert broke the tunny nets of Sicily, wherefore war broke out again between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert; and how the said King Robert sent his son, the Duke, to Sicily, with a great force but he had to return to Calabria without having gained anything 680

CHAPTER CCLXXXIII.

Of the great crimes the Commune of Genoa committed against the Lord King of Sicily and always commit against the House of Aragon . . . 685

CHAPTER CCLXXXIV.

How two light galleys of the Pisans entered within the palisade of the castle of Cagliari with victuals; and how the admiral En Francisco Carros took them with the whole of the slave crews; and how this becoming known to the Pisans they arranged to go and succour the said castle of Cagliari 687

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXXV.

PAGE

How the Judge of Arborea captured eighty Pisans and sent them to the admiral, who likewise had taken a hundred and fifty prisoners; and how on Christmas Day between galleys and lenys, fifty vessels arrived before Cagliari to succour it, of which the admiral En Carros took seven and the others were defeated and had to flee 690

CHAPTER CCLXXXVI.

How the galleys of the Pisans and Genoese, which had been scattered and delivered out of the hands of the admiral En Carros, fought the ship of the noble En Ramon de Peralta in such wise that after losing three hundred Genoese they had, full of grief, to leave the said ship, and how the Pisans endeavoured to break all the covenants they had with the Lord Infante . 693

CHAPTER CCLXXXVII.

How the followers of the admiral En Carros and of the noble En Ramon de Peralta prepared to enter Stampace and took it by assault and so fought with those of Stampace that they left alive neither man, woman nor child; and how the said place was deservedly punished for its sins 696

CHAPTER CCLXXXVIII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Mallorca had the high and pious monsenyer En Felipe of Mallorca, his uncle, given him as guardian, who negotiated and obtained that the said Lord King of Mallorca should have to wife my Lady Costanza, daughter of the Lord Infante En Alfonso 698

CHAPTER CCLXXXIX.

How the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Alfonso sent such succours to Bonaire that they of Cagliari held themselves for lost and the Pisans had to treat of peace with the said Lord King and to surrender the castle of Cagliari to him . . . 700

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXC.

PAGE

How God always punishes a man who breaks the peace; and how the Pisans surrendered the castle of Cagliari to the Lord King of Aragon and, for him, to the Judge of Arborea; and how they went out by the seaward gate; and how the royal standard and pennons were set up on the castle of San Pancracio . . . 701

CHAPTER CCXCI.

How the Lady Infanta, wife of the Lord Infante En Alfonso, passed from this life after he had had by her the Infante En Pedro and the Infante En Jaime and a daughter; and goes on to tell what those five sons of the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon and my Lady Queen Blanca are 706

CHAPTER CCXCII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon, after having confessed many times and received the sacraments of the Church, passed from this life and was buried at Santas Creus; and how the Kingdoms of Aragon and Valencia came to the Lord Infante En Alfonso . . . 708

CHAPTER CCXCIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon with all his brothers and his richs homens came to the town of Montblanch where he held a council to decide to which part of his territories he should go; and so came to Barcelona and there took the oath and swore to keep the usages and privileges of all Catalans, and they made oath to him as their chief and lord . . . 711

CHAPTER CCXCIV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon ordained that prelates and richs homens and knights of his dominions should come to Saragossa on Easter Day, because he wished to be dubbed knight and to be crowned with the sacred Crown of the Kingdom 712

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXCV.

PAGE

How the Lord King En Alfonso departed from Barcelona and came to the city of Lérida and visited a great part of those territories; and how the Kings of Tlemcen and of Granada sent him great presents and jewels; and how all the nobles began to apparel themselves to go to Saragossa, to the coronation 713

CHAPTER CCXCVI.

Of the nobles the Lord King En Alfonso dubbed knights at his coronation and of those made by the Infante En Pedro and the Infante En Ramon Berenguer; and also of the many new knights made at the same time 716

CHAPTER CCXCVII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso dubbed himself knight at Saragossa and in what manner; and of the ceremony with which he received the sacred Crown of the Kingdom 721

CHAPTER CCXCVIII.

How, after he had received the Crown of the Kingdom, a very rich seat was erected for the Lord King En Alfonso, on which he sat with his richs homens and knights; and how the juglars En Romaset and En Comi sang there 730

APPENDICES 734

INDEX 739

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXLVII.

How the death of the Lord King En Pedro became known in Mallorca and in Sicily; and of the laments and weeping of all the people of Messina.

WHEN the galley had departed from Barcelona, within a few days it was at Mallorca, where it found the Lord King of Aragon En Alfonso at Torres Lavaneras; and the knight did all the executors of the Lord King had commanded and even more, for he went on shore in the most beautiful garments he had; and this was wisely done; wherefore, as the notable says: "Send a wise man and do not tell him what to do." Wherefore every lord, city or town should endeavour, when sending a messenger, to send the wisest they can, for a good messenger does honour to his lord or his community and brings what he has to do to a good issue.

And when he had spoken with the Lord King and with the admiral, he embarked and steered for Sicily and in a short time he came to Sicily and found my Lady the Queen and the Lord En Jaime, King of Sicily, and the Infante En Fadrique at Messina and told them the news and did all he had been commanded to do. And when the death was published and the testament was read at Messina, you might see mourning and weeping throughout all Sicily and all Calabria; for full eight days there was nothing but weeping.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXLVIII.

How the Infante En Jaime was crowned King of Sicily at Palermo and of the great feasts that were made there; and how he had twenty galleys equipped and made En Berenguer de Sarriá commander thereof.

AND when the mourning was over, the Lord King commanded throughout all Sicily and Calabria that, on a fixed day, every man should be at Palermo for the
1285 feast, for he would be crowned King of Sicily and of all the dominion. And the letters went out to all parts and when they had gone out the Lord King and my Lady the Queen and the Infante En Fadrique went to Palermo; and when they were there the feast began, a very great feast, and the day came when the Lord King En Jaime was crowned with the crown of Sicily, in so good an hour and under such favour of God that there never was a king so gracious or so fortunate for his people, and is still and will be for many years, if it be God's pleasure After he was crowned, if the people of Sicily and Calabria had sown stones, they would have reaped fine wheat and oats. Indeed there were, in Sicily and in Calabria, twenty castles of richs homens, each of whom lived at greater expense than a king, and all had riches enough. And his court was rich, and full of treasure and of all goods, wherefore he can be called En Jaime the Fortunate.

And when the feast was over, he returned to Messina and at once had twenty galleys equipped and made captain thereof a knight he loved much, called En Berenguer de Sarriá. There were two brothers of that name, one the said En Berenguer de Sarriá who was the elder, and the other En Vidal de Sarriá, about each of whom, as I have told you before concerning En G. Galceran, a book might assuredly be made, of their prowess and of their deeds of chivalry and of arms; and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

especially of the said En Berenguer who was and has been and is still the most splendid knight that ever was in Spain. And he has had a lord who has acknowledged it fully, namely this Lord King of Sicily who, at a later time, made him a noble, as you shall hear further on in due place and time.

CHAPTER CXLIX.

How the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá harried all the coast of Amalfi as far as the fief of Rome where he captured galleys, lenys and barges.

As soon as the twenty galleys were equipped and he had made En Berenguer de Sarriá captain thereof, he ordered him to embark and set his course for Naples, to know what was being done there; and then, to turn to Scicli and to sail along the coast as far as the fief of Rome; and when he had returned, to pass into Calabria, for he wished to let his enemies know that the King of Aragon was not dead, but rather that, whereas formerly they had to fight one King, henceforth they would have to fight two, who were one heart, one body and one mind.

And when the King had said this, En Berenguer de Sarriá took leave of him and of my Lady the Queen and of the Infante En Fadrique and embarked at a suitable hour, in the keeping of God. And he coasted along all Calabria and came to Cape Palinuro, and from Cape Palinuro he put out to sea and set his course for the coast of Amalfi; and this coast is inhabited by the worst people and the greatest pirates there are in the world, especially a village called Positano. And he thought that, if he harried the coast of Amalfi he would do four good

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

things for the service of the Lord King of Sicily and his people, and of the Lord King of Aragon and his people as well. One was that he would avenge the damage these people had done in the former wars; the other, that, as they would be destroyed they could thenceforth do no more evil; another, that it would be the greatest deed of arms and the most useful done in those parts for a long time.

And, as he had decided on doing, so it was done and accomplished; and before dawn of day he landed there and had all his followers on shore near the city of San Andres of Amalfi; and he ravaged all the mountain country. And so he stayed there four days and sacked and burnt Mayori and Minori and Ravello and Positano and all the villages that were on the mountain. And he stayed with raised banner and went on burning and pillaging all he found, and he surprised the wicked inhabitants of Positano in bed, so that all came to the same end; and he burnt galleys and lenys drawn up on shore and left not one there, nor in any place on the coast.

And when he had burnt and pillaged all, he embarked and went to Sorrento and did the same there; and he would have done the same at Castellamare, had it not been for much chivalry which had come from Naples. What shall I tell you? He entered the port of Naples and took away ships and lenys and burnt some and then he sailed along the coast as far as the fief of Rome and took ships and lenys and galleys which he sent to Sicily. And when the Apostolic[1] knew the great alarm there was along all the coast and at the mouth of the fief of Rome, where En Berenguer de Sarriá had taken all the lenys that were there, he asked what this commotion was. And they said to him: "Holy Father, it is a knight of Sicily, called En Berenguer de Sarriá, who has come with

[1] Honorius IV.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

twenty Sicilian galleys and has burnt and pillaged all the coast of Amalfi and the port of Naples and has harried all the coast and from here, from the fief of Rome, has taken away galleys, lenys, and barges, and nothing can stand up against him." "Ah, God," said the Pope, "what is this? He who fights against the House of Aragon has to fight against so many devils, for each of these knights of Catalonia is a devil incarnate and nothing can resist them, neither by land nor by sea. Would to God that they were reconciled with the Church, for they are people with whom We should conquer the world and put down all infidels; wherefore I pray God to send peace between them and Holy Church. And God forgive Pope Martin who cast them out of the Church. But if We can, We will shortly reconcile them, if it please God, for they are most valiant and worthy people. It is not many days since they have lost their lord, who was the most accomplished knight of the world, and I believe that his sons, who thus begin, are the same."

CHAPTER CL.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily passed into Calabria to wage war; and how he took it all easily except the castle of Stilero.

AND when En Berenguer de Sarriá had done all this, he returned with much booty to Sicily, where he found the Lord King who was very pleased with what he had done; and so were all the Sicilians, because of the great hurt those wicked men had done them daily. And as soon as the galleys were at Messina, the Lord King crossed into Calabria with a great retinue and went to visit all his territories; and, as often as he rode into territory which was not yet his, all surrendered to him, so that

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

assuredly, if the admiral had been at Naples at that time with his fleet, the King would have gone there straight. What more should I tell you about it? He easily took all Calabria, except the castle of Stilero, as I have told you already; but he took Taranto and the Principality and Cape Leuca and Otranto, which is a fine city and an archbishopric, extending from this side of the Principality as far as San Hilario, nearly thirty miles. And when the Lord King had conquered what was around him, he went about Calabria, disporting and hunting, for it is the healthiest province of the world and the most fruitful in all restoratives and has the best waters and the best fruit of the world. And there were, in Calabria, many propertied richs homens, knights, natives of Catalonia and Aragon and of the country itself. And so the Lord King went from banquet to banquet and from diversion to diversion. And whilst the Lord King went about thus, disporting, En Berenguer de Sarriá came to Messina with the galleys and he had made much gain in this expedition also.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of him and will turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon on hearing of the death of his father hastened in such manner that in a short time he took Mallorca and Ibiza and returned to Barcelona where a feast was made for him.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon had had the message of the death of his father, he had his affairs hastened in such manner that, two days after he had received
1285 the message, the city of Mallorca surrendered to him, and the noble En Ponce Saguardia entered the Order

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of the Templars. And then, two days after the city had surrendered, the death of the Lord King En Pedro was published and the will read and you would have seen the greatest weeping and crying and lamenting of the world. Shall I tell you more about it? The mourning lasted full six days, during which no man did any work in the city. And when the mourning was over, the noble En Ponce Saguardia surrendered to the Lord King and the Lord King had him and all his company, who wished to go with him, taken safe and sound to Colibre and from Colibre they went to Perpignan. And the Lord King of Mallorca received him very well and always showed him much honour. And so he should, for he always served him very well and he was of the best knights of the world.

And when the Lord King En Alfonso had sent En Ponce Saguardia away, he left, as procurator of the city and of the island, Gesbert de Mediona, and he left a good company with him. And then he took leave of the city and of all the notables from outside who had come there, and he went and set his course for Ibiza.

Now it is true that, whilst he was besieging the city of Mallorca, he had sent to Ibiza, to know the intention of the inhabitants, whether they would surrender to him. And the notables of Ibiza promised him that, what the city of Mallorca would do, they would do also. Wherefore he went to Ibiza and, at once, the notables received him with great honour and he entered the castle. And he stayed two days and left there a very wise and expert knight, called En Lloret, as castellan.[1] And he took leave and went to Barcelona and there a great feast was made for him. And from Barcelona,

[1] 'Castellan' is used, in Aragon, only when the warden is a knight of the Order of St. John of Aragon.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he sent into all his dominions a message to richs homens and citizens and townsmen that they should be with him at Saragossa on a fixed day.

CHAPTER CLII.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria harried all the coast of Provence and sacked Serignan and Agde and Vias without any women or child under fifteen, or man over sixty years old being killed.

WHEN the Lord King had sent his letters to all parts, to say what day he assigned for them to be at Saragossa because he wished to celebrate his coronation feast, the admiral came to him and said: "Lord, you have given fifty days for every man to be at Saragossa at your coronation feast; but to me, it means much that the companies of the galleys should be thus idle. And therefore, by the leave of God and yours, I shall go and ravage the coast from here to Marseilles and I shall act in such wise that, with the help of God, I shall soon be back, in time to be at Saragossa for your coronation." Said the Lord King to the admiral: "You say well."

And when he was at sea, off Cape Leucate, he went to the beach of the grau of Serignan and there, at dawn, set his followers on shore, and he went forth with about a hundred men on horseback; and when it was day they were at Serignan and they sacked all Serignan and all the country. And the alarm went through all the district and reached the city of Beziers which is at a distance of two leagues. And the host of Beziers went forth and came to Serignan, and there were thirty thousand men, counting those from other places who joined the host of Beziers.

And the admiral said to his followers: "Barons,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

this is the day on which the House of Aragon and its followers will earn honour and glory for all time in all this district. I see that these are a people easy to kill; they have never seen a raging man. Therefore let us attack full and straight; you will see they will only show us their backs. And the raid shall be royal: what each man takes shall be his own. Yet I command every man under the penalty for treason, that he take neither goods nor horse until the battle is ended." And to this they all agreed. And meanwhile the host approached, thinking they had nothing more to do than to tie up prisoners.

With that, when they were so near that the darts could make play and the cross-bows be drawn, the trumpets and nakers sounded. And the admiral with the horsemen, attacked the horsemen of the other side, of whom there were full three hundred, some French, some of the country. And the almugavars, of whom there were full two thousand, proceeded to send their darts of which not one missed but every one killed a man or wounded him mortally; and the cross-bowmen discharged their weapons all together. So that, so great was the effect made by the admiral and his company at the beginning, shouting "Aragon! Aragon!" that the enemy all turned together, those on horseback as well as those afoot. And the admiral and the others were upon them. What shall I tell you? The pursuit lasted to within a league of Beziers and would have lasted as far as the city, but it was vesper-time and the admiral feared they would not be able to return to the galleys by daylight, and they were on the worst beach there is, East or West. And so he rallied his followers and made them return. And thus returning, they searched the field. And they need not be asked about the great gain they made. And when it was night, they came to the beach in front of the galleys

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and they burnt and sacked all Serignan, except the church of Our Lady Saint Mary of Serignan.

And they of Beziers and of the other places assembled at Beziers, and they had lost so many people that they saw well that, if the admiral returned next day, they could not defend the city against him, if they had not men from outside with them. And so they sent out the cry of alarm that night throughout all that district to men to come and defend the city of Beziers, for they had lost the greater part of their people. And they could say so truly for, out of ten, not two returned, and so all died, whilst the admiral, when he reviewed his company, found that he had lost not more than seven of the men afoot. In the morning many people came to Beziers, but the admiral had no care of that, but, before midnight, he and his followers embarked and went to the grau of Agde, so that he was there at dawn and landed his followers. And the light galleys and armed lenys went up by the canal of Vias, and the large galleys went to the city of Agde and in each of these places they took all the lenys and barges they found.

And the admiral, with half of the men on horseback and half of the almugavars, and with a great number of the slave crews, went to the city of Agde and took it and sacked the whole of it; but he did not allow any woman or any child to be killed, but the men over fifteen and under sixty were all put to the sword, and the others were spared. And he pillaged and sacked all the city except what belonged to the bishopric, for he never allowed any damage to be done to the Church, nor any man to dishonour a woman. Those two things the admiral always held to, that he did not consent to any damage to the Church, nor that even the value of a button be taken from her, and so likewise that no woman whatever be dishonoured, or despoiled, or her person touched.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Wherefore God counted it to him for a merit and gave him many victories and granted him a good end.

And his other company went to the town of Vias, some by land, some up the canal, and they likewise laid all waste and took everything there was, lenys and barges of which there were many up the canal. And so, likewise, the alarm went through all the district. And they of Sentiberi[1] and of Lupia and of Giga came down to the sea, but when they came near Agde news met them that they of Beziers had been taken on the previous day. And when they heard this they prepared to turn back, but they did not make so much haste that the horsemen and the almugavars did not overtake more than four thousand and kill them with their lances, and then returned to Agde and stayed there four days, pillaging and ravaging all the district.

And when they had done this, the admiral made all his followers embark and he set his course for Aigues-mortes and he found ships, lenys and galleys, and all he found he took and sent to Barcelona. And then he went to Cape Spiguera and when he was in those waters he was out of reach of news and all men of that district thought he had gone to Sicily. And at night he went out to sea with the landbreeze as far as he could, so that next day he could not be seen from the land. And on the following day, when a breeze sprang up, he shaped his course for Cape Leucate and landed at night, and found there, of barges and lenys, full twenty, loaded with valuable goods, and he took them all and sent them to Barcelona. And at dawn of day he entered by the grau of Narbonne, and found there lenys and galleys and he took them all down to the sea. What shall I tell you? His gain, and that of all who were with him, was infinite; and they would have made

[1] St. Hubert, according to Lanz.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

much more had it not been for the haste he was in to return to Catalonia, to be in time for the coronation of the Lord King. And so he came out of the grau of Narbonne, with all the shipping he had taken, and set his course for Barcelona.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the admiral En Roger de Luria and shall speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon went to Santas Creus where he had the sarcophagus of his father absolved and fifty masses said daily for a time.

WHEN the admiral had taken leave of the Lord King at Barcelona, the Lord King left the city and his first journey was to go to Santas Creus, and there he summoned the archbishop of Tarragona and all the bishops of his territory and all the other prelates, so that there were well over three hundred crosiers, and ten friars of every order in his dominions. And there he and all his people mourned, and he had masses said, and a sermon was preached and, with a great procession, he had the sarcophagus of the good King En Pedro, his father, absolved, and this took place daily for ten days. And when this was over, he, to do honour to the soul of the Lord King his father, gave presents and many favours to the monastery, in order that, for a time, masses should be said daily for the soul of the good King, his father, namely fifty masses. And when he had done this he took leave of all and went to Lérida where a great feast was made for him, the greatest feast any people could make for their lord. And when the Lord King went to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Saragossa everyone repaired there to await the day appointed.

But I must let the Lord King be and speak to you again of the admiral.

CHAPTER CLIV.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria went to Tortosa with the fleet and left his nephew En Juan de Luria as head and chief of the fleet whilst he was at the coronation of the Lord King.

WHEN the admiral had come out of the grau of Narbonne with all the shipping he had taken there, he steered for Barcelona and, in a few days, he was at Barcelona. And when he was there a great feast was made for him and he stayed eight days. And then he went with the fleet to Tortosa and when he was in the city of Tortosa, and the galleys came to the city, he left there, as head and chief, his nephew En Juan de Luria who was a very accomplished and expert knight. It could not be imagined that there could be in any part of the world in those days, a knight as young as he was, more just nor more wise nor more expert in arms.

And he commanded him to set his course for Spain[1] and to give his followers opportunity to obtain gain from the Moors who were not at peace with the Lord King of Aragon, so that they should not grow lazy whilst he was at the coronation of the Lord King.

---

[1] Almost up to the final expulsion of the Moors, "Espanya" usually denoted the country occupied by them in the peninsula. This is seen in several documents, for instance, in the treaty of peace between Count Ramon Berenguer IV of Barcelona and King Alfonso VII of Leon, II of Castile, in which Ramon Berenguer says: "Item ego Ramiundus comes convenio tibi regi Sancio ut omnem honorem tam Ispanie quam christianorum quem per patrem vestrum imperatorem teneo. . . ."

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon was crowned at Saragossa and of the feasts and sports that were held; and how En Juan de Luria burned and pillaged many places in Barbary; and how the admiral embarked to pass into Sicily.

WITH that En Juan de Luria, with the fleet, shaped his course for Valencia and the admiral went by land to Saragossa, with much chivalry and many good seamen he brought with him. And the Lord King received him with a very kind countenace and showed him great honour and had great joy of what he had done.

And the admiral, at once, had a very high stage erected, for he was, after the Lord King En Pedro and the King of Mallorca, the most dexterous knight thrower of daggers of any knight in Spain, and En Berenguer de Entenza, his brother-in-law, was very dexterous too. I have seen them both throw there. But assuredly the Lord King En Pedro and the King of Mallorca carried off the palm of throwers of all times, and each of them threw three daggers and one orange, and the last stylet was as big as the staff of a lance. And the two first always threw well over the stage. And after that he had a round platform made and the seamen had two armed lenys made, of those flat ones used on the river; on them you might have seen battles of oranges, of which they had over fifty loads brought from Valencia. And so you may be sure that the admiral made this a noble feast in all ways. What shall I tell you about it? The feast was very great and the Lord King En Alfonso was crowned amidst great joy and content. And the feast lasted more than fifteen days, and no one did anything but sing and rejoice and attend sports and diversions.

And when the feast was over, the admiral took leave of the Lord King and went to Valencia and he visited his

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

castles and towns and villages, which he possessed there, very good and important ones. And he sent an armed leny to En Juan de Luria to bid him come. And the armed leny found him in Barbary where he had made a raid between Tunis and Algiers, had penetrated inland and taken over three hundred Saracens and burned and pillaged many villages, and taken many Saracen lenys and terides. And when En Juan de Luria received the message of the admiral, his uncle, he went and in a few days was at Valencia. And when he was at Valencia, the Admiral received him, cheerful and content, and commanded him to equip the galleys, for he wished to go to Sicily. And, as he commanded, so it was done. And when the admiral had done what there was to do in Valencia he embarked by the favour of God and shaped his course for Barbary; he went along the coast and took all the Saracens he could find.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the admiral, who is going along Barbary and shall turn to speak of the Lord King who is at Saragossa.

CHAPTER CLVI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon decided to take revenge for the breach of faith committed by King En Sancho of Castile against the Lord King En Pedro, his father, and to bring the sons of the Infante En Fernando of Castile out of the castle of Játiva, and make one of them King of Castile.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon had concluded the feast he gave the admiral letters to carry to my Lady the Queen, his mother, in Sicily, and to the Lord King En Jaime and to the Lord Infante En Fadrique, his brothers. And he summoned the Infante En Pedro, his brother, before his presence and that of all his council and said

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to him: "Brother, our father, King En Pedro, left Barcelona with the wish and intention, if God carried him safe and sound to Valencia, to take the sons of the Infante En Fernando of Castile out of Játiva; and he wished to make Don Alfonso, the eldest, King of Castile in order to be avenged on his nephew, King En Sancho of Castile who had offended against him so greatly, for in his greatest need he failed in all he had promised him. And as it has not pleased God that he might have vengeance in his lifetime, We will avenge him, We who should take over the works as well as represent the person of the Lord King, Our father. Wherefore I now wish two knights to be appointed to go to King En Sancho and defy him in Our name for the reason aforesaid. And you, Infante, apparel yourself at once with five hundred knights of Catalonia and as many of Aragon and with two hundred light horse of the Kingdom of Valencia, in such wise that, when the messengers have returned from Castile, you be ready to invade Castile and burn and lay waste all the places that will not surrender to Us for Don Alfonso, the son of the Infante En Fernando of Castile. And you shall take with you twenty thousand men afoot, good almugavars. And when this is done, We will go to the Kingdom of Valencia, and We will take these Infantes out of Játiva, and We will assemble Our hosts and together with them invade Castile; and We shall do so much that the Infantes shall be Kings of Castile, with the help of Our Lord Jesus Christ Who helps the right."

And when the Lord King had spoken, the Lord Infante En Pedro rose and said: "Lord, I have heard well what you have said to me, wherefore I thank God that He has given you this wish and intention, that you will take the revenge which the Lord King, our father, intended to take, and that you now show the valour and the great worth which are in you. Wherefore I,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

my Lord Brother, offer myself to act and speak in these matters and in all others you command me to do according to your wish, for in nothing will you, at any time, find me failing you. And so, arrange to settle all your other affairs which you have to do, and send the challenges, and I will provide myself with richs homens and knights of Catalonia and Aragon and of the Kingdom of Valencia, and will invade Castile with the company you, Lord, command and with many more. And be assured, Lord, that I shall enter into Castile in such good heart and mind and with such followers that, even if I knew that King En Sancho was marching against us with ten thousand men, we would fight him."

And upon this the Lord King took the hand of the Lord Infante En Pedro who was near him, but a little lower, and kissed him and said to him: "Infante, such an answer did I expect of you, and such faith have I in you."

CHAPTER CLVII.

How, the council over, the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon decided to defy King En Sancho of Castile and sent two knights with the challenges; and how the Infante En Pedro prepared to invade Castile.

AND when the Lord King had said this, they of the council rose, and he who rose first said: "Lord, praised and thanked be Our Lord the true God, Who has shown so much favour to your dominions in so well providing them with good and valiant and bold Lords, full of worth; we are always going from good to better, so that we should all be cheerful and content. It is the truth that this is the first enterprise that you, Lord, have undertaken since your coronation; and it is the greatest enterprise

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

ever undertaken by any Lord, for four reasons. The first is that you are declaring war against one of the powerful lords of the world and against your nearest neighbour. The other, that you are already at war with the Roman Church and with the House of France and with the forces of King Charles, so that one may say, with all the world. The third is that you may count on it that, when the King of Granada sees you engaged in such arduous affairs, you may believe that he will break the truce he made with the Lord King, your father; and so, likewise, that all the communes of the world, as the Church is against you, will be against you too. And so, Lord, reckon that you will be at war with two of the greatest powers in the world. But, nevertheless, as you have set your heart on this, and maintain truth and righteousness in all things, count on it, that God, Who is truth and righteousness, will be on your side, and as He brought your father, the Lord King, victorious and with great honour out of the war so, if He pleases, He will bring you and us all. And I say to you, for myself and for all my friends, that I offer myself as long as I have life and all I have, and that I shall not fail you; rather, Lord, I beg you to reckon on me in the straitest place you see or know, and take for your assistance all I and my friends possess. Again, take my sons and my daughters and use them as hostages as need may be, wherever you please."

And when this rich hom had spoken, another rose and spoke similarly. What shall I tell you? One by one they all rose and each offered himself fully, as the first had done. And upon this the Lord King gave them many thanks and spoke many good words to them. And at once, they chose two knights, one Catalan and the other Aragonese, whom the King sent to Castile
1289 with the challenges. And at once the Lord Infante, before he left Aragon, had five hundred knights written

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

down to go with him. And I shall not say to you five hundred, for if he wanted two thousand he could have had them. It was not necessary he should ask any; rather, all came to offer themselves to him and to beg that it be his pleasure that they should go with him. But he wanted no more, only as many as the Lord King had ordained. And when this was done they went to Catalonia and there, also, all the richs homens and knights of Catalonia came and offered themselves to him. And so, in a few days, he had the full complement of five hundred knights and many retainers. And of the Kingdom of Valencia I need not tell you, for, as if it were to gain indulgences, they went to where he was, to offer themselves to him. And so he had all the company he needed in a short time, the best arrayed ever seen following a lord. And to all he assigned a day on which to be at Calatayud in Aragon.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord Infante and shall turn to speak of the Lord King.

CHAPTER CLVIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon received the crown of the Kingdom of Valencia and took his cousins out of Játiva; and how he decided to invade Castile in person with all his men; and how as he was marching to Castile there came a message to him from the count of Ampurias that the French wished to invade Ampurdan.

It is the truth that when the Lord King had ordained all the matter of the Lord Infante and had sent his messengers to the King of Castile to defy him, he went to the Kingdom of Valencia, and when he entered the city a great feast was made for him. And on the day assigned, all the barons of the said kingdom came there, knights

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and townsmen. And when they and many other people, were all assembled, he received the crown of the Kingdom of Valencia with great solemnity.

And when the feast was over, he took out of Játiva when he was there (for he went there as soon as the feast was over) out of the castle of Játiva, Don Alfonso and Don Fernando, sons of the Infante En Fernando of Castile; and he had a beautiful banner made, with the device of the King of Castile, and he apparelled many men, horse and foot, with whom to invade Castile on one side with Don Alfonso, whilst the Infante En Pedro invaded Castile on the other.

And whilst this was being arranged, it pleased God that the Lord Infante En Pedro fell seriously ill, and a letter came to the Lord King in which the richs homens and knights let him know that they were already all at Calatayud and asked him to command what they should do. And when the Lord King heard this he was much displeased, but he agreed that it was better that he should go to Calatayud himself and take Don Alfonso and Don Fernando there, and that they should make an invasion all together from there. And so he sent to tell them to await him.

And, at once, he went to Calatayud with all the people he ordered to follow him, and in a few days he was there with many followers. And he found the Lord Infante En Pedro had not recovered, rather had he grown much worse. He at once proceeded with the invasion, and he had full two thousand armed horse and five hundred light horse and full a hundred thousand men afoot. And he ordained that Don Alfonso of Castile should command the van, and that his banner should be the first. And this he did because all the barons and cities and towns of Castile had sworn fealty to the Infante En Fernando, father of Don Alfonso, after the death of Don Alfonso, King of Castile. And therefore the King Philip

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of France had given his sister, my Lady Blanche, to the Infante En Fernando to wife, otherwise he would not have given her, if he had known that the sons of this marriage would not be kings of Castile. And in this order they penetrated eight journeys into Castile, and went straight to where they knew that King Don Sancho, their uncle, was. And, assuredly, King Don Sancho had made preparation, for he had with him full twelve thousand armed horse and innumerable men afoot. And when the Lord King of Aragon knew that he had so much chivalry with him and that there was not more than a league from one host to the other, he sent him a message to say that he had come to avenge the wrong he had done to the good king, his father, and to make Don Alfonso, his nephew, king as he should be. Wherefore, if he was what a king's son should be, let him come out to do battle with him.

And when King En Sancho heard this he was very sorrowful; but, nevertheless, he thought that all the Lord King had sent to say to him was true and that no man would go to war against him and his nephew, rather that everyone would defend them against all men. The Lord King of Aragon awaited him in that place four days, for he would not leave it until King En Sancho had departed. And then he returned, taking and sacking towns and villages which would not submit to Don Alfonso of Castile. However, a fine village called Seron, which is near Soria, and many other villages surrendered to him. And he, at once, made them swear fealty to Don Alfonso as King of Castile, and so he left Don Alfonso in those places which had surrendered to him and he left him full a thousand horsemen and many afoot who were almugavars and seamen, and he left with them all they needed, and also ordained that, if he needed help from the men on the frontiers of Aragon, they should give him aid at once. And, assuredly at that

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

time, he would have torn all Castile from King Don Sancho, had not a message come to him from Ampurdan, from the count of Ampurias and from Viscount Rocaberti, in which they informed him that a great gathering of the people of Languedoc was preparing to invade
1287 Ampurdan in the name of the King of France and so, that they craved of his mercy to come and help them. And so the Lord King, for this reason, had to leave Castile, and he left the said Don Alfonso of Castile and Don Fernando in the places which had surrendered to him, thus ordained and strengthened as you have heard already. What shall I tell you? They ever remained thus.

From the time the Lord King of Aragon had entered Castile until he returned to Aragon and Catalonia was nearly three months. And so you can imagine that there is no other king in the world who would, out of his goodness, do so much for another as he did for those two Infantes. And when he was in Calatayud he found that the Lord Infante En Pedro was much better and he took him with him to Catalonia and gave him the same power in his territory which he had himself, because he loved him more than anything in the world. And he did well to love him, for he was very wise and handsome and accomplished in all matters.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord King and of the Lord Infante who are in Catalonia, and shall turn to speak of the admiral.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLIX.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria on the way to Sicily ravaged Barbary and harried the island of Jerba and Tolmetta and won the battle of Matagrifon and fought with the French at Brindisi and took the bridge from them and arrived at Messina where a great feast was made for him.

It is the truth that when the French were defeated and left Catalonia, the Lord King En Pedro went to Barcelona and gave the admiral, to him and his men, the island of Jerba; and also, he gave him fine and important castles and villages in the Kingdom of Valencia. And so the admiral was cheerful and content for many reasons. No man could have been more cheerful than he was were it not for the death of the Lord King En Pedro which grieved him much. And so you have heard already how he took leave of the Lord King En Alfonso, how he returned to Saragossa, and then how he went to the Kingdom of Valencia to visit his places, and then how he embarked and went along the coast of Barbary. And as he went along Barbary, he sacked villages and took ships and lenys, and, as he took them, he sent them to Valencia, to his deputy. And he went thus, coasting along all Barbary until he came to Jerba, and at Jerba he settled and ordered the island, and he raided all Ris, which is on the mainland; and they of Ris submitted to him and promised to pay what they of Jerba were paying and that they would be his subjects like they of Jerba.

And when this was done and he had refreshed his followers, he shaped his course for Tolmetta, sailing along the coast and so, likewise, he took many well loaded barges and captured many slaves, male and female; and he took ships and lenys laden with spices, coming from Alexandria and Tripoli, and he took all this. And when he was beyond Tunis he sent everything to Messina.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

What shall I tell you? He took Tolmetta and pillaged all the city, except the castle which is strongly walled and is held by Jews, and he attacked it one day. And on the following day he had prepared his scaling-ladders to fight and to scale the walls, but those inside held a parley with him to make a compact, and gave him a large sum in gold and silver, so that he saw that this was better than to burn and pillage them; for, once he had burned the town, no one would ever inhabit it, and now he reckoned that he would have a tribute from them every year.

And when he had done this, he departed from Tolmetta. Then he shaped his course for Crete and landed at Candia and there refreshed his men; and then he went scouring Romania and pillaged many villages; and then he passed through the Straits of Setull and landed at the port of Quaglio and came afterwards to Coron, and the Venetians gave him many provisions at Coron and at Mochon, and then he came to the beach of Matagrifon[1] and there he landed. And the people of the country came to meet him, on horseback as well as on foot, in such numbers that there were full five hundred French knights and many men afoot and they offered him battle. And so he had the horses taken out of the galleys; they were about a hundred and fifty, and they came in armour and apparelled in battle array. And it pleased God to give the victory to the admiral, so that the Frenchmen and the men of the country were all killed or taken prisoners, wherefore the Morea has since that time been much depopulated of expert people. And when he had done this he went to the city of Clarenza and rested his followers and took much treasure out of it.

And then he departed thence and went to sack the city of Patras and then he pillaged Cefalonia and the Duchy

[1] Akova.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and all the island of Corfu, which he had already pillaged once before. And then he set his course for Apulia and landed at Brindisi. And at Brindisi he thought he had been betrayed; for on the day before his arrival a great number of French chivalry, of whom Lestandart was chief, had entered the city to guard it and the district, for fear of En Berenguer de Entenza who was holding Otranto and was raiding all that country. And when the admiral had landed with all his followers, the chivalry issued forth from Santa Maria del Casal of Brindisi. And the admiral, seeing so much chivalry (for there were full seven hundred French horsemen) thought he had been betrayed. However, he commended himself to God and collected his followers and attacked the Frenchmen so strenuously that he made them turn back towards the city, so that the pursuit went as far as the bridge of Brindisi, and there might you have seen knightly feats of arms, on both sides. And the almugavars, who saw this press and that the French held their own so strongly, broke their lances short and then went amongst the enemy and proceeded to disembowel horses and to kill knights. What shall I tell you? They took the bridge from the French and would have entered the city with them, had it not been that the admiral's horse was killed, and when they tried to raise him you might have seen blows of darts and lances and, on the side of the French, blows of bordons. What shall I tell you? In spite of the enemy, they raised up the admiral and one of his knights dismounted and gave him his horse. And when the admiral had mounted, then might you have seen strenuous fighting. In the end the admiral's men took the bridge from the French and would have entered with them had they not closed the gates. And so the admiral returned to the galleys, cheerful and content, and they searched the field and found that altogether they had killed four hundred knights and innumerable men afoot. And every man had plenty of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

booty and, assuredly, King Charles had to send them reinforcements from elsewhere for, of those who were left, En Berenguer de Entenza and those who were with him in the city of Otranto need have no fear.

After all this the admiral went to the city of Otranto where great honour was shown him and a great feast made. And there he refreshed his followers and gave four months' pay, in the name of the Lord King of Sicily, to all knights and footsoldiers who were with En Berenguer de Entenza. And then, departing from Otranto, he came to the city of Taranto and there, also, he paid them and then went to Cotrone and to Castella and to Gerace and to Amendolea and to Pentedatille and to the castle of Santa Agata and to Reggio. And then he went to Messina, where he found the Lord King En Jaime, King of Sicily, and my Lady the Queen, his mother, and the Lord Infante En Fadrique. And do not ask me if a feast was made for him, for the like had never been made for him anywhere. And my Lady the Queen had great pleasure in seeing him and received him and showed him much greater honour than she used. And above all Doña Bella, his mother, had great joy and content in seeing him. And also the Lord King of Sicily showed him great honour and gave him castles and villages, and gave him such power that he did and undid, by sea and by land, whatever he wished. And besides the Lord King of Sicily thought much of his company.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily and of the admiral and shall turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon summoned his hosts in Catalonia with pay for four months; and how he entered Roussillon with them to see whether the Frenchmen had invaded Ampurdan.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon was at Barcelona and knew that a great many men of Languedoc were preparing to enter Roussillon and Ampurdan, he summoned his host in Catalonia at pay for four months and proclaimed that every man should be, on a fixed day, in the town of Peralada. And all the richs homens and knights and citizens and townsmen came to Peralada on that day, very handsomely apparelled. And the Lord King, before he departed from Peralada, sent the Infante En Pedro to Aragon, as Governor and Chief, in order that, if anyone wished to invade Aragon from Navarre, he should prevent it. And when he had done this and had all his hosts at Peralada, he entered Roussillon. And when he was at Boulou he heard that no stranger had entered there and he went to Colibre by the slopes of the mountains, and from Colibre he returned to Ampurdan. And so I shall not tell you that they of Languedoc decided to invade Catalonia; rather, when they knew that the Lord King of Aragon was in Roussillon, each of them returned to his village or to his property.

CHAPTER CLXI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon held a tournament at Figueras, of two hundred against two hundred; and how he fought viscount Rocaberti and En Gisbert de Castellnou.

AND when the Lord King was back at Peralada he discharged every one, and all returned to their villages;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

but the Lord King, seeing that he had not been able to fight with his enemies, commanded a tournament to be held at Figueras. So there were four hundred knights in the tournament, that is, two hundred on the side of En Gisbert de Castellnou and two hundred on the side of viscount Rocaberti; they were the chiefs on each side. And here the most beautiful feast was made and the finest feats of arms done that had ever been done in a tournament since the time of King Arthur. And as soon as this was over the Lord King returned to Barcelona; and you might have seen every day round tables and tourneys and martial exercises and jousts and other diversions and sports, so that all in the country went from amusement to amusement and from ball to ball.

CHAPTER CLXII.

How messengers from the Pope and from the King of France and from the King of England came to the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon to sue for peace and for the release of King Charles who was in prison.

AND whilst they were thus enjoying themselves, micer Bonifacio de Salamandrana came to the Lord King on a mission from the Pope, who sued the Lord King for peace, and the King of France did likewise, and they begged to have King Charles, who was in prison, delivered to them that a marriage might be arranged between the Lord King and the King of France's daughter.

And during these parleys, micer Jean de Grailly[1] came to Barcelona on the part of King Edward of England to tell the Lord King of Aragon he wished to form closer ties with him through a marriage; namely, that the Lord

[1] Jean de Grailly, captal de Buch, of the House of Foix, seneschal of the province of Bordeaux for Edward I.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

King of Aragon should marry the daughter of the King of England, who would then become mediator between him and the Holy Church of Rome and the King of France and King Charles, and settle a good peace with him. What shall I tell you? When micer Bonifacio knew the message of micer Jean de Grailly, and micer Jean knew his, they approached each other and came to an agreement. Micer Bonifacio found that the Lord King of Aragon had rather approach the King of England than King Charles, and so he thought that, in this way sooner than in any other, they would obtain peace and get King Charles out of prison; and so he negotiated chiefly with micer Jean de Grailly about the marriage with the daughter of the King of England. What more news should I tell you of it? The negotiations were conducted in many ways, so that it would take long to write it. Micer Bonifacio and micer Jean de Grailly agreed that micer Bonifacio should return to the Pope and to the King of France, and micer Jean to the King of England, and each should report what they had negotiated and been able to do and that, on a fixed day, they should meet at Toulouse, to know what their masters had replied. And so they took leave of the Lord King of Aragon and went, each as had been agreed.

CHAPTER CLXIII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily prepared to pass into Calabria and the Principality with all his hosts and to conquer Naples and Gaeta.

AFTER the admiral had returned to Messina, as you have heard already, he had all the galleys repaired. And one day the Lord King of Sicily called the admiral and all his council and said: "Barons, We have been thinking that it would be well done if We equipped eighty galleys

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and if We, with a thousand armed horse and thirty thousand almugavars, marched against Naples and if We can take the city, to hold it and wield authority whilst King Charles is a prisoner in Catalonia. And if We can take Naples, that We go and besiege Gaeta, for if we could take the city of Gaeta it would be worth more to Us than Naples."

And the admiral and the others praised this enterprise much, so that they, incontinent, ordained all they needed for it. And the admiral set up the banner by the table and the Lord King had the names written down of all those who were to go with him. And when this was ordained the Lord King convoked Cortes at Messina and assigned a day to the richs homens and knights and syndics of cities and towns of all Sicily and Calabria, on which to be at Messina. And when the day had come, my Lady the Queen and the Lord King and the Lord Infante En Fadrique came to Messina and were all assembled in the church called Santa Maria la Nova. And the Lord King preached to them and spoke many good words; he told them that he wished to go to the Principality and that he was leaving My Lady the Queen to them as Lady and Mistress in his place, and that he left the Infante En Fadrique to them, who would reign over and govern all the Kingdom with the council; and that he commanded them to look upon him as if it were himself. And when he had said this, with many good words suitable to the times, he sat down. And the barons of the country rose and told him that they were ready to do all that he commanded and so likewise said the knights and citizens and townsmen. And when this was done the council separated.

And, a few days after, the Lord King passed into Calabria with all his followers, and then the admiral had all the galleys and other lenys and terides and barges collected, to carry provisions and all that was wanted, and when

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

it was done and all ready the admiral departed from Messina with all the fleet and went to Calabria, to the palace of Saint Martin, where the Lord King was with the chivalry which had come over from Sicily, and with those richs homens and knights and almugavars he had sent for from Calabria; so that all were with him on the day he had assigned to them. And so the Lord King embarked, by the favour of God, with all the followers who were to go with him on the journey and he set his course for the Principality.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of him and shall turn to speak of his enemies.

CHAPTER CLXIV.

How the count of Artois, hearing of the preparations made in Sicily, went to Naples and Salerno with all his forces and with succours from the Apostolic.

AND when his enemies heard of the preparations made in Sicily, they thought at once that they were against Naples and Salerno. And so the count of Artois and many other barons in the Kingdom who were for King Charles, came with all their forces to Naples and Salerno, and there was much chivalry, for the Pope had sent great succour in men and money. And they so reinforced these two cities that they could not be taken till all had been killed.

Now I shall turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily who, when he had embarked, went visiting all his places on the coast, as far as Castellabate, which is thirty-four miles distant from Salerno, as I have told you already.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXV.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily set his course for Salerno and the admiral sailed along the coast of Amalfi and carried off all the ships and terides from the port of Naples and besieged Gaeta.

WHEN he had visited Castellabate he steered for Salerno and there might you have seen a great cry of alarm, so that it seemed that all the world was crumbling. The admiral beached the ships, poop foremost, on the shelving rocks which are before the city. And there the cross-bows did great damage; and they stopped there all that day and night. And on the following day, departing from Salerno, they sailed along the coast of Amalfi, and the admiral landed almugavars who burned and sacked many places which had been built up again since En Berenguer de Sarriá had pillaged them all. And departing thence they steered for Naples. And at Naples you might have seen ringing of bells and chivalry issue forth; it was wonderful, what a number of people went to the seashore; nevertheless there were not so many people nor knights that the admiral did not take away whatever ships and terides there were in the port; and so they remained before the city three days. Then they steered for Ischia, and there they landed and reconnoitred the castle and the town and the admiral prized it highly when he had reconnoitred it. And then he left Ischia and set his course for Gaeta and there he landed all the horses and all his followers and besieged the city by sea and by land and erected four catapults which shot into the city all day. And, assuredly, he would have taken it, but, two days before he came to the city, full a thousand horsemen of King Charles had entered it and so they held it strongly. What shall I tell you? The siege was very close and they so distressed the city that they within had plenty of ill

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

fortune. And also they of the King of Sicily overran all that country every day and penetrated inland, three or four marches, and made the most royal raids of the world, and carried off persons as well as goods and silver and gold which they took from towns and manors which they burned and plundered; and, of beasts, they carried off so many that they would kill an ox solely for the hide, or a sheep for the liver. They were so rich in all kinds of meat, it was altogether wonderful that a country could feed so much cattle as this host consumed.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily, who is besieging Gaeta, and I shall turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLXVI.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon had an interview with the King of England and married the daughter of the said King of England; and of the great feasts and dances and sports made.

WHEN micer Bonifacio and micer Jean de Grailly had departed from the Lord King of England, each of them went to where it had been ordained. What more should I tell you about it? They went to and fro so much, one to the King of England and the other to the King of France, that they brought the matter to a good issue namely to this; that the Lord King of Aragon should have an interview with the King of England at a place called Oloron, which is in Gascony. And the interview took place. And, on the day assigned, the King of England, with the Queen, his wife, and the Infanta, his daughter, came to the said place, Oloron, and so likewise came the Lord King of Aragon, and with him the Lord Infante En Pedro and many richs homens and

July 1287

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

knights and citizens and townsmen, who all came richly arrayed and apparelled in fine clothes and beautiful harness. And, so likewise, came micer Bonifacio de Salamandrana and micer Jean de Grailly. And the feast was very great which the King of England made for the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Pedro and for all their followers. What should I tell you of it? The feast lasted full ten days before they began to speak of any affairs.

And when the feast was over they began to parley and, finally, the Lord King of Aragon was betrothed to the Infanta, daughter of the King of England, who was the most beautiful and graceful damsel of the world. And when the betrothal had been settled the feast began again, much greater than it had been before. And the Lord King of Aragon had a very high stage set up and always threw three daggers so marvellously that the English and the other people admired it much and the ladies likewise were full of admiration. And afterwards they had jousts and martial exercises and then round tables. And so likewise you might have seen knights and ladies dance and sometimes the two Kings with the Queens and with countesses and other great ladies; and the Infante and the richs homens on both sides danced. What shall I tell you? This feast lasted full a month, and one day the Lord King dined with the King of England and on the next day the King of England dined with the Lord King of Aragon.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXVII.

How the King of England negotiated to get King Charles out of prison and how the said King Charles, being in prison, had a vision bidding him seek for the body of my Lady Saint Mary Magdalen which he found in the place he had seen in the vision.

THEN, when all this feast was over, the King of England sat in council with the Lord King of Aragon and with micer Bonifacio de Salamandrana and with micer Jean de Grailly to discuss the matter of getting King Charles out of prison. And upon this each side had said and spoken much, for and against, and in the end the matter ended in this, that a hundred thousand silver marks were given incontinent to the Lord King of Aragon, which the King of England lent to King Charles. And it was ordained that King Charles should come out of prison and that he should swear, on the word of a King, that, within a fixed time, he would arrange a peace between the Church and the King of France and himself and the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord King of Sicily; and that, until that time, King Charles should be replaced in prison by three of his sons and twenty sons of richs homens.

And the King of England became responsible for the fulfilment of all this. And so the Lord King of Aragon wished to do all these things in honour of his father-in-law, the King of England; and he, incontinent, made King 1288
Charles come out of prison. And there were many who said that, when King Charles was out of prison, he would not send any of his sons. But they who said so did not say well; for, assuredly, this King Charles the Second, who had been and was at that time a prisoner of the Lord King of Aragon, was one of the generous lords of the world and one who was always displeased at the war with Aragon; and he was one of the pious lords of the

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

world and one of the most upright. And this was shown clearly in the grace God did him that, in a vision, he was bidden to seek at St. Martin in Provence the body of my Lady Saint Mary Magdalen. And in that place, as came to him in a vision, more than twenty lance staves underground, he found the body of the blessed Lady, Saint Mary Magdalen. And so every one may know and suppose that, if he had not been so worthy and just, God would not have made such a revelation to him.

And so, when he came out of prison, he had an interview at Perpignan with the Lord King of Mallorca who showed him much honour.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of King Charles and shall turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon, and of the King of England.

CHAPTER CLXVIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon departed from Oloron accompanied by the King of England; and how King Charles had an interview with the King of Mallorca and with the King of England.

WHEN all this was accomplished, the Lord King of Aragon departed from Oloron and took leave of the Queen of England and of the Queen Infanta, his affianced bride. And at the parting many presents of jewels were given on both sides. And afterwards the King of England accompanied the Lord King of Aragon until he had returned to his dominions, and then they took leave of each other, like a father and son, and each went to his own country.

And when King Charles had had an interview with the King of Mallorca, he had an interview with the King of England and gave him many thanks for what he had

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

done for him. And before he parted from him, he paid him the hundred thousand silver marks that the King of England had given to the Lord King of Aragon for him. And the King of England begged him to send at once to the King of Aragon the hostages he had promised for him; and King Charles promised him that he would not fail to do so on any account; so they took leave of each other. And the King of England returned to his country and prepared to ordain and to treat of the peace between Holy Church and the King of France and the King of Aragon, his son-in-law.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the King of England and shall turn to speak of King Charles who went to Provence to negotiate what he had promised the King of England.

CHAPTER CLXIX.

How King Charles sent his three sons with twenty sons of nobles of Provence to the Lord King of Aragon as hostages; and how he asked for succour from the King of France and the Apostolic because he had heard that the King of Sicily was besieging Gaeta.

AND at Marseilles were three of his sons (monsenyer En Louis was there and also monsenyer En Ramon Berenguer who was his fifth son). And these three, with twenty sons of noblemen of Provence, he sent to Barcelona, to the Lord King of Aragon, to be kept there in prison in his place. And the Lord King of Aragon received them and sent them to Ciurana, and there they were kept as King Charles would have been, had he been there.

And when King Charles had accomplished all he had to do, he went to France and had an interview with the King of France and asked him for succour of chivalry,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

because he had heard that the King of Sicily was holding Gaeta besieged. And the King of France gave him all the succour and aid he asked, as well of men as of money. And so he departed with much French chivalry and went to the Pope and asked him, likewise, for succour, and the Pope did all he asked; and with all these forces he came to Gaeta. And there came to him there his son, Charles Martel, who was his eldest son, with great forces, so that there were so many followers, their number was infinite. However, if the admiral and the other barons who were with the Lord King of Sicily had consented, assuredly, he would have offered them battle; but they did not consent on any account, rather they threw up strong fortifications where they were at the siege.

And King Charles besieged the Lord King of Sicily and so, likewise, in the same manner, the Lord King of Sicily was holding the city of Gaeta besieged and discharged the catapults into the city, and so likewise the city cast at the King of Sicily. And King Charles came, who besieged the siege of the Lord King of Sicily and cast at the said besiegers with catapults and the besiegers for the Lord King of Sicily cast at the besiegers for King Charles. And so you might see daily feats of arms performed by the followers of the Lord King of Sicily against those of the city and the host of King Charles, which were miracles to behold. What shall I tell you? This lasted a long time. And King Charles saw that this matter turned greatly to his hurt and that, in the end, the Lord King of Sicily would take the city; and, if he had the city, all the Principality and the Terra di Labor would be lost. And he sent messengers to the Lord King of Sicily at the siege and asked him for a truce and he informed him by his letter that he asked him for a truce for a time, because it was against his conscience to be thus opposed to him and besieging him, for he had promised and sworn to the ord King of Aragon that, when he was out of prison, he

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

would endeavour as much as he could, to establish peace and love between them and that, what he had promised he wished to fulfil, if God gave him life, and that peace would be much better discussed during a truce than during war.

And when the Lord King of Sicily heard this letter, which King Charles had sent him, he knew that it was the truth he was telling him ; and again, as he knew the great worth of King Charles, he knew that he would endeavour to establish peace and love, therefore he consented to the truce. And so the truce was agreed to, in such manner that King Charles should go away, and then the Lord King of Sicily, after King Charles had gone away with all his followers, would embark with all he had at the siege. And so it was fulfilled ; King Charles went to Naples with all his host, and then the Lord King of Sicily embarked at his convenience and came to Sicily, to Messina, where a great feast was made for him, and the admiral dismantled the galleys. After this the Lord King of Sicily went visiting his dominions and all Calabria, and the admiral with him, and they disported themselves and hunted. And he maintained all the country a long time in peace and justice.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of them and shall turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLXX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon resolved to conquer Minorca and sent to tell his brother the Lord King of Sicily ; and sent to tell the admiral En Roger de Luria to come with forty armed galleys ; and how the admiral came and proceeded to conquer Minorca.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon had departed from Oloron and returned to his country he thought it would be to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

his shame that Saracens should have the island of Minorca; and so that it would be well that he should cast them out of it and conquer it and thus deliver his uncle, the King of Mallorca, from trouble; and that it would be better to give up the island of Minorca to him inhabited by Christians, rather than leave the Saracens there. And so he sent his messengers to the almojarife of Minorca to tell him to prepare to leave the island; or otherwise, if he did not, that he assured him that he would take it from him and would kill him and all his people. And the almojarife made him a very cold answer; and so the Lord King thought that he would avenge the treachery of the almojarife towards the Lord King, his father, when he let it be known in Barbary that the Lord King was going there, whereby En Bugron had lost his head and Constantine had been lost, as you have heard already. And he, at once, sent his messengers to his brother, the Lord King of Sicily, to tell him to send him the admiral with forty armed galleys; and he let him know that he wanted them for the said expedition to Minorca. And so he sent letters to the admiral to tell him to hasten and to come at once to Barcelona with the galleys. And as the Lord King of Aragon had sent to tell his brother, the Lord King of Sicily, and the admiral, so it was done; the admiral equipped forty galleys and came to Barcelona. And he came there at the feast of All Saints and found the Lord King who had got ready the chivalry which was to go with him and the almugavars, so that there were, of expert people, full five hundred knights with armed horses and full thirty thousand almugavars. And they embarked, by the grace of God, at Salou and came to the city of Mallorca where they all arrived fifteen days before Christmas. And the winter was so severe that no man had ever seen so hard a winter, with wind and rain and squalls. What shall I tell you about it? The winter was so severe that it was as if they had been in the sea

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of Azof, for there were galley slaves who lost the tips of their fingers owing to the cold.

But I must tell you a fine instance and miracle which happened in that evil time, which I and all the other men have seen ; and I wish to relate this to you in order that each of you guard against the wrath of God.

CHAPTER CLXXI.

Recounts the great miracle which happened to an almugavar who was from Segorbe because he would eat meat on Christmas Eve.

It is the truth that there were, in a company, twenty almugavars who came from Segorbe and that district, and were lodged in the portico of Saint Nicholas of Porto-Pi. And on Christmas Eve, ten of them went to get beasts to eat on Christmas Day and they brought four sheep and had them killed ; and when they were killed, they hung them up in the portico. And one of the companions, who was from Segorbe, and had gambled and lost, took a quarter of a sheep in his rage and put it on the spit. And it is the custom of the Catalans that all men fast on Christmas Eve and do not eat until night. And so these almugavars went to provide themselves with cabbages and fish and fruit to eat ; and when, at vesper time, they came to the said lodging in the portico of Saint Nicholas of Porto-Pi, they saw, near the fire where they were to dine, the quarter of the sheep on the spit. And they wondered and started back and said :—Who is it who has put this quarter of a sheep thus near the fire for us ? " And the almugavar said he had put it there. " And why have you done this ? " said they. " Because," said he, " I want to eat meat to-night, to disgrace to-morrow's feast." And they reproved him greatly, but

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

thought that, though he spoke so boldly, he would not do it. And so they prepared their supper and laid their table. And he took a napkin and sat down on the other side of the fire and spread his napkin, and all began to laugh and to whisper, for they thought he was doing it for a joke. And when they had sat down and began to eat, he took his quarter of mutton and set it down in front of himself and cut off a piece of meat and said :— "I wish to eat this meat to disgrace the feast of to-night and of to-morrow." And at the first bit he put into his mouth there appeared to him a man so tall that his head touched the roof of the portico, who threw a handful of ashes in his face which made him fall to the ground. When he was on the ground he cried :—"Saint Mary defend me!" three times, and he lay there as if he were dead, his limbs powerless and his eyesight gone. And his companions lifted him up and put him on a blanket and he remained like one dead well up to midnight.

And as the cock crowed he recovered speech and asked for a priest. And the priest of the said church of Saint Nicholas came and he confessed very devoutly. And on the morning of Christmas Day, at his prayer and entreaty, they carried him to the church of Our Lady Saint Mary of Mallorca ; and he had himself set down before the altar and everyone came to see him. And he was so weak that he could not move any of his limbs nor help himself and he had completely lost his eyesight. And, weeping, he begged the people to pray to God for him, and before all he declared his sins and trespasses with great contrition and great grief ; every man and every woman was full of compassion for him. And it was ordained that in the said church, which is the cathedral, Salve Reginas should be said until he died or recovered. What more shall I tell you about it ? This lasted until the day of Epiphany, when the cathedral was full of people. And after the sermon, the preacher begged all the people to pray to Our

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Lady Saint Mary, that she entreat her blessed, dear Son that on that holy day He manifest His miraculous power on yonder sinner; and he told them all to kneel down and the priests sang the Salve Regina, and when they had sung it, the man gave a great cry and all his limbs were convulsed, so that fully six priests had to hold him. And at the end of the Salve Regina, with a great creaking of all his bones, he recovered his sight in the presence of all, and his limbs came back, each in its place, straight and sound. And so he and all the people gave great thanks to God for so great a miracle that God and Our Lady Saint Mary had manifested to them.

And so the good man went away, sound and straight. Wherefore each of you who hear of this miracle, which was so manifest and public, profit by it and fear the might of God and endeavour to do well and take care to do nothing, by act or word, against the name of God and of Our Lady Saint Mary, nor of that of His blessed saints, nor against the feasts that are ordained by the Holy Roman Church.

CHAPTER CLXXII.

How the Lord King of Aragon and all his fleet met with a great storm as he was going to conquer Minorca; and how he conquered all the island and in what manner; and how the admiral on returning to Sicily met with a storm and ran as far as Trapani.

Now I shall turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon who, after he had kept Christmas in the city of Mallorca, made every one embark and set his course for Minorca. And when he was twenty miles out at sea, near the island of Minorca, he encountered a great storm which scattered all his fleet, in such manner that he landed at the port of Mahon with only twenty galleys. And the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

almojarife of Minorca, who had prepared himself well for defence and had had great succours from Barbary, came to the stern of the galleys with all his forces, so that he was there with full five hundred horsemen and forty thousand afoot. And the Lord King was with the galleys in echelon at Conejo Island. And that storm lasted full eight days during which none of his men could join him, and then the weather improved and soon they came to the port of Mahon, now two galleys, then three ships; thus all assembled as they could.

And when the Lord King of Aragon saw that two hundred armed horses had arrived, he landed the horses and all his followers landed. And the almojarife, who saw what forces had arrived, went to the castle of Mahon and there assembled all his forces. And then the Lord King to whom full four hundred armed horses and a part of the almugavars had come, said to the admiral and to the other richs homens who were there that he would not await more of his followers, but the admiral and the others entreated him not to do that, but to await all his knights. But he said that the winter was very severe and the galleys were suffering great hardship and that he would not endure this on any account, so he went to where the almojarife was.

And the almojarife with all his forces came down in order of battle, to a fine plain which is near the said castle of Mahon. And when the hosts were near each other the Lord King attacked in good order with all his followers and the almojarife likewise attacked the King of Aragon. And the battle was cruel, for the men of the island were good men of arms, and there were Turks there, brave men whom the almojarife had in his pay. And the battle was so cruel that all had enough to do; but the Lord King, who was of the most expert knights of the world, attacked here and there and no knight escaped him whom he could reach with a blow, so that all his arms broke

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

except the mace, with which he did so much that no man dared to stand up to him. And so, by the favour of God, and by his prowess and that of his followers, he won the battle; the almojarife fled into the castle with about twenty of his kinsmen, and all the others died.

And so the Lord King had the field searched by his followers and then went to besiege the castle to which the almojarife had retreated; and meanwhile the whole of the fleet of the Lord King had arrived. And when the almojarife saw the great forces of the Lord King, he sent him his messengers and begged him that, in his kindness and mercy, he let him go to Barbary with twenty of his kinsmen who were with him, and their wives and children, with only their clothes and with provisions to last them so far, and he would surrender the castle of Mahon and the town of Ciutadella.

And so the Lord King, in order to have the whole island without further hindrance, granted this; and so the almojarife surrendered the castle to him and the town of Ciutadella and all the other places in the island and gave him all the treasure he had. And the Lord King chartered for him a ship manned by Genoese, which had come to Mahon on account of the storm and was going to Ibiza to load up with salt. And on board that ship he put the almojarife with about a hundred persons, men, women and children, and he paid the ship and had many provisions put in. And they left the port at such a time that the ship encountered a storm and was destroyed off the coast of Barbary and not one person escaped. And so you see when Our Lord wishes to destroy a nation how easily He does it; wherefore everyone should beware of His wrath, for you see how the wheel of fortune turned suddenly against the almojarife and his race who had ruled that island for over a thousand years.

Then, when the Lord King had sent away the almojarife and his dependents, he went to Ciutadella and had all

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the women and children of the whole island taken, and the men who had remained alive, of whom there were very few, for all those in the battle had died. And when the women and children and men of the island were all taken, there were full forty thousand. And he had them bound, and made En Ramon Calbet, a franklin of Lérida, their chief and master for their sale. And En Ramon appointed other officials under himself, and sent the greater number of prisoners to Mallorca, and some to Sicily and to Catalonia and to other parts. And at each place there was a public auction of the people and of the goods which were found belonging to them.

And when this had been settled the Lord King ordained that a strongly walled town should be built at Mahon, by the harbour. And he left, as procurator of the island, En Pedro de Lebia, a burgess of Valencia, and gave him full powers to give all the island to Catalan inhabitants and to people it with worthy people. And he did so assuredly, for the island of Minorca is inhabited by as worthy Catalans as any place could be.

And when the Lord King had settled all his officials in the island and given orders to people it, leaving En Pedro de Lebia, who was a very worthy and wise man, as head and captain of all, he departed from Minorca and came to Mallorca where a great feast was made for him on the occasion of his arrival. And he visited all the island of Mallorca with the admiral and with Galceran de Anglesola and other richs homens who were with him. And then he departed from Mallorca and sent all the fleet to Catalonia with the admiral; and the Lord King, with four galleys, went to visit Ibiza where a great feast was made for him. And there he stayed four days and then went to Catalonia and landed at Salou; and from Salou he went to Barcelona, where he found the admiral who had already landed with all the fleet. And the admiral took leave of him and then returned to Sicily.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

As he was returning he encountered so great a storm in the Gulf of Lyons that all the galleys were separated, and there were some which ran to Barbary and others to the Principality, and the admiral was in great danger at that time. However by the aid of God Who had helped him in many places, he was able to repair the damage, and he ran to Trapani where he was safe and sound, and then, in a few days, he recovered all the galleys. And when all were at Trapani he went to Messina where he found the Lord King and all his followers who were making a great feast. And at Messina he dismantled the galleys and followed the court of the Lord King, as one without whose knowledge the Lord King did nothing. And they lived with great cheerfulness, disporting and visiting, with the court, all Calabria and the Principality of Taranto and the places they had in the Principality.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLXXIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon sent his messengers to negotiate the peace with King Charles at Tarascon where peace was arranged as suited the Lord King of Aragon and to the great honour of the Lord King of Sicily; and how the Lord King En Alfonso fell ill of a tumour.

WHEN the Lord King came to Barcelona, where a great feast was made for him and great honour shown him, he went to visit all his dominions. And when he was in Aragon he had an interview with Don Alfonso of Castile and Don Fernando, his brother, and gave them much out of his own wealth. And he found that they were very

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

well and were waging war with the King Don Sancho, their uncle, and were gaining territory from him daily.

And so he went visiting all the frontiers and every day urgent messengers came to him from the Pope and the King of France and the King of England to treat of peace between them. And this the King of England incited, because he wished that the marriage between the Lord King of Aragon and his daughter should take place the following year; therefore he pushed negotiations on with all his power. And, indeed, King Charles did also, because he had promised it. King Charles and the King of England conducted the negotiations so strenuously that the Pope sent a cardinal to Provence, to Tarascon, with King Charles to treat of peace with the Lord King of Aragon. When they came to Tarascon they sent their messengers to the Lord King of Aragon to ask him to send his, to treat of peace with them.

And the Lord King came to Barcelona to ordain the said treaty. And when he was at Barcelona he convoked his Cortes, that all should be at Barcelona on a day assigned; and as he had commanded so it was done. When the Cortes were assembled, and all were at the royal palace, he told them that King Charles and the cardinal were at Tarascon and had requested him to send messengers to treat of peace with them; and as he did not wish to do anything without the advice of his barons and knights and citizens and townsmen, they should arrange about the messengers, who they should be and with what power they should go; and that, what they arranged, he and all others would hold for well done and settled. And before they separated, it was agreed that the messengers should be twelve; namely, two richs homens and four knights and two learned men and two citizens and two townsmen. And it was settled how many townsmen and how many squires each should take with him and that, as everything had been ordained, so it should be fulfilled;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and so it was. And they gave power to forty men, richs homens and knights and citizens and townsmen, to arrange and settle this matter. And again, it was ordained that no one should leave Barcelona until the messengers had gone to and returned from Tarascon, in order that they should know what had been done ; and so it was agreed.

And when all this was agreed these forty men assembled twice daily in the house of the Preachers[1] and treated of and ordained the matter. And as they ordained every day, so they reported to the Lord King, and he amended what seemed to him should be improved, as a most wise and expert Lord ; and his mind was full of true charity and justice and all other wisdom. The messengers were elected and it was settled in what manner they should go, to the honour of the Lord King and of all his dominions ; they were given the written clauses and powers, and they were nobly arrayed and a major-domo was assigned to them, as was suitable for what they represented.

And they departed from Barcelona and, what with led horses and their own mounts and those of their companions and squires and the pack-mules, the animals they took with them were altogether a hundred. And all the messengers were worthy and honourable and wise. And they went on their journeys until they came to Tarascon. And the Lord King remained at Barcelona with all the court, and if ever you saw games and diversions, then might you do so, round tables as well as dagger throwing, martial exercises and jousts and dancing of knights and citizens and townsmen and members of every guild of the city, exerting themselves in all games and diversions. No one thought of anything save only to rejoice and divert himself and to do all God and the Lord King wished.

And when the messengers came to Tarascon they were well received by King Charles and by the cardinal and by

[1] The Dominicans.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the ambassadors of the King of France who were there, and especially by the four messengers of the King of England who were there. And he who would know the names of the messengers, and all that the cardinal said to them in the name of the Holy Father, and again all they answered, and all that was done from their arrival until their departure, let him go to the Gesta En Galceran de Vilanova wrote of it, and there he will find it all in due order, and also everything En Maymo de Castellaulí, amongst the others, replied, who was one of the said messengers of the Lord King of Aragon. And if you ask me why I name En Maymo de Castellaulí more than any of the others, I tell you it is because he answered in a more manly way and more as becomes a knight than any other; and if any good was done, it was done by the words he spoke.

And so I need say no more about it. The parleys between them lasted a long time and, in the end, they took their leave and returned with what they had done and found the Lord King at Barcelona and there, before the whole Cortes, they gave the message they were bringing, with which the Lord King and all his council were content. A peace was arranged, as honourable and as good as the Lord King and his followers required and also greatly to the honour of the Lord King of Sicily.

So the marriage of the Infanta, daughter of the King of England, with the Lord King of Aragon was to have been celebrated in a few days. But Our Lord the true God wished to give another turn to all that had been arranged at Tarascon. But everyone can understand that Our Lord the true God is all righteousness and truth, wherefore no one knows nor can understand His secrets. And where man fears, in his feeble understanding, that something God does ends in harm, it turns to great good. Wherefore no one should be troubled by anything God does. And so it is needful that, in this matter, we all take comfort in

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

this and praise and thank God for all He gives us. Because, when the feast at Barcelona was at its height, with the greatest cheerfulness and the greatest disporting, it happened to please God that the Lord King En Alfonso should fall ill with a tumour which formed in his groin. But he did not on that account, refrain from dagger-throwing nor from martial exercises, for he was bolder in feats of arms than anyone in the world. And so, as he neglected this tumour, fever supervened, which attacked him so severely for full ten days that any man would have died.

CHAPTER CLXXIV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon passed from this life owing to a tumour which formed in his groin.

AND when he felt thus worse he made his will with as great care as any king could make it; and once or twice he had it read and examined. And he left the Kingdom to the Lord King En Jaime, King of Sicily, his brother, and his body to the Minorite Friars of Barcelona. And so, with great contrition for his sins, he confessed many times and received Our Saviour and received Extreme Unction. And when he had thus received all the sacraments of Holy Church, he took leave of everyone, had the crucifix given to him and adored it very devoutly, with sobs and tears, and he crossed his arms over the crucifix on his breast and raised his eyes to Heaven and said:—"Into Thy hands, Father Lord Jesus Christ, I commend my spirit." And he made the sign of the Cross over himself and blessed himself and then all his people and all his dominions. And, embracing the crucifix, he said many good orisons and passed from this life in the year of Our Lord Jesus Christ

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

1291 1291 on the 18th of June. And if ever you saw great mourning in a city it was then, from those who had lost a good lord. And as he had commanded, he was carried in a great procession to the Minorite Friars and there he was buried. God in His mercy keep his soul. And we can have no doubt whatever that he is with God in Paradise, as one who went there virgin. For he had never known a woman; rather his intention was to come virgin to his wife and so he would have no intercourse with any other woman.[1]

CHAPTER CLXXV.

How the count of Ampurias and other richs homens were elected to go to Sicily to bring the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily to Catalonia; and how my Lady the Queen his mother and the Infante En Fadrique his brother remained as heads and chiefs of Sicily and all Calabria.

AND, when the body had been buried, the will was read and, at once, four galleys were equipped and the count of Ampurias and other richs homens and knights and citizens were elected to go to Sicily to fetch the Lord King En Jaime. And so it was done; the count of Ampurias and the others who had been elected at once embarked to go to Sicily, to bring the Lord King En Jaime to be lord of Aragon and of Catalonia and of the Kingdom of Valencia. And meanwhile the barons and richs homen and knights and citizens and townsmen ordained that the Lord Infante En Pedro should reign and govern the dominions with the council which was given him, until the said Lord King En Jaime had come to Catalonia. And the Lord Infante En Pedro reigned and governed the Kingdoms as wisely as any wise lord could.

[1] This is not borne out by the words of a codicil in which Alfonso provides for his son by a woman called Dulcie.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And soon the count of Ampurias and the others who were going with him had embarked and they went, now with one wind, now with another, now rowing, now sailing, so that, in a short time they landed at Trapani, and they heard that my Lady the Queen and the Lord King En Jaime and the Lord Infante En Fadrique were at Messina. And when they came to Messina they went on, without unfurling a banner, to the custom house and there they landed, without chanting the Te Deum. And when they were before my Lady the Queen and the Lord King and the Lord Infante, the count, weeping, told them the death of the Lord King En Alfonso. And if ever you saw mourning and weeping it was there. What shall I tell you? For two days the great mourning lasted. After these two days the count begged my Lady the Queen and the Lord King to have a general council assembled. And at once the Lord King convoked a council and everyone was assembled in Santa Maria la Nova. And the count of Ampurias, in the presence of all, had the testament of the Lord King En Pedro published, in which there was a clause, that if the Lord King En Alfonso died without children, the Kingdom of Aragon should devolve upon the said Lord King En Jaime, as also Catalonia and the Kingdom of Valencia, as you have heard already. And then he had the testament of the Lord King En Alfonso published and he, likewise, left all his dominions to the Lord King En Jaime, his brother, King of Sicily. And when the testaments had been read, the count and the other messengers who had come requested the Lord King that it might please him to go to Catalonia and take possession of his dominions. And the Lord King answered that he was ready to go, but that he would set in order the island of Sicily and all Calabria and all the other territory in the way they should be left and then he would go. And the answer pleased all.

And at once the Lord King commanded the admiral to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

have thirty galleys equipped; and soon the admiral set up a table and had thirty galleys manned and got ready. And at once the Lord King sent throughout all Calabria and the other territories to richs homens and knights and to syndics of cities and towns to come to him at once at Messina; and as he commanded by his letters, so they all came to him at Messina. And when they were at Messina he preached to them and said many good words to them and commended my Lady the Queen to them, to guard her and to look upon her as their head and sovereign; and so, likewise, he commanded them to hold, as head and chief and lord, the Infante En Fadrique as if it were himself, and to do all he commanded and wished, as they would for him. And they, incontinent, promised him this and he made the sign of the Cross over them and blessed them all and took leave of them, and they, weeping, kissed his hands and his feet and afterwards they likewise kissed the hands of the Infante En Fadrique. And when this was done they took leave and all returned to Calabria and to the other places, much grieved at losing the Lord King; but all had great joy in the increase of honour that had come to him, and also in the good chief he had left them, namely the Lord Infante En Fadrique, his brother.

CHAPTER CLXXVI.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon embarked at Trapani to pass into Catalonia and disembarked at Barcelona, where he had masses celebrated for the soul of King En Alfonso, his brother, and at Santas Creus for the Lord King En Pedro, his father; and how he was crowned at Saragossa and promised succour to Don Alfonso of Castile.

AND when this was done the Lord King took leave of all the community of Messina and gave them the same orders

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

that he had given to the men of Calabria. And then he went to Palermo where, likewise, he had summoned all his Sicilian barons, and knights and syndics of cities and towns. And when they were all assembled he spoke many good words to them, as he had done to the others, and gave them the same orders. And when he had done this he took leave of all and went to Trapani.

And meanwhile the admiral had arrived with the galleys, and my Lady the Queen and the Lord Infante En Fadrique were there and all the barons of Sicily. And there the Lord King En Jaime took leave of my Lady the Queen, his mother, who gave him her blessing, and then he took leave of the Lord Infante En Fadrique and kissed him more than ten times, as one he loved much for many reasons; namely that they were brothers having the same father and the same mother, and that the Lord King, his father, had commended him to him, and also that he had brought him up and he was, at all times, obedient to him, as a good brother should be towards another, wherefore he loved him with all his heart. And so he left him as governor and lord of all the Kingdom. And he took leave thus of all and embarked by the favour of God, and the count of Ampurias and the other ambassadors with him and the admiral, who did not leave him. And they put out to sea and God gave them fine weather. In a few days they came to Catalonia and landed at Barcelona, by the favour of God; for it was truly a favour of God when the Lord King En Jaime came to his people as King and Lord. On that day peace and 1291
good will entered all the dominions and territories of the Lord King of Aragon. As he was gracious and fortunate for the Kingdom of Sicily, so has he been fortunate and full of all graciousness towards the Kingdom of Aragon and all Catalonia and towards the Kingdom of Valencia and all his other places.

And it is not necessary to tell of the feast which they

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

made for the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily when he had landed at Barcelona. However, before the feast began, he made everyone assemble at the monastery of the Minorites and rendered his tribute, as well of weeping as of masses and of holy offices he caused to be said over the body of the Lord King En Alfonso, his brother. And when he had done this, which lasted four days, then the feast began, so great that it seemed the world was crumbling. And this feast lasted fifteen days. And when this feast was over, he departed from Barcelona and went to Lérida and Saragossa, and in each place a great feast was made for him But however, when he had left Barcelona, the first place he went to was Santas Creus, and there likewise he rendered tribute to the body of the Lord King, his father, and then went on his way as I have told you already to Saragossa and there the feast was, without comparison, the greatest ever made, and there he was crowned in due time.

And then, when the feast of the coronation was over, he had an interview with Don Alfonso of Castile, who came to see him in Aragon, and the Lord King gave him some money out of his own, and Don Alfonso begged him, in his grace and mercy, not to forsake him; for, that the Lord King En Alfonso had died was a great calamity to him; if he had only lived two years longer, he understood he would have made him sovereign of all Castile; wherefore, if he had no help from the Lord King En Jaime, he considered his cause lost. And the Lord King comforted him and said that he might be sure that he would not forsake him, rather would he give him all the help he could. And when this was done Don Alfonso was very joyous and content with the Lord King and returned to Castile, to Seron and other places of his.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXVII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon came to Valencia and was crowned with the crown of the Kingdom and how messengers of King En Sancho of Castile came to him begging for peace which he concluded between him and the King of Castile and his nephews.

THEN the Lord King of Aragon went visiting all Aragon and afterwards came to the city of Valencia where, likewise, a great feast was made for him, and he received the crown of the Kingdom. And whilst he was visiting his territories, there came to him very honourable messengers from King Don Sancho of Castile, his cousin-german, and they greeted him very respectfully in the name of King Don Sancho, his cousin-german. And he sent to let him know that he had great joy in his arrival and that he begged him, as being his dear cousin, whom he loved much, that it might please him to make peace with him; and that he was prepared to support him against all men in the world; and that King En Alfonso had waged war against him and had almost taken his dominions from him and wished to give them to his nephews, who had not so good a right to them as he had, so that he had wondered much at it, and that it did not seem to him he had failed in anything towards him. And so he begged him not to do as King En Alfonso, his brother, had done, but to remember the great obligations that were between them.

The Lord King of Aragon answered the messengers very courteously, having been, and being the most courteous and best nurtured lord in all things any lord has ever been; and he said that they were welcome. And then he said that King Don Sancho should not wonder at anything the Lord King En Alfonso had done in this; King En Alfonso had acted as a good son, " who wished to avenge the great fault King Don Sancho had committed against the Lord King, Our father; and I tell you that

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

We are of the same mind; but as he asks for peace, it is Our pleasure that he have it." And the messengers answered:—" Yes, Lord; and one thing he proposes, that, according to your judgment, he will make reparation to you for all he failed in towards the Lord King, your father. And the reparation shall be what you, Lord, wish, either in gift of cities, castles or towns or villages or in rendering you all the honours that in your judgment he should render you." And the Lord King answered that, as he spoke so well, he held himself satisfied and that he wished for no cities, castles or other places from him; thanks be to God, he had so many kingdoms and such good ones that he did not want his places; but it was enough for him that he repent of what he had done. Nevertheless, he wished him to give part of the land of Castile to those Infantes, his nephews, namely to Don Alfonso and Don Fernando; he would not on any account forsake them. And the messengers said that upon this they would depart.

And so they returned to the King of Castile. And when they were before their lord, the King of Castile, they recounted to him all that the Lord King of Aragon had said and told him of the great worth and wisdom there was in him. And the King of Castile was very content and commanded them to return to the King of Aragon to say that he was ready to do all he commanded. What should I tell you about it? Messengers went so many times from one to the other that peace was granted on both parts. Don Alfonso and Don Fernando wished to be at peace with their uncle, King Don Sancho, and they were content with what the Lord King of Aragon had arranged that the King of Castile should give them, and they renounced the Kingdom. And so the interview between the Lord King of Aragon and the King of Castile was arranged and all endeavoured to come to the interview as splendidly as they could.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

When the Lord King of Aragon was at Calatayud with a great following of richs homens and prelates and knights and citizens, he heard that the King of Castile was at Soria where, also, he had taken the Queen and the Infante Don Juan, brother of King Don Sancho, and many other richs homens; and the Lord King, who knew that the Queen was at Soria, out of his courtesy and in honour of the Queen, wished to go to Soria before they came to Calatayud. And when the King of Castile knew that the King of Aragon was coming, he went out four leagues to meet him; and there the Lord King of Aragon and all his followers were received with great honour and when they came to Soria nothing was done but feasting and rejoicing.

And when the feast was over, the Lord King wished to return, and he begged the King of Castile and the Queen to come with him to Calatayud, and they said they would do so willingly. And so, all together, they came to Calatayud where the Lord King entertained the King of Castile and the Queen and all who were with them from the day they entered Aragon until the day they left it and returned to Castile. And, assuredly, I can tell you for certain that, of whatever provisions and things a man can have or can name, the Lord King had such large rations given that no one could eat all; rather you might have seen in the squares two diners worth of bread given for one diner, and a sucking-pig, or kid, or sheep, or oats, or dried or salt fish, which in other places would cost two sueldos, bought here for six diners. And therefore you would find all the squares full of runners who came there, so that all the Castilians and Galicians and many other people who were there wondered.

And one day the Lord King dined at the lodging of the King of Castile with the King and the Queen, and on the next they dined in his lodging. The feast made every day was so great that it was a marvel to behold. What shall

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

I tell you about it? The two Kings stayed twelve days together at Calatayud and during those days peace was made and signed between them. And, besides, peace was made between the King of Castile and his nephews; he gave them so much territory in Castile that they held themselves satisfied and were grateful to the Lord King of Aragon, as well they might be, for, if it had not been for him, they would have had nothing.

And so, when they had been thirteen days at Calatayud in great harmony, and peace and love they departed thence and the Lord King accompanied the King and Queen of Castile until they were quite out of Aragon. And the Lord King of Aragon entertained everyone, as I have told you already, until they were out of his dominions, and no man would ever perceive that the rations diminished any day, rather they increased and improved daily. And when they came to the parting of the Kingdoms, they took leave of each other with great concord and love and graciousness, which God had established amongst them. And the King and Queen of Castile went away, content and joyous at the peace they had made with the Lord King of Aragon, and also at the peace with their nephews; for the King had been in great fear that his Kingdom would be taken from him, as would have been done if the Lord King of Aragon had wished it. But the Lord King of Aragon wished rather to arrange peace and love between them, because of the great obligations there were between them and towards himself.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the King of Castile and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and Sicily.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXVIII.

How the Lord King of Aragon and Sicily maintained all his Kingdom in peace and curbed factions which he would not allow in cities nor towns and especially curbed the faction of the Garidells and the Carbons and the Puixs at Tortosa.

WITH that, when the Kings had parted and had taken leave of each other, the Lord King went about all his territories, cheerful and content, settling and improving, so that in a brief time he had settled all his country in peace and concord. Since his coronation he has thus held, and he still holds, his territory in peace and righteousness, so that anyone can go about by night or by day with a load of coin on his back, without meeting anyone who would injure him. And so likewise there is peace and concord between all his barons who had always been accustomed to fight each other; and also he did away with factions, which could no longer exist in the cities nor in the towns. At Tortosa, which is a fine city, there had long been great factions of the Garridells and the Carbons and the Puixs. And in order to punish them he made an agreement with En Guillerm de Moncada who owned a third of Tortosa, and made an exchange with him and also with the Templars. And when all the city was his he stopped the factions, some by agreement, some by force, in such manner that now Tortosa is quieter than any other city of Catalonia. And so it was done likewise in many other places.

Now I shall cease to speak of the Lord King of Aragon who is going about thus, settling his dominions, and I wish to tell you of the round table the admiral En Roger de Luria held at Calatayud when the Kings came there, which was one of the most wonderful things ever done.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXIX.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria held a round table at Calatayud; and how the Lord King En Jaime of Sicily and Aragon and the King of Castile visited him, which was a great honour.

It is the truth that when the Kings were at Calatayud, as you have heard already, the Catalans were asking everyone: "Which is the admiral of the King of Aragon to whom God has shown so much favour?" And he was pointed out to them with a hundred or two hundred knights following him, as two or three men might follow another man; and they never tired of gazing. And the admiral, in honour of the King and Queen of Castile, had a round table cried at Calatayud, and set up a platform for jousts and had a wooden castle made at the top of the lists, from which he would issue at the approach of a knight. And on the first day of the round table he, all alone, wished to hold the castle against any man who wished to break a lance; and the Lord King of Aragon was there and the King of Castile and the Infante Don Juan, brother of the King of Castile, and Don Juan, son of the Infante En Manuel, and Don Diego de Viscaya and other barons from all the territories and dominions of Castile, and richs homens of Aragon and Catalonia and of the Kingdom of Valencia and also from Gascony, and many other people who had come to see the jousts, and especially to see what the admiral would do, for all the world was speaking of him.

All that plain of Calatayud, where the round table was held, was so full of people that they could not all stay there; so that, if it had not been that it was winter, men could not have tarried there, but at that season there was little rain. And when the kings and all the people were there, there came a knight challenger, very beautifully arrayed and with a fine countenance, ready for a

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

joust. And as soon as they of the wooden castle saw him, they sounded a trumpet and, at once, the admiral issued out of the castle, likewise finely and nobly arrayed, and he looked a very handsome knight. And if anyone asks me: who was the knight challenger? I say it was En Berenguer A. de Anguera, of the city of Murcia, who was very brave and bold and one of the handsomest knights of Spain, and he was of the company of the King of Castile, and tall and stately and well-made. And this I can tell you likewise of the admiral, who was one of the best riders and handsomest knights of the world.

What shall I tell you? The umpires brought two very large staves to the said En Berenguer A. de Anguera and he took the one he liked, and the other they gave to the admiral. And then the umpires placed themselves in the middle of the sheet, and gave the signal to each to advance and they prepared to advance towards each other; and he who saw these two knights advance, may well say that they were knights of great valour, for never could knights advance better according to what was suitable to each, nor in a more manly fashion. And En Berenguer A. de Anguera hit the admiral so great a blow on the front quarter of the shield that the stave came to pieces, and the admiral so hit him on the visor that the helmet flew off his head to a distance greater than the length of two lance staves, and the lance broke into more than a hundred pieces. And as the visor was hit the helmet came down so hard on the face of the said En Berenguer A. de Anguera that it crushed his nose, so that it has never been straight since, and the blood was flowing down the middle of his face and between his eyebrows so that every one thought he was killed. However he was so good a knight that, though he received so great a blow, he was nothing daunted. Both kings, who loved him much, ran to him, fearing he was killed when they saw him all covered with blood and his nose all cut and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

crushed. And they asked him how he felt, and he said that he felt well, that he was not hurt; and they picked up his helmet. But they commanded the round table should be stopped, for they did not wish more to be done, for fear a quarrel should ensue. And so the admiral, in his armour, returned to his lodging with his trumpets and nakers; and all the people followed him, Castilians as well as others, and said he was well worthy of the favour God had shown him in many places; that he was one of the most accomplished knights of the world. And so this triumph was his and a fame which spread through the land of Castile.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the admiral and shall speak to you of the affairs of the Lord King of Aragon and Sicily.

CHAPTER CLXXX.

How the admiral En Roger de Luria returned to Sicily and passed into Calabria with the Lord Infante En Fadrique and they governed the country with truth and justice.

WHEN the Lord King had settled all his affairs concerning Castile and had settled all his country, he commanded the admiral to return to Sicily and to remain with the Lord Infante En Fadrique, and to have always fifty galleys in good repair and fitted out, so that nothing more was wanted but that the men should go on board if necessary; and that he go with the Lord Infante to visit all Calabria and the other territories of the Kingdom, and that they should govern the land with truth and justice. And, as the Lord King commanded, so it was done; the admiral went to the Kingdom of Valencia and visited all his towns and castles and then he came to Barcelona from Valencia by sea, with all those galleys he wished to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

take from Valencia. At Barcelona he embarked and took leave there from the Lord King and he embarked and went to Sicily. And he passed by Mallorca and Minorca and then coasted along Barbary and took ships and lenys and plundered Saracen towns and villages. And with great gain and great cheer, he returned to Sicily and found at Palermo my Lady the Queen and the Infante En Fadrique who received him with great joy and cheerfulness.

And he gave them all the letters he had from the Lord King. And when they had seen the letters and knew of the peace the Lord King had concluded with the King of Castile, all who were in Sicily and throughout the dominion were very content. And the admiral, with the Lord Infante En Fadrique, went visiting all the territories in all Sicily; and then they passed into Calabria and did the same. And when they were in Calabria, there came a message to them that Charles Martel[1] the eldest son of King Charles, had passed away from this life; great 1295 mourning was made for him by all who loved him, for he was a good lord. And there remains a son of Charles Martel, who was, and is still, King of Hungary; and a daughter called my Lady Clemencia, who became afterwards Queen of France. And the Lord Infante En Fadrique sent news of the death of Charles Martel to the Lord King of Aragon.

[1] Charles, eldest son of Charles II of Naples, the Lame, and of Maria of Hungary, was crowned King of Hungary by the Pope. He never left Italy. His successor, Charles Robert, reigned in Hungary until his death in 1307.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXXI.

How King Charles proceeded to treat for peace with the House of Aragon and how for this purpose the Apostolic sent a cardinal with King Charles to the King of France to beg him to make peace between the House of Aragon and King Charles; which monsenyer En Charles would not grant unless King Charles gave him the county of Anjou.

WHEN King Charles knew the death of his son he was much troubled; and so he should be, for he had been very accomplished and brave. And, assuredly, as he was a good Christian, he felt in his heart that God would not send him such tribulations if it were not that he allowed war to go on between himself and the House of Aragon, and so he tried by all means to make peace with the Lord King of Aragon.

And, at once, he went to the Pope and said to him that he begged him to treat fully and ordain a thorough peace between Holy Church and the House of France, and between him and the King of Aragon; that, as for himself, he would do all that he could for this. And the Pope answered that he spoke well and with great wisdom; he who considered the power the King of Aragon had now, saw that he possessed all the world, besides having all Spain at his orders; and, so also, he might have the King of England on his side, if he so wished, and besides all Languedoc; wherefore it was absolutely necessary to treat for peace. And so the Pope sent for micer Bonifacio de Salamandrana and commanded him to work in these matters of the peace. And he answered he would do so willingly and that, with the favour of God, he would bring it to a good issue; and upon this he got ready. The Pope sent a cardinal to France, to the King of France, together with King Charles and micer Bonifacio, through whom he begged and advised him to make peace with the House of Aragon at the same time as King Charles;

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and that he, on the part of Holy Church, was prepared to do all they wished for this purpose.

And so King Charles and the cardinal and micer Bonifacio parted from the Pope and went to the King of France and found him in Paris, and his brother, monsenyer En Charles, with him, who had himself called King of Aragon. And when they had spoken with the King of France and with monsenyer En Charles, the King of France said that peace would please him much and that he would offer, for the sake of peace, all he could offer; but monsenyer Charles answered the contrary, and said that he would not give up the Kingdom of Aragon on any account; about this there was great strife between King Charles and him. But in the end they came to an agreement with the King of France, who approved it, that King Charles should give monsenyer Charles the county of Anjou, which he possessed in France and which is a very important and beautiful county. And everyone can imagine that it was important and beautiful as his father King Charles,[1] who was the son of the King of France, had been invested with it. And monsenyer Charles gave up to him the right he had to the Kingdom of Aragon, which had been given him by Pope Martin, and agreed that King Charles could do as he wished with it. And so it was accomplished and done, because that had been the thing which had prevented peace more than anything in the world. And so let no one say that the peace concluded with the King of Aragon cost King Charles little, as you shall hear further on, rather it cost him the said county, which is a valuable property.

And when this was done King Charles and the cardinal and micer Bonifacio came to Provence, with full powers from the King of France and monsenyer Charles, his brother; and from Provence, they sent micer Bonifacio

[1] Charles I of Naples, son of Louis IX.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to Catalonia, to the Lord King of Aragon, with a message. What should I tell you about it? The messenger went so long from one to the other, that all his object was
June 1295 attained and peace was granted by each of the parties. And that, in short, was the way peace was concluded; if I wished to recount it all, it would make a larger book than this one. When peace was concluded, the Pope revoked the sentence Pope Martin had pronounced against the King of Aragon, and absolved him and all who had been and were his supporters, of guilt for all the men they had killed and for all they had taken, in any manner, from their enemies, in the widest sense that could be. And on the other hand, monsenyer Charles of France, and King Charles for him, renounced the grant which had been made to him of the Kingdom of Aragon, and besides he agreed there should be peace and concord with the King of France and his supporters and with the Holy Roman Church and with King Charles. And again, King Charles gave his daughter, my lady Blanca who was his eldest daughter, to the Lord King of Aragon to wife. And the Lord King of Aragon gave up the Kingdom of Sicily in this manner: that the Pope gave him Sardinia and Corsica in addition; but he was not bound to surrender Sicily to King Charles nor to the Church, but was to abandon it altogether, and the Church or King Charles would take possession of it if they wished; and he was not bound to do anything else. On the other hand he surrendered to King Charles his sons, whom he held in prison, and the other hostages.

And so the messengers finally came to the Lord King of Aragon with this peace; saying that this the two Kings would do, and he should do what has been said before, and that he should hold a council upon this, but that they could do nothing more in the matter. And upon this the Lord King assembled Cortes at Barcelona; and during this parliament, King En Sancho of Castile

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

died of illness and left three sons. The eldest, whom he left King of Castile, was called Don Fernando, the other Don Pedro and the other Don Felipe; and he left one daughter. And when the Lord King of Aragon knew the death of the King of Castile, he had displeasure thereat, and commanded the anniversary to be kept, as was proper for him. 1295

CHAPTER CLXXXII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon confirmed the peace between himself and King Charles and the House of France; and how the marriage of the said Lord En Jaime of Aragon with my Lady Blanca, daughter of King Charles, was celebrated; and how the eldest son of King Charles and the eldest son of the King of Mallorca renounced the Kingdoms and entered the Order of monsenyer Saint Francis.

AND, when the Cortes were assembled the Lord King held a council with his barons and prelates and knights and citizens and townsmen, and in the end peace was granted, in the manner you have heard already. And the messengers returned to King Charles and to the cardinal[1] whom they found at Montpellier, and they signed all the clauses of the peace; and, at once, all together, with the Infanta my Lady Blanca, whom they took with them very splendidly and well accompanied, they came to Perpignan. But when they came to Perpignan, the Lord King of Aragon and the Infante En Pedro with him, and a very distinguished assembly of chiefs of Catalonia and Aragon were at the city of Gerona; and the Lord King sent the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá, his treasurer and councillor, to Perpignan with full power to sign the treaty of peace and of the marriage, and to see the damsel. 1295

And when the said noble came to Perpignan, he was

[1] This cardinal was, according to Menescal, Guillermo Ferris.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

well received by King Charles and by the Lord King of Mallorca and by all. And when he had seen the damsel he was very well satisfied, so that he at once signed everything for the Lord King of Aragon, as well the treaty of peace as that of the marriage. Then, when the Lord King of Aragon knew of this, he returned and brought with him the sons of King Charles and all the other hostages. And when they were at Gerona, the Lord King with all his chivalry and all the distinguished ladies and damsels of Catalonia went to Figueras. And on the other hand, King Charles and the damsel and the cardinal and all the other people went to Peralada and the King and his company lodged between Peralada and Cabanés, at the monastery of San Feliú. And the Lord King of Aragon sent King Charles his sons and all the other hostages, and the Lord Infante En Pedro accompanied them until they were with their father. And if ever you have seen great rejoicing, it was there, between King Charles and his sons, and all the barons of Provence and of France rejoiced in the same way over their sons, who had been hostages and whom they had recovered. But greater than all was the joy my Lady Blanca had of her brothers, and they of her.

What shall I tell you? There were so many people from one part and another at Peralada and at Cabanés and at the monastery of San Feliú and at Figueras and at Vilabertran and at Alfar and at Vilatenim and at Vilasegur and at Castellon de Ampurias and at Vilanova, that all that district was full of people. And the Lord King had full rations of everything given to everyone, stranger or friend. And there was solace and rejoicing amongst them when the Lord King of Aragon went to see King Charles and the Infanta his wife, and the Lord King placed on her head the most beautiful and rich crown a Queen had ever worn. And from that hour she was called Queen of Aragon. What shall I tell you? The

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

jewels given on one part and on the other were costly, and it was ordained that, with the favour of God, they would hear mass at the monastery of Vilbertran and there celebrate their marriage. And the Lord King had a hall of wood made there, the finest that had ever been made of wood, and the monastery is a splendid place and beautiful and important. And as they had ordained, so it was done; they all came to the monastery of Vilabertran. And there there was great cheer and a great feast, for many reasons. One reason was the marriage, which was celebrated in due time;[1] it may well be said that so worthy a husband and wife had never before been joined 1295
together. I can tell you of the Lord King En Jaime, King of Aragon, that he is the most generous lord and the most courteous and the wisest and the most accomplished in arms that ever was, and one of the good Christians of the world. And of my Lady the Queen, my Lady Blanca, it can be said likewise that she was the most beautiful lady and the wisest and the most pleasing to God and to her people who ever came to any kingdom, and the best Christian. The fountain of grace and of all virtues was in her. Wherefore God sent her His grace; there never was a husband and wife of any condition who loved each other as much. Wherefore one may call her what all the people of Catalonia and Aragon and of the Kingdom of Valencia called her, namely, the blessed Queen, my Lady Blanca of the Holy Peace, for blessed peace and good luck came through her to all the country.

[1] Jaime II married four times; his wives were Isabel of Castile, Blanca of Naples, Maria Princess of Cyprus, and Elisenda de Moncada. Only Blanca bore him children, five sons and five daughters: Jaime, who became a Knight of St. John of Jerusalem; Alfonso, who succeeded him; Juan, who was successively archbishop of Toledo, of Tarragona and patriarch of Alexandria; Pedro, to whom he gave the county of Prades; Maria, who married Don Pedro of Castile, son of Sancho IV; Constanza, who married Don Juan Manuel of Castile; Isabel, who married Duke Frederick III of Austria; Blanca, who became a nun and was prioress of the Convent of Sixena; Violante, who married in 1337, Philip, Despot of Romania.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And as you shall hear further on, she had many sons and daughters who were all worthy before God and the world.

And when the marriage was celebrated the feast lasted full eight days, when all remained together; and afterwards they took leave of each other, and King Charles and his sons returned. And when he came to the Pass of Panisars, the Lord King of Mallorca came to meet him and they entered Suelo and from Suelo they went to Perpignan. And the Lord King of Mallorca kept them there full eight days, and in those eight days monsenyer Louis, son of King Charles, and the Infante En Jaime, eldest son of the King of Mallorca, became such intimate friends that it is said they promised each other that, what one did the other would do also, so they agreed that each would renounce the dominion which should come to him and that they would enter the Order of monsenyer Saint Francis.

A short time after, monsenyer Louis, son of King Charles, entered the Order and renounced all his hereditaments; and, later, he became bishop of Toulouse, against his wish; and then died and was canonized by the Pope for the many miracles God performed through him during his life and after his death, which are known to-day throughout all Christendom and are celebrated by a feast.

And so likewise, the Infante En Jaime, son of the King of Mallorca, the best and the eldest, who should have reigned, became a Minorite friar and renounced the Kingdom. And when he shall have passed from this life, it is believed that he also will be a saint in Paradise. He who does most may expect greatest reward from God, for he who gives up a Kingdom in this world for God, it would seem should have the Kingdom of Heaven in exchange, if he continues a virtuous life until the end, doing and saying all that is good.

Now I shall let these two lords be, who are holy and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

benign Minorite friars, and must turn to speak to you of King Charles who parted from the Lord King of Mallorca and returned to his territory with his sons, safe and sound. And so, also, the Lord King of Aragon, with my Lady the Queen, went to Gerona and from Gerona to Barcelona and then about all his dominions. And it is not necessary to inquire about the splendour and the rejoicing in every place; you can imagine what delight they must feel who had recovered peace and the sacraments of Holy Church, masses and all other holy offices, which the people were very desirous of having.

CHAPTER CLXXXIII.

How my Lady Queen Blanca obtained from the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon that he assign an hereditament to the Infante En Pedro and arrange a marriage for him; wherefore the Infante took to wife my Lady Guillerma de Moncada.

WHILST the Lord King, with my Lady the Queen, was disporting in his dominions, the Lord Infante En Pedro never left my Lady the Queen, who begged the Lord King to provide for the honour of his brother, the Infante, and to give him wherewith to keep an honourable house, and also to provide him with a wife suitable for him. And the Lord King obeyed her entreaties and gave his brother a goodly inheritance and gave him to wife one of the most distinguished damsels of Spain who yet was not the daughter of a king, namely my Lady Guillerma de Moncada, daughter of En Gaston de Bearn who was very rich, for in Catalonia alone he had three hundred knights in fine castles and towns and villages. The wedding was very fine and splendid; and the Lord King and my Lady the Queen and all Catalonia and part of Aragon were there. And when this was done the Lord King, with

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

my Lady the Queen on one part and the Lord Infante En Pedro with my Lady Guillerma de Moncada on the other, went about disporting in all the dominions.

CHAPTER CLXXXIV.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon sent messengers to Sicily to En Ramon Alamany and En Vilaragut with orders to abandon Sicily; and how the people seized villages and castles in the name of the Infante Fadrique.

WITH that the Lord King of Aragon sent messengers to Sicily, to En Ramon Alamany, who was justicia of all the Kingdom of Sicily, and to En Vilaragut who was chief portreeve, and besides to all others, to tell them to abandon castles and towns and all other places in Sicily and in Calabria and in the other parts of the dominion; and to beware of delivering up any castle to anyone; but, when they had abandoned it, to cry at the gate of the castle, with the keys in their hand: "Is any man here of the Holy Apostolic Father who will receive this castle for the Holy Apostolic Father and for Holy Church?" And that this they cry, in a loud voice, three times in each place. And if, during those three times, no one appeared who would receive the place for Holy Church, that they leave all the gates open and the keys in the locks, and go away. And so it was fulfilled and done, and no man of the Holy Father nor of the Holy Roman Church appeared. And so they went away. And when they had gone, the people of the place seized every castle and place in the name of the Infante En Fadrique.

And so En Ramon Alamany and En Vilaragut and all the others who were in Sicily for the Lord King of Aragon, abandoned it and embarked in ships and in galleys and came to Catalonia, to the Lord King, who received them

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

very well and gave to all good compensation for what they had abandoned of their own in Sicily; and he was very pleased with what they had done. And so the Lord King of Aragon had fulfilled all the covenants of the treaty of peace and failed in nothing, whereat Holy Church and the Pope were content and joyful.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and must turn to speak to you of the Infante Fadrique and of the admiral who did not leave him.

CHAPTER CLXXXV.

How the Lord Infante En Fadrique seized the Kingdom of Sicily and assigned a day on which all should be at Palermo where with great solemnity he was crowned with the crown of the Kingdom of Sicily.

AND micer Juan de Procida and the others of his council and the barons and knights and citizens and townsmen of Sicily knew how the Lord King of Aragon had forsaken them; and they said to the Lord Infante En Fadrique that he should seize all the land, for the island of Sicily and all the Kingdom were entailed on him, according to the testament of the Lord King En Pedro, his father. And if the Lord King En Jaime had abandoned it, he had abandoned solely his own right in it—"but the right that you, Lord, have in it, there is no occasion to abandon, nor do we believe that he will be annoyed if you seize the Kingdom, for it is enough for him that he has fulfilled what he promised in the treaty of peace." What shall I tell you? This was agreed to by all and they found, from doctors and learned men, that he might with justice seize what the Lord King, his father, had entailed on him.

And upon this he sent throughout Sicily and Calabria and the other places of the dominions and seized the castles

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and towns and cities and villages; and, meanwhile, a day was assigned on which all the chiefs and knights and syndics of cities and towns should be at Palermo, for he wished to be crowned King, and wished all to swear fealty to him. And on the day assigned, they were al at Palermo and there was a great gathering of Catalans and Aragonese and Latins and of men of Calabria and other places of the Kingdom. And when all were assembled at the royal palace, namely in the Salavert of Palermo, the admiral preached and said to them many good words which were suitable to the times. And amongst the other things he said to them he showed them, by three reasons, that this lord was that third Fadrique of which the prophecies say that he would come and be lord of the Empire and of the greater part of the world. And the reasons were these: that it was the fact that he was the third son of the Lord En Pedro; and again that he was the third Fadrique who had reigned in Sicily; and again that he would be the third Fadrique who will have been Emperor of Germany; wherefore, with a good right, he could be called Fadrique the third, King of Sicily and of all the dominions pertaining thereto.

And upon this all raised their voices together and cried: "God grant life to our Lord, King Fadrique the Third, Lord of Sicily and of all the Kingdom." And at once, all the barons rose and rendered oath and homage to him and, after them, all the knights and citizens and townsmen.

May 3rd 1296 And when this was done, at once, with great ceremony, according to custom, they went to the cathedral of the city and, with a solemn blessing, he received the crown.

And so, with the crown on his head and the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left, in royal vesture, he rode from the cathedral of Palermo to the palace, and the greatest sports and diversions were made that ever were made at the coronation of any king. And when they came to the palace, the tables were laid and there

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

every man dined. What shall I tell you? The feast lasted fifteen days, during which no man did anything in Palermo but divert himself and dance and sing and take part in diverse games; and all the time the tables were laid at the palace for everyone who wished to dine there. Then, when all this was over and everyone had returned to his home, the Lord King went visiting throughout all Sicily and then throughout Calabria and all the other places.

And my Lady, Queen Costanza, and all of her company were absolved by the Pope and heard masses every day; the Pope had to do this according to the covenants of peace the Lord King of Aragon had made with him. Wherefore my Lady the Queen departed from Sicily with ten galleys and went on a pilgrimage to Rome. And she took leave of the Lord King of Sicily and made the sign of the Cross over him and blessed him and gave him her blessing, as a mother should to her son. And when she came to Rome the Pope showed her much honour and granted her all she asked; and she stayed there and went every day seeking indulgences, as a lady who was the best Christian known in the world. And micer Juan de Precida did not leave her and remained in Rome, gaining indulgences, until the Lord King of Aragon came to Rome to see the Pope and to treat of a peace between King Charles and the King of Sicily, his brother, as you shall hear further on; and then he returned to Catalonia with my Lady Queen Costanza.

And when she was in Catalonia, my Lady the Queen did much for the good of the soul of the Lord King En Pedro, her husband, and for her own; and founded many monasteries and did many other good deeds. And she ended her days at Barcelona[1] and left her body to the house of the Minorite Friars, to be with that of her son,

[1] In 1302.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

King En Alfonso, and she died in the dress of the Minorites. And, assuredly, all can trust that she is with God in Heaven.

Now I shall cease to speak of the Lord King of Sicily and of my Lady Queen Costanza and shall turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

CHAPTER CLXXXVI.

How the Lord King of Aragon surrendered the islands of Mallorca and Minorca and Ibiza to the King of Mallorca, his uncle, and went to the Pope to treat of peace between his brother, King Fadrique and King Charles; and how the King of Castile defied the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon saw that he was at peace with all the world, he thought it would be well to return the islands of Mallorca and Minorca and Ibiza to the King of Mallorca, his uncle. And as I have told you already, the Lord King of Aragon went, a first time, to see the Pope in Rome, after peace had been made. And the Pope and the cardinals and all the Romans showed him much honour, and also much honour was shown him at Genoa and at Pisa. But, at this visit, he did not obtain peace between King Charles and the King of Sicily. He returned to Catalonia and took my Lady the Queen with him, as I have told you already.

And then, some time later, the Lord King of Aragon sent a message to the admiral in Sicily, to come to Catalonia, and the admiral came to him at once. And then not much time passed before the Lord King, with a great fleet, departed from Catalonia, to go to the Pope, to treat fully of the peace between King Fadrique and King Charles. And when he had hurried to Palamós, where he embarked, he sent to the King of Mallorca, his uncle,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to tell him that he would find him at Colibre, and that he wished to have an interview with him. And the Lord King of Mallorca came at once. So the Lord King of Aragon departed from Palamós with a hundred and five galleys. And whilst he stopped at Colibre he had an interview with the Lord King of Mallorca, his uncle; and at this interview they made great feasts for each other. And the Lord King of Aragon returned to him the island of Mallorca and the islands of Minorca and Ibiza, and they confirmed anew their peace and love, like a father and son, which was a great joy to all who wished them well. And the Lord King left, to represent him, the noble En Ramon Folch and the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá, to surrender the islands to the King of Mallorca in his name. And so it was done and accomplished.

And the Lord King went and laboured in this journey, yet he could never arrange a peace between King Charles, his father-in-law, and King Fadrique, his brother, before he returned to Catalonia. His people were greatly pleased that God had sent him back safe and sound, and my Lady the Queen likewise.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the affairs in Sicily and must turn to speak to you of King En Fernando of Castile[1] who, being ill-advised, defied the Lord King of Aragon, not long after peace was made with King Charles.

And some will say:—"Why does En Montaner pass these events over so briefly?" And if they say it to me, I shall say that there are words to which there is no answer.

[1] Fernando IV., 1295—1312.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXXVII.

How war broke out again between the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon and King En Fernando of Castile; and how the Infante En Pedro invaded Castile with large forces and besieged the city of Leon; and the Lord King En Jaime decided to invade the Kingdom of Murcia by sea and by land.

AND when the Lord King of Aragon considered in his heart the challenge the King of Castile had sent him, he felt it a great insult and said it was necessary to make him repent of it. And he commanded the Lord Infante En Pedro to get ready with a thousand armed horse and fifty thousand almugavars, and to invade Castile through Aragon, and he would, likewise, invade the Kingdom of Murcia with a great force. Should I tell you much about it? As the Lord King had dictated, so it was accomplished. The Lord Infante En Pedro invaded Castile with full a thousand Catalan and Aragonese horse and full fifty thousand men afoot. And he entered full nine journeys into Castile, so that he besieged the city of Leon and discharged catapults against it.

And so I must let the Lord Infante En Pedro be, who holds besieged the city of Leon which is well within Castile, eight journeys from Aragon, and must turn again to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon who is invading the Kingdom of Murcia and enters it by land and by sea.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CLXXXVIII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon took the city of Alicante and the castle by assault and many other castles and towns of Murcia and the greater part of the Kingdom; and how he garrisoned all the country and left, as procurator, the noble En Jaime Pedro, his brother.

AND the first place in the Kingdom of Murcia to which he came was Alicante and he attacked the town and 1296
took it. And then he went up to the castle, which is one of the fine castles of the world, and proceeded to attack it so vigorously, that he, in person, went up the mountain on foot with many knights, as far as the gate of the castle. And, at a short distance from the gate, there was a piece of the wall which had fallen in. And through that place they invaded the castle by assault; and be sure the Lord King in person would have been the first there, had it not been for a good and expert knight of Catalonia, called En Berenguer de Puixmolto, who pulled back the Lord King and cried:—"Ah, Lord, what is this? Let us go in first." But the Lord King did not listen to him, rather he went on. And the said En Berenguer de Puixmolto leaped forward and another knight after him; and there those within defended themselves so that, assuredly, these two knights would have been killed, if it had not been for the Lord King himself who, sword in hand and his shield on his arm, leaped inside, and so he was the third to enter. And when the Lord King was within and En Berenguer de Puixmolto and the other knight saw the Lord King near them, they exerted themselves to the utmost. And the Lord King held his shield in front of himself, and a knight who was within and was of the company of Nicolas Peris, alcaide of the castle, and who was big and brave, hurled his hunting spear, which he held in his hand, at him and gave him so great a blow on the first quarter of the shield,

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

that it penetrated it for more than half a palm. And the Lord King, who was young and spirited, advanced and gave him such a blow with his sword on the middle of his head, that the cap of mail he was wearing was of no use to him, for he was split open to the teeth. Then the King pulled the sword out of this man's head, and attacked another, whose arm, with the whole shoulder, fell to the ground. What shall I tell you? The Lord King, with his own hand, despatched five men in this place, and meanwhile his followers came up to him and entered by this opening. And En Berenguer de Puixmolto did not leave the Lord King and likewise performed marvellous feats of arms. What shall I tell you? The Lord King, with much chivalry which had entered after him, went to the door of En Nicolas Peris, the alcaide who, with his sword in his right hand and the keys in the left, defended himself there; but his defence was of little use to him, he was there cut to pieces.

And when all the castle was taken the Lord King commanded that the alcaide should not be buried in the cemetery; rather he proclaimed him a traitor and had his body thrown to the dogs. Wherefore, Lords, you who shall hear this book, be careful when you hold a castle for a lord. The first thing he who is holding a castle for a lord should have at heart, should be to save the castle for his lord; the other, to leave it only with honour to himself and his descendants. But all are not thus resolved; rather, with many, who nowadays receive a castle, the first thing they consider is to reckon:— So much I get for the guarding of the castle, and for so much I shall find a squire who will guard it for me, wherefore so much will be left over for me every year.— And so, they who think thus, think foolishly, for many knights and other worthy men have been killed or ruined; for their lords have proclaimed them traitors. And this knight, the alcaide of Alicante, called En Nicolas Peris,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

defended the castle as long as he had life and so did those who were with him ; but because he had not as great a company as he should have had,—as great as that he was taking pay for from the King of Castile,—and as he had not done there what he was taking yearly pay for from the King of Castile—because of all this he was proclaimed a traitor. And so I tell you that one of the greatest dangers of the world is to hold a castle for a lord, however peaceful the times may be, for in one day and one night that happens which no man had imagined could happen.

And so the said Lord King had taken all the castle and he entrusted it to En Berenguer de Puixmolto ; and there was much reason for this, for he had served him well. And then he descended to the town and En Ramon Sacomana and En Jaime Berenguer and En Saverdú, who were of the best of Alicante, swore oath and homage to the Lord King with many others. They had gone down to the town below when they saw that the castle was lost and knew that they could no longer hold out in the town. Assuredly, if the castle had not been taken, they would never have surrendered to the Lord King, wherefore God and the King of Castile held them excused. And the King of Castile, when he knew of it, declared them worthy and loyal, but proclaimed En Nicolas Peris a traitor, as the Lord King had done, who as a good and valiant lord had declared what he had done to be wrong.

Then, when the Lord King had settled Alicante, he went to Elche and besieged it and discharged catapults against it. And during the time he was holding Elche besieged, he took all the valley of Elda and Novelda and of Nompot and Aspe and Petrel and la Mola ; and he took Crevillente of which place the alcaide came to him and became his man and vassal. And then he took Abanilla, and Callosa and Guardarmar. What shall I

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

tell you? He held Elche besieged so long that he took it; it surrendered to him. And then he took Orihuela and the castle thereof, which Pedro Ruiz de Sent Sabria, who was alcaide there, surrendered to him when he saw that he had taken the town of Orihuela. And it was good that he surrendered the castle without a blow and without cost, for it is one of the strongest and most royal castles of Spain. And so you can imagine that this knight did a very worthy and courteous thing in thus surrendering the castle to the Lord King. And he took the castle of Montagut and the city of Murcia and Cartagena and Lorca and Molina and many other places which, in truth, for the greater part, it was fit should belong to the Lord King by good right, according to what you have already heard of the conquest of Murcia. And when the Lord King had taken the city of Murcia and the greater part of the Kingdom, he garrisoned the land and left as procurator the noble En Jaime Pedro, his brother, with much good chivalry which he left there with him.

CHAPTER CLXXXIX.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon had news that the Infante En Pedro, his brother, and En Ramon de Anglesola had died at Leon; and how he returned to Aragon with banners unfurled.

AND, when he had returned to the Kingdom of Valencia, news came to him that the Infante En Pedro, his brother,
1296 had died of illness at the siege of Leon, and also En Ramon de Anglesola. And the Lord Infante, in his illness, did in due order all that a good Christian should do; he received all the sacraments of Holy Church very devoutly, like a good Christian and chaste and pure as

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he was. He had never known any woman but my Lady Guillerma de Moncada, his wife. And as he passed from this life, he made as beautiful an end as any Christian of the world could; he begged all that no mourning be made for him until the host had returned to Aragon with his body, and that En Ramon de Anglesola be buried at his feet, as one who, in life and in death, had been a faithful companion to him.

And the host departed from Leon with the bodies of the Lord Infante and of En Ramon de Anglesola and returned to Aragon, with banners unfurled. And when they were in Aragon and the Lord King heard the news, he was much displeased at the death of the Lord Infante, and had all done that was due to him, as a good lord should for a dear and virtuous brother. The Lord Infante was much regretted. God, in His mercy, keep his soul, as He should keep that of a good and just and upright lord.

Now I shall cease to speak of the Lord King of Aragon and shall turn to speak of the events of Sicily.

CHAPTER CXC.

How two knights of Catania and Ser Virgili surrendered the city of Catania to Duke Robert, eldest son of King Charles, whom the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon left at Catania when he was going for the second time to the Pope.

THE Lord King of Aragon had left Duke Robert at Catania, when he had gone to the Pope for the second time. He went to Naples and to Sicily, but was not able to make peace between the Lord King of Sicily, his brother, and King Charles, his father-in-law. And Duke Robert, the eldest son of King Charles, remained in Sicily, in the city of Catania. Ser Virgili of Naples

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and two knights of Catania had surrendered the city to him; and then, likewise, Paterno and Aderno and other places were surrendered to him. Thus the war was very great in Sicily; the Duke had a great force of chivalry, he had full three thousand horse, and the Lord King of Sicily had not more than a thousand Catalans and Aragonese, but they of the Lord King of Sicily gained victories over the others every day.

CHAPTER CXCI.

How three barons came from France with three hundred knights to aid King Charles and to avenge the death of their kinsmen; and how they, wishing to procure the death of count Galceran and of Don Blasco de Alagon, procured their own.

AND it happened that three barons of France came to Sicily in aid of King Charles, to avenge the death of their kinsmen who had been killed in the war in Sicily in the time of the Lord King En Jaime. And these three barons brought with them three hundred knights, all select knights, who were of the best of France, and called themselves the Knights of Death. And they came to Catania with the wish and intention of meeting, at all costs, the noble En Guillermo Galceran, count of Catanzaro, and Don Blasco de Alagon, who were of the side of the Lord King of Sicily. And this they swore. When they came to Catania everyone called them the Knights of Death, the name they had given themselves.

What shall I tell you? They heard one day that count Galceran and Don Blasco were in a castle of Sicily called Gagliano. And all three hundred knights, very handsomely arrayed, and others who came to accompany them, went to Gagliano. And count Galceran and Don Blasco knew this, that they had come to the plain of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Gagliano, and they reviewed their followers and found they had not more than two hundred horsemen and about three hundred afoot; but they agreed that they would offer battle at all costs. And, at dawn of day, they issued out of Gagliano, in order of battle, trumpets and nakers sounding. And the Knights of Death also, when they saw them, inquired into what forces they had, and found that they were full five hundred horsemen, good men, and many men afoot of their country. And when the hosts saw each other, the almugavars of count Galceran and Don Blasco cried:—"Desperta ferres!"[1] And, all together, they hit the lances and darts against stones; they all struck sparks, so that it seemed as if all the world were ablaze, and especially as it was not yet daylight. And the French, who saw this, wondered and asked what it meant. And knights who were there and had met almugavars before in Calabria, in feats of arms, told them that this was a custom of the almugavars, who always, on going into battle, awake the iron. The count of Brienne, who was one of these counts of France, said:—"Ah, God," said he, "what is this? We have met devils! Those who awake iron, it seems, mean to attack, and I believe that we have found what we have been seeking." And then he made the sign of the Cross and commended himself to God and, in order of battle, they advanced against each other.

And count Galceran and Don Blasco would not form a van and rear, but, all collected together, the chivalry on the left and the almugavars on the right, attacked the van of the others in such manner that it seemed all the world was crumbling. And the battle was very cruel, and the almugavars hurled the darts so that it was devil's work what they did, for at the first charge more than a hundred knights and horses of the French fell dead to

[1] "Awake the iron!"

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the ground. Then they broke their lances short and disembowelled horses, and they went about amongst them as if they were walking in a garden. And count Galceran and Don Blasco went at the banners of the French in such manner that they threw them all to the ground, and then might you see feats of arms, and blows given and taken, for there was never so cruel a battle between so few people. This lasted until midday; no man could know who was having the best of it, had it not been for the banners of the French, which were all cut down, except that of the count de Brienne, who raised it up when the bearer was killed and entrusted it to another knight. And when the Catalans and Aragonese saw that the others held out so well, a cry arose amongst them, and they shouted:—"Aragon! Aragon!" And then this name inflamed all and they attacked so vigorously that it was the greatest marvel of the world. So, of the French, there were no more than eighty knights left and they went up a hill, and then count Galceran and Don Blasco attacked them. What shall I tell you? All kept the name they had brought from France: they had called themselves Knights of Death, and all died. Of all three hundred and also of those who accompanied them there escaped not more than five men on light horses. They were from Catania and were going with the French as guides.

And when all were dead, the company of count Galceran and Don Blasco searched the field. And it can be said that they had made so much gain that those who had been in this battle were rich for ever. And they enquired into how many men they had lost, and found that they had lost about twenty-two horse and thirty-four foot. And so, cheerful and content, when they had searched the field, they entered Gagliano and there, in Gagliano and in Traina they put the wounded and had them well provided for.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And the news came to the Lord King of Sicily, who was at Nicosia, and he had great pleasure in it, he and all who wished him well. And on the fourth day after the battle, count Galceran and Don Blasco went to reconnoitre Paterno and Aderno and they made a great capture of Frenchmen who had come from Catania to the wood, for grass and wood. And there were there full two hundred French knights who had come to guard the pack-mules and who were all killed or taken. And so they mourned at Catania, at that time, for the death of the Knights of Death. And so likewise King Charles and the Pope had great grief thereat, when they knew of it. The Pope said:—"We thought we had achieved something and we have achieved nothing; it seems to us that this man will defend Sicily against us as well as his father and his brother have done; and, although he is but a youth, he will show from what House he is issued. Wherefore I believe that, in the end, if we do not win him by a peace, we shall have nothing but damage through him."

CHAPTER CXCII.

How King Charles sent his son, the Prince of Taranto, to Sicily with twelve hundred armed horse and fifty galleys; and how he was defeated at Trapani by the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily and taken and imprisoned in the castle of Cefalu.

WHEN King Charles knew this, he made his son, the Prince of Taranto, get ready at Naples and gave him full twelve hundred armed horse—between French, and Provençals and Neapolitans, all select people. And he had fifty galleys equipped, all with open decks. And they embarked. And King Charles commanded his son, the Prince, to go, at all costs, straight to the shore of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Cape Orlando, to the castle of San Marco, and to Castallo and to Francavilla; it was better that he should land there in safety on their own territory, than that he should collect a host for himself in another place. There, there was great chivalry of the Duke,[1] who would be with him at once and, again, he would have great refreshment from the places that were held for him and, from that place, he could, at any time, go to Catania through their country which was held for them. And, assuredly, King Charles spoke the truth to him who should have believed him; but the young man sometimes did not conform willingly to wisdom, rather followed more his own will.

And so the Prince with all the followers embarked at Naples and took leave of King Charles, his father, who made the sign of the Cross over him and blessed him and exhorted him to do well, he and all who were with him. And all kissed his hands and embarked and steered for Trapani. See how they remembered what King Charles had said to them! They all said to the Prince:—"Lord, let us land as far from the Duke as we can and then, with banner unfurled, we shall go to Catania, ravaging and burning all we meet. It would be a shame for you to join the Duke at once, it would seem that you dare not do anything by yourself."

And so the Prince accepted this advice, not remembering what King Charles had commanded him to do, and so he went to Trapani. And when they sailed past Cabo di Gallo, the men on land who were on the look-out saw that they were steering for Trapani and at once a message went to the Lord King of Sicily who was at Castrogiovanni, as one might say in the centre of the island, so that he could at once hasten here or there. And when he knew that the Prince was steering for Trapani, he sent to his barons throughout all Sicily,

[1] Robert, Duke of Calabria, brother of the Prince of Taranto.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to join him at Calatafimi where they would find him, and so likewise he sent to tell En Ugueto de Ampurias, who was at Reggio in Calabria. And as each received the message he proceeded to join the Lord King.

But the Prince had such fine weather that, before the Lord King had assembled all his followers, he had landed on the beach of Trapani, between Trapani and Mazzara, and had put the horses and all his followers ashore and came to Trapani and attacked it, but could do nothing against it, rather took damage himself. And so he left and went to Mazzara. But the Lord King was there first, with the people he had with him, namely seven hundred armed horse and three thousand almugavars. And with the Lord King were count Galceran and Don Blasco and Don G. Ramon de Moncada and En Berenguer de Entenza and many other accomplished knights. And when the hosts came in sight of each other, each was put in order of battle; and count Galceran and En G. Ramon de Moncada and Don Blasco commanded the van of the Lord King of Sicily, and they put the foot-soldiers on the right and the chivalry on the left.

And when the almugavars saw that they were about to attack, they all cried:—"Awake the iron!" And all struck the iron of their lances on the ground; it seemed like great illuminations, at which all they of the Prince's host were much alarmed, when they knew the meaning of it, as the Knights of Death had known it. With that the two vans approached each other and proceeded to attack vigorously; it was wonderful. And when the van of the Lord King of Sicily had attacked, the Lord King, who was beautifully arrayed on a good horse, he, a young man and accomplished in arms and valiant, would wait no longer; rather he went straight to where the banner of the Prince was, and attacked so vigorously that he, in person, gave the standard-bearer of the Prince such a thrust with his lance that he threw him and the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

banner in a heap on the ground. And then might you see feats of arms. And the Prince, likewise, was tall and handsome and a young man, and one of the most accomplished knights of the world, so that what he and the Lord King did in person was marvellous. What shall I tell you? The Prince wanted to raise his banner and all the good chivalry of both sides collected round it and the Lord King did not leave the press, rather strove to prevent the banner of the Prince being raised up. And so, in that press, the Lord King met the Prince and they recognised each other, and both rejoiced, and then might you see the two fight hand to hand; assuredly each might say he had found his match. They fought so hard, each discharged on the other every weapon he had. But in the end the Lord King gave such a blow of his mace on the head of the Prince's horse that he made it senseless and it fell to the ground. And as soon as the Prince had fallen a knight, called Martin Pérez de Aros, dismounted, for he knew it was the Prince and he wanted to kill him. But the Lord King cried:—"No, he shall not die!" Don Blasco came up and cried:—"Kill him." But the Lord King cried:—"No." The Lord King wished to dismount and then En Martin Pérez de Aros cried:—"Lord, do not dismount; I will guard him, he shall not be killed as you do not wish it." And so the Lord King can say that he was a good father on that day to the Prince, who had life given back to him by God and the King. May God count it to him as a great merit, although it is but right that gentle blood should preserve its equal. And when the Prince knew that the Lord King, with whom he had fought so hard, was still there, he surrendered to him and the Lord King entrusted him to the said En Martin Pérez de Aros and his brother En Pérez de Aros and to En Garcia Ximonis de Ayvar. And when he had thus entrusted him he went about the battle-field, mace in hand, where

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he saw the greatest press, and performed so many deeds of arms that day that everyone could know that he was the son of the good king En Pedro and grandson of good King En Jaime. What shall I tell you? He went gaily about the field of battle, killing knights and knocking down horses, as a lion goes about amongst cattle. And of the almugavars I can tell you the deed of one called Porcell, who was afterwards of my company in Romania. He gave such a cut with his coutel to a French knight that the greaves with the leg came off in one piece and besides it entered half a palm into the horse's flank. And of the darts it is needless to say anything; there was one which passed through the knight who was attacking from behind his shield, passing through the shield and the armed knight. And so the battle was won and all the followers of the Prince who were on the ground were killed or taken prisoner.

And when the battle had been won the Lord King sent to Trapani and Mazzara and Calatafimi and Castellamare and Alcamo, to say that everyone should bring bread and wine, for he wished to remain on the field of battle all that day, and that his followers should collect the booty, and that every man should have what he had gained; he wished to have nothing more than the Prince and all banner lords who were prisoners; the other prisoners should belong to those who had taken them. And so, great refreshment came to the field and every man eat and drank his fill. And the Lord King himself had his own tents pitched there and there he dined with all his richs homens. And so, likewise, he made the Prince rest in a beautiful tent, and they took off his armour and sent for the physicians of the Lord King to mend a great wound in his face from a bordon, and other wounds.

And that day they all rested on the field of battle in the tents, and the followers collected the booty; there

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

was noone who had not an infinity of gain. And at night, the Lord King, joyous and content, with all the host and with the Prince and all the other prisoners, entered Trapani and there they stayed four days. And then the Lord King commanded the Prince to be taken to the castle of Cefalu and there he was well guarded and well provided for. And the other richs homens, prisoners likewise, he distributed amongst the castles and entrusted them to divers knights.

And as he commanded, so it was done; the Prince was taken to Cefalu by short journeys and such a guard was ordained for him as was suitable for such a lord. And when all this was done, the Lord King and the knights returned each to his place on the frontier.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the Lord King and must turn to speak to you of the Duke and King Charles.

CHAPTER CXCIII.

How King Charles and the Apostolic sent word to King Philip of France to be pleased to send his brother, micer Charles, to Sicily; for the Pope would provide for him from the treasure of Saint Peter; which was granted by him and the Twelve Peers of France.

WHEN the Duke knew his brother had been taken prisoner, and knew his defeat and the great hurt he had taken, you may imagine how displeased he was, and King Charles above all the others. And all the noble Houses of Naples had lost their chiefs. And so the Pope was very sad when he knew it, and if he spoke well when he knew the death of the Knights of Death, he now spoke fully twice as well. He said the treasure of Saint Peter would be exhausted if they did not make peace with this King Fadrique. He sent a cardinal to France, with

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

messengers from King Charles who likewise went there, to beg the King of France to send his brother, micer Charles, to Sicily, in aid of the Duke; and to say that if he did not, he must reckon that the Duke would have to do one of two things: either he must abandon all he possessed in Sicily, or he would have to be either killed or taken prisoner there. And that the Pope offered to give to micer Charles, out of the treasure of the Church, whatever pay he pleased, and to all knights he would bring with him. And he begged him, if he could, to bring five thousand knights with him, and that he would provide them with money.

And so the messengers of King Charles and the cardinal went to France and put the matter before the King of France and the Twelve Peers. And in the end it was ordained that, on no account, should King Charles nor his sons be forsaken by the House of France; the honour and the hurt of King Charles concerned the House of France more than any other. And I shall tell you that they were well advised because, if the other kings of the world did the same and helped those issued from them, it would be better for them; they would be more feared than they are when they are forsaken by them. And so it was agreed that micer Charles, in person, should go there and should provide himself with richs homens and knights, as many as he liked; the Church would pay for all.

Micer Charles willingly undertook the journey to Sicily, from which, if he had wished, he could have refrained. It might have sufficed him that he had accepted the grant of the Kingdom of Aragon in opposition to the Lord King En Pedro, his uncle, but now he had undertaken the expedition against the Lord King of Sicily, who is his cousin-german. It must end badly for him. And everyone can see how such ingratitude ends. For a hundred years the House of France has done nothing

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

that has ended to its honour, rather disgrace has come to them always. And so it will happen to all who do not walk in truth and justice.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of micer Charles of France, who is providing himself with the retinue with which he is to pass into Sicily, and I must turn to speak to you of a valiant man of poor estate who, by his valour, rose in a short time to a greater than any man yet born. And I wish to tell you about it in this place, because his deeds, which follow, were most marvellous and important and are all counted, as they should be, to the glory of the House of Aragon. And what has partly moved me to make this book are the great marvels which have happened through him, and the great Catalan and Aragonese victories there have been in Romania, which were begun by him. Of these marvels noone can recount the truth so well as I who was in Sicily in the time of his prosperity as his procurator-general and took part in all his affairs, in the most important he undertook by sea and by land. Wherefore you should all the more believe me.

CHAPTER CXCIV.

Recounts the beginnings of Frey Roger who was afterwards so exalted; and of the great deeds of prowess he performed in his life.

It is the truth that the Emperor Frederick[1] had a falconer, who was from Germany and was called Richard de Flor[2] and was a very gallant man. And he gave him to wife, at Brindisi, a damsel, daughter of an honourable man of the city of Brindisi, who was a wealthy man. Between what the Emperor gave him and what he had

[1] Frederick II.
[2] A literal translation of his German name, Blume.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

with his wife he became a very rich man. And by her he had two sons; the eldest was called Jacobo de Flor, and the younger was called Roger de Flor. And at the time Conradin came to the Kingdom of Sicily, the elder of these was not more than four years old, and Roger not more than one. And their father was a man expert in arms and wished to fight in the battle[1] of Conradin against King Charles, and in that battle he was killed. And King Charles, when he had seized the Kingdom, took for himself everything belonging to all who had been in the battle, and what had belonged to the family of the Emperor or of King Manfred. There remained no more to those boys than what their mother had brought as her marriage portion, for, of the rest, they were disinherited.

And, at that time, the ships of commercial houses touched at Brindisi, and those of Apulia, who wished to take pilgrims and provisions from the Kingdom, came there to spend the winter. The commercial houses all had, and have still, great establishments at Brindisi and in all Apulia and in all the Kingdom. And so the ships which winter there begin to load up in the spring to go to Acre, and take pilgrims and oil and wine and all kinds of grain of wheat. And, assuredly, it is the best fitted out place for the passage beyond sea of any belonging to Christians, and in the most abundant and fertile land, and it is very near Rome; and it has the best harbour of the world, so that there are houses right down to the sea.

And later on, when the boy Roger was about eight, it happened that a notable of the Templars, a brother sergeant, called Frey Vassayll, who was a native of Marseilles and was commander of a ship of the Templars and was a good seaman, came with his ship to spend a

[1] The battle of Tagliacozzo, 1268.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

winter at Brindisi, and he took in ballast and had the ship repaired in Apulia. And whilst he was having the ship repaired, the boy Roger ran about the ship and the rigging as lightly as if he were a monkey, and all day he was with the sailors, because the house of his mother was near to where the ship was taking in ballast. And the notable, Frey Vassayll, took a liking to the boy Roger; he loved him as if he were his son, and he asked his mother for him and said that, if she gave him up to him, he would do all in his power to get him a good post with the Templars. And the mother, as he seemed to her a man of importance, gave the boy up to him willingly, and he received him. And the boy turned out the most expert boy at sea; he performed marvels of climbing and of all things. When he was fifteen he was considered one of the best mariners of the world, and when he was twenty he was an accomplished mariner in theory and in practice, so that the worthy Frey Vassayll let him do entirely as he liked with the ship. And the Master of the Templars, seeing him so zealous and expert, gave him the mantle and made him brother sergeant and a short time after he had been made a brother, the Templars bought a great ship from the Genoese, the greatest that had been built at that time, and it was called the Falcon, and they gave it to this Frey Roger de Flor. And in this ship he sailed a long time, showing great knowledge and great valour. He found himself at Acre in this ship and the Templars did so well with this ship that they liked none so well as this one. This Frey Roger was the most generous man ever born; he can only be compared to the young King. And all he gained he divided and gave to the principal Templars and to many friends he knew how to make.

1291 And, at that time, Acre was lost, and he was in the harbour of Acre with his ship and brought away ladies and damsels and great treasure and many important

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

people. And then, likewise, he brought the people to Montpelegrin, so that he made infinite gain on that journey. And when he returned, he gave much to the Master, and to those who were powerful amongst the Templars. And when this was done, envious people accused him to the Master, saying that he had a great treasure which had remained to him of the affair at Acre. The Master seized all that he found of his, and then wanted to seize him. But he heard of this and left the ship in the harbour of Marseilles and went to Genoa, where he found micer Ticino Doria and other friends he had known how to make; and he borrowed so much from them that he bought a good galley, called Oliveta, and fitted it out very well. And he came to the Duke at Catania with the galley and offered himself to him, to support him with the galley and in person. But the Duke did not receive him well, neither in deeds nor in words, and so he remained three days without being able to get a favourable answer. And on the fourth day he appeared before him and said:—" Lord, I see it does not please you that I should be in your service, wherefore I commend you to God, and shall go and seek another lord, to whom my service will be pleasing." And the Duke answered that he might go and good luck go with him.

And he embarked at once and came to Messina, where he found the Lord King Fadrique; and he appeared before him and offered himself to him, as he had done to the Duke. And the Lord King received him very graciously and thanked him for his offer. And at once he made him a member of his household and assigned him good and honourable provision. And he and all who had come with him did homage to the King. Frey Roger, when he saw the fine and honourable reception the Lord King gave him, was very content. And when he had remained eight days with the Lord King and had

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

refreshed his followers, he took leave of the Lord King and set his course for Apulia, and he took a ship of King Charles loaded with victuals, which was going to the Duke, to Catania. And at once he manned it with some of his company, and those of the ship he put in the galley, and sent the ship, which was three-decked and loaded with grain and other provisions, to Syracuse. And, afterwards, he took full ten terides, likewise loaded with provisions which King Charles was sending to the Duke. And with these terides he came to Syracuse, where there was a great lack of provisions. And with the galley he likewise put some provisions into the castle of Agosta. What shall I tell you? With that prize he provisioned Syracuse and the castle of Agosta and Lentini and all the other places holding out for the Lord King round Syracuse. And he arranged to sell the victuals in a great market at Syracuse and sent some to Messina. And with the money he paid the soldiers who were in the castle of Syracuse and in the city and at Agosta and at Lentini and all the other places. He paid everyone for six months, some in coin, some in victuals. And so he revived everything. And when he had done this, he had still left, of the gain he had made, full eight thousand onzas. And he came to Messina and sent to the Lord King, who was going about Sicily, a thousand onzas in fine carlinos, and paid also, for six months, the soldiers who were with count de Squilace, and at Calana and La Mota and at the castle of Santa Agata and at Pentedatilo and Amandolea and Gerace; namely in money and in victuals. And then he equipped at once, besides his own, four galleys which he took from the dockyard. And when he had equipped them, he at once set his course again for Apulia and took, at Otranto, the ship of En Berenguer Samuntada of Barcelona, which was loaded with wheat belonging to King Charles, a great three-decked ship which King Charles was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

sending to Catania. And he manned it and sent it to Messina, and he gave a great largesse to the city from the other ships and lenys he took; he sent over thirty there, likewise loaded with provisions, so that his gain was infinite, and the good he did to Messina and Reggio and all the district was immense.

And when he had done all this, he bought full fifty mounts, all of good quality, and mounted Catalan and Aragonese squires which he received in his company, and he took five Catalan and Aragonese knights into his house, and with a great quantity of money he went to where the Lord King was and found him at Piazza; and there he gave him more than a thousand onzas in coin and, more than to any others, he gave to Don Blasco and En G. Galceran and En Berenguer de Entenza, for whom he conceived so much love that they lived like brothers and agreed that all things should be in common between them. What shall I tell you? There was no rich hom or knight who did not accept his presents and, in all the castles to which he came, he paid the soldiers for six months. So did he strengthen the Lord King and refresh his followers that one of them was worth as much as two had been before. And the Lord King, seeing his worth, made him vice-admiral of Sicily and a member of his council, and gave him the castles of Tripi and Alicata and the revenues of Malta.

And Frey Roger, seeing the honour bestowed on him by the Lord King, left his company of horse with him and left, as their chiefs, two knights, one called En Berenguer de Montroig, a Catalan, and the other micer Roger de la Matina; and he left money with them for their keep and for what they would need. And he took leave of the Lord King and came to Messina and equipped five galleys and a leny, and proceeded to scour all the Principality and the Roman shore, and the strand of Pisa and Genoa and of Provence and of Catalonia and Spain

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and Barbary. And all he found, belonging to friend or foe, in coin or valuable goods, which he could put on board the galleys, he took. And, to friends, he wrote out a note of his debt and told them that, when peace was made, he would pay them; and, from enemies, he took all of value he found, but left them their lenys and their lives, for he injured nobody's person. And so everyone parted from him satisfied and he made endless gain in that journey, in gold and silver and valuable goods, as much as the galleys could carry.

And so, with this gain, he returned to Sicily, where all the soldiers, horse and foot, were awaiting him as the Jews do the Messiah. And when he came to Trapani, he heard that the Duke had marched against Messina and was besieging it by sea and by land, but Frey Roger went to Syracuse and there dismantled his galleys. And wherever the soldiers were awaiting him, full of confidence, he proceeded to succour them, for to every man, horse or foot, he found guarding a castle in Sicily and in Calabria, he gave pay for further six months; so that all the soldiers were so full of good will that one was worth as much as two. And then he sent at once for his company and likewise paid it and sent the Lord King and all the richs homens great refreshment of money.

CHAPTER CXCV.

How Duke Robert besieged Messina with all his power and how, hearing this, the Lord King En Fadrique sent Don Blasco and count Galceran to Messina with succours; and how Duke Robert, hearing this, passed into Calabria whereat all they of Messina were much displeased.

It is true that the Duke knew that there were not many provisions in Messina and thought that he could reduce the city if he went to Catona with his host; and the fleet,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

when there, would prevent any leny or barge from entering Messina or Reggio; and so he could carry on two sieges and especially he could reduce Messina, for no succour could come to it by land, as he held Milazzo and Monforte and Castallo and Francavilla and Gaig and Catania. And he ordered the frontiers in this way: he left a company at Catania and Paterno and Aderno and Cero and other places, and came to Messina with all his fleet, which consisted of over a hundred galleys; and he landed at Rocamadore and then came to Borgo, where the market is held, and sacked and burnt it. And then he came to the dockyard and there burned two galleys, but the others were successfully defended against him. What shall I tell you? Every day brought us a great battle, and I can tell you so, for I was at the siege from the first day to the last, and I had my company established from the tower of Santa Clara to the palace of the Lord King. And, assuredly, in that place we had to bear more trouble than there was in any other part of the city, for they gave us plenty to do, some by land, some by sea.

With that, the Lord King of Sicily made Don Blasco and count Galceran get ready with seven hundred horsemen, shield on neck and, with two thousand almugavars besides, he sent them to succour Messina, with orders not to depart thence until they had fought with the Duke. And do not believe they wished for anything else, for they all went with their hearts set on it. And when they were at Tripi they sent us word that, in the morning at dawn, they would be with us before Messina, and that we should attack the host of the Duke on one side and they would attack it on the other. And so we, very cheerfully, prepared to sally out in the morning and to attack. But in the night the Duke heard this and when it was day they had all passed into Calabria; not one remained, except that they left some tents which

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

they could not strike, for they had been surprised by the dawn.

And so, at dawn, Don Blasco and count Galceran, with all their company in battle array, were on the mountain ready to attack Matagrifon, and they of the city were ready to sally out; but when they looked, they found no one, for all had passed to Catona and there they established themselves. And so Don Blasco and count Galceran, with that company, entered Messina and all were displeased when they found no battle. En Xivert de Iosa, who carried the banner of count Galceran, sent those at Catona a juglar with coplas in which he let them know that they were ready, if they wished to return to Messina, to let them land in safety, and then they would fight them. But they would do nothing of the kind, for they feared these two richs homens more than any one in the world. And so they should, for they were very accomplished knights and very valiant and they had won many battles.

CHAPTER CXCVI.

How Messina, being on the point of being abandoned owing to famine, was revived by Frey Roger with ten galleys loaded with wheat; wherefore the Duke had to raise the siege on the following day and returned to Catania.

And so the siege lasted so long that Messina was on the point of being abandoned, because of famine, though the Lord King entered it twice, and each time put in over ten thousand beasts laden with wheat and flour, and much cattle; but all this was as nothing, for wheat brought by land amounts to nothing, for the company

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and the chivalry who accompany it, have already eaten much of it on their return, and so the city was greatly distressed.

And Frey Roger who knew this, had six galleys at Syracuse and bought four which were at Palermo and Trapani, belonging to Genoese; and so he had ten galleys and he loaded them with wheat at Sciacca and came to Syracuse and waited for a strong south-east or south wind. And when it came, it was so strong, that all the sea was in turmoil; no man who was not so good a mariner would have dared to think of sailing from Syracuse as he did at nightfall. At dawn he was at Boca del Faro. It is the greatest wonder of the world how anything survived at Boca del Faro, for when there happens to be a south-east wind or a south wind, the currents are so great and the sea is so high that nothing can hold out. But he, his own galley foremost, proceeded to enter with the large lateen sails drawn up and furled. And when the galleys of the Duke saw them, all began to shout; they wanted to raise their anchors, but they could not do it. And so the ten galleys with Frey Roger entered Messina safe and sound, but there was not a man who had a dry stitch on. And as soon as he was at Messina, Frey Roger had the wheat cried at thirty silver reales the ton, which had cost him over sixty silver reales, besides the expenses, and he might have sold it at ten onzas the salma[1] if he had wished. And so Messina was revived and next day the Duke raised the siege and returned to Catania.

And so you can understand whether the lords of the world should despise anyone; you see what service this nobleman rendered to the Lord King of Sicily who, in his courtesy, received him well; and what disservice he did to the Duke for the bad reception he had given him.

[1] Ton.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXCVII.

How micer Charles of France passed into Sicily with four thousand knights and landed at Termini and besieged Sciacca, where, out of four thousand, they could not assemble the number of five hundred, for all died of sickness.

AND when Messina was relieved all Sicily and all Calabria were full of great joy and great content, as were also the Lord King of Sicily and all his barons; and King Charles and the Pope were full of concern and fear that the Duke was lost with all who were with him. And they proceeded to send swift messengers to micer Charles to tell him to come back. And micer Charles came to Naples and brought four thousand knights in the pay of the Pope. And when he came to Naples he proceeded to go on board the galleys which the Duke had sent and others which were at Naples, which King Charles had had apparelled, as well as lenys and ships and terides. And he went and landed at Termini and there they made a great feast. And, as a good beginning, there was a great fight at Termini between Latins and Provençals and French, so great that, altogether, over two thousand persons were killed. And they departed from Termini and went to besiege the town of Sciacca, which is on the outer coast. And, assuredly, it is the weakest town and the least strong fort of Sicily. And they stayed there a long time, shooting with catapults. And I assure you that the Lord King of Aragon would be much annoyed if he besieged such a town and did not take it in a month, either voluntarily surrendered or taken by assault. But they could do nothing; rather, when the siege was closest by sea and by land, there entered by sea, in the night, a knight of Peralada, called En Simon de Vallguarnera, with full two hundred men of birth on horseback

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and many afoot. And when he was within, the place was such that few had any fear of besiegers, rather they did them great damage. What shall I tell you? The siege lasted so long that micer Charles of France and the Duke lost all the knights they had, through sickness and, of the followers, a great part, so that, certainly, amongst them all they could not make up five hundred horsemen.

CHAPTER CXCVIII.

How the interview between the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily and micer Charles of France took place and of the peace which was treated of and concluded; and how the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily married Naleonor, daughter of King Charles.

AND King Fadrique with all his power was thirty leagues away, at a place called Calatabellota. And with him were count Galceran with his company and En Hugueto de Ampurias, count de Squilace and En Berenguer de Entenza and En G. R. de Moncada and Don Sancho of Aragon, brother of the Lord King En Fadrique, and Frey Roger and micer Mateo de Termini and micer Conrado Lansa and many other richs homens and knights who cried to the Lord King every day:—"Let us go to Sciacca and take micer Charles and the Duke for, assuredly, we can safely do it." But the Lord King said:—"Barons, do you not know that the King of France is Our cousin-german, and micer Charles as well? Then, how can you advise me to go and seize micer Charles, a thing which is in our power? But God does not wish that we should inflict so great a disgrace on the House of France, nor on him who is our cousin-german. If now he is opposed to us, peradventure, another time,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he will be with us." Nothing could make him think otherwise.

What shall I tell you? Micer Charles came to know this and when he heard it, he reflected and said:—"Ah, God, what gentle blood is that of the House of Aragon! I remember well that King Philip, my brother, and I would have been killed in Catalonia, if King En Pedro, our uncle, had wished it; and he had great cause, for what we did against him, to wish us to be killed. And so, likewise, King Fadrique, his son, is doing by me. Assuredly, I know that it is in his power to have us killed or taken prisoners, but, in his courtesy and uprightness, his heart will not allow it. And so my ingratitude was great in fighting against him; wherefore, as things stand thus, owing to their goodness and our wickedness, it is right that I do not depart from Sicily until peace is made between Holy Church and him and King Charles."

And it was true that everything was in his hands, for he had power from the Pope; whatever he did, great or small, in war or in peace, would be confirmed by Holy Church. And he had the same power from King Charles; wherefore he soon sent his messengers to Calatabellota and asked for an interview with the Lord King En Fadrique, to take place between Calatabellota and Sciacca. And the interview was granted and they both came to it and kissed and embraced each other. And all that day they were together, quite alone, parleying. And then, at night, each returned to his place, leaving the tents ready for the next day. And next day, in the morning, they came to the same place. What shall I tell you? The two, quite alone, treated of the peace, and then they admitted the Duke and, of the others, those they pleased. And the peace was made in such way that King Charles left the island of Sicily to King Fadrique and gave him in marriage Naleonor, who was, and is still, one of the wisest Christian ladies and the best of the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

world,[1] except only my Lady Blanca, her sister, Queen of Aragon. And the King of Sicily abandoned to him all he had in Calabria and in all the dominion. And this was signed on both sides; and that the interdict on Sicily should be raised. All the Kingdom had great joy thereat.

And at once the siege of Sciacca was raised and micer Charles and his followers went by land to Messina and they were well received everywhere. And the Duke abandoned Catania and all the other places he had in Sicily, and came to Messina, and the Lord King did the same. And the King showed much honour to micer Charles and sent to Cefalu for the Prince and surrendered him to micer Charles. And the feast there was great. And micer Charles and all took leave of the Lord King and went to Calabria, which the King surrendered to them.

And, a short time after, King Charles sent my Lady the Infanta with great splendour to Messina where the Lord King Fadrique was, who received her with great solemnity. And there, in Messina, in the church of Our Lady Santa Maria la Nova, he married her; and 1302
on that day the interdict was raised throughout all the land of Sicily by a Legate of the Pope, who was an archbishop and came on the part of the Pope. And all men were forgiven all the sins they had committed in the war. And on that day a crown was placed on the head of my Lady, the Queen of Sicily, and the feast was the greatest ever made in Messina.

---

[1] Eleanor, third daughter of Charles II of Naples. The marriage, sanctioned by Boniface VIII, was celebrated in May 1302.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CXCIX.[1]

How Frey Roger began to treat of the passage into Romania and sent messengers to the Emperor of Constantinople to let him know that he was ready to go there with Catalans, and that the Emperor was to marry him to the niece of the Emperor Lantzaura and must make him Grand Duke; all of which was granted by the Emperor.

AND whilst this great feast was being made and everyone was making holiday, Frey Roger was full of thought, considering what he would do later on, and he was the wisest man in the world for foresight. He reflected thus:—"This lord is lost to us and I see he will not be able to give anything to the Catalans and Aragonese and they will be a great hindrance to him. They are like all men, and cannot live without eating and drinking; and so, getting nothing from the Lord King, they will keep an enforced Lent, and in the end they will destroy all the land and will all die one after the other. And so it is necessary, as thou hast served the Lord King so long, who has shown thee so much honour, that thou deliverest him from these people, for his honour and for the advantage of them all." And so, also, he thought about himself, that it would not do him any good to tarry in Sicily; that, as the Lord King was at peace with the Church, and as King Charles and the Duke hated him so much, the Master of the Templars might claim him of the Pope; and that the Lord King would have to do one of two things: either he would have to obey the Pope and deliver him up to him, or begin the war again, and he would be sorry that the Lord King should receive such an affront through him.

And when he had considered all this, which was true,

[1] In this chapter Muntaner begins his account of the expedition of the Grand Company (or Catalan Company) to Greece, in which he took a prominent part.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he went to the Lord King and took him into a chamber and told him all these matters which he had considered, and when he had told it, he said :—" Lord, I have thought that, if you wish it and you assist me, I shall, in this matter, assist you and all those who have served you and me also." And the Lord King said that it pleased him much and that he was very grateful to him for what he had decided, and begged him to arrange for it in such manner that he be blameless in the matter and that it be to the profit of those who had served him ; and that he was ready and prepared to give all the aid he could.

" Then, Lord," said Frey Roger, " by your leave, I shall send two knights with an armed galley to the Emperor of Constantinople,[1] and shall let him know that I am ready to go to him with as great a company of horse and foot, all Catalans and Aragonese, as he wishes, and that he should give us pay and all necessaries ; that I know he greatly needs these succours, for the Turks have taken from him land of the extent of thirty journeys ; and he could not do as much with any people as with Catalans and Aragonese, and especially with those who have carried on this war against King Charles." And the Lord King answered :—" Frey Roger, you know more in these matters than We do ; nevertheless, it seems to Us that your idea is good, and so ordain what you please, We shall be well satisfied with what you ordain." And upon this Frey Roger kissed the King's hand and departed from him and went to his lodging where he remained all that day arranging matters. And the Lord King and the others attended the feast and the diversions and disportings.

And when the next day came, he had a galley equipped and called two knights whom he trusted, and told them all he had planned ; and also told them that, above all, they should make a treaty by which he would obtain,

[1] Andronicus II Palæologus.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

as wife, the niece[1] of the Emperor of Lantzaura,[2] and also that he be made Grand Duke of the Empire; and again, that the Emperor give pay for four months to all those he would bring, at the rate of four onzas a month to each armed horseman and one onza a month to each man afoot. And that he keep them at this pay all the time they wished to remain, and that they find the pay at Monemvasia. And Frey Roger gave them the articles of all this, as well of these matters as of all they were to do. And I know this, as I, myself, was present at the dictating and ordering of these articles. And he gave them power, by an adequate permit, to sign everything for him, as well about the marriage as about other matters. And, assuredly, the knights were worthy and wise, and when they had heard the plan, a few articles would have sufficed them; nevertheless all was done in regular order.

With that, when they were ready, they took leave of Frey Roger who held the matter for concluded, because his renown was great in the House of the Emperor, from the time he was commanding the ship of the Templars called the Falcon, when he had done many favours to ships of the Emperor which he met beyond the seas, and he knew Greek very well. And so, likewise, he was very renowned in Romania and throughout all the world for the help he had given so freely to the Lord King of Sicily, and so he was able to provide himself very fully with followers. Thus En Berenguer de Entenza, with whom he had sworn brotherhood, promised to follow him, and also En Ferran de Ahones and En Corberan de

[1] Maria, daughter (not niece) of Azan, King of the Bulgars, and Irene, sister of the Emperor Andronicus II.

[2] This is Muntaner's rendering of 'Azan,' or 'Asen.' He speaks throughout indiscriminately of 'the Emperor Lantzaura,' and 'the Emperor of Lantzaura.' The Azans, or Asens did not reign long over the Bulgars; the first king of this dynasty was a Vlach shepherd, who rose against the tyranny of the Emperor Isaac Angelus II, and was crowned as John Asen I at Tirnovo in 1187, and the last was John Asen II who was murdered in 1257.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Alet and En Martin de Logran, and En Pedro de Aros and En Sancho de Aros and En Berenguer de Rocafort and many other Catalan and Aragonese knights; and of the almugavars full four thousand, all expert, who, from the time of the Lord King En Pedro until that day, had carried on the war in Sicily. He was very cheerful, and helped all meanwhile as much as he could; he did not leave them in want of anything.

And the galley went so fast that, in a short time, it was at Constantinople where it found the Emperor, Skyr Andronicus and his eldest son, Skyr Miqueli. And when the Emperor had heard the message, he was very joyous and content and received the messengers well and, in the end, the matter came to pass as Frey Roger had dictated; the Emperor wished Frey Roger to have to wife, his niece, daughter of the Emperor of Lantzaura. She was at once affianced to one of the knights for Frey Roger. Then Skyr Andronicus agreed that all the company Frey Roger would bring should be in the pay of the Emperor; four onzas pay for each armed horse and one onza for each man afoot, and four onzas for each boatswain and one onza for each steersman, and twenty silver reales for each cross-bowman and twenty-five silver reales for each seaman of the prow; and they should be paid every four months. And if, at any time, there was anyone who wished to go west, that the reckoning be made according to the agreement and that he be paid and allowed to return, and receive pay for two months whilst returning; and that Frey Roger be made Grand Duke of all the Empire. And Grand Duke is a title which means the same as prince and lord over all the soldiers of the Empire, with authority over the admiral; and all the islands of Romania are subject to him and also all the places on the sea-coasts.

And the Emperor sent the charter of his title of Grand Duke to Frey Roger in a handsome gold casket, signed

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

by him and his sons, and he sent him the baton of the office and the banner and hat (all the officials of Romania have a special hat the like of which no other man may wear). And so likewise he granted that they should find provision of pay at Monemvasia and of all they would need on arrival

---

CHAPTER CC.

How the messengers of Frey Roger returned from Constantinople to Messina with every success and all grants; and he was made Grand Duke of all Romania; and how the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily caused ten galleys and two lenys to be given him and assisted him with money and provided him with victuals.

AND so, joyous and content, the messengers returned to Sicily with everything signed, and found Frey Roger at Alicata and told him all they had done and gave him the grants of everything, and the baton and the hat and the banner and the seal of the office of Grand Duke. And henceforth he will be called the Grand Duke.

And when the Grand Duke had received everything, he went to the Lord King whom he found at Palermo with my Lady the Queen, and then he told him all about the matter. And the Lord King was very joyous thereat and, incontinent, had ten galleys of the dockyard and two lenys given him, and had them repaired and fitted out for him. And the Grand Duke already had eight of his own, and so he had eighteen and two lenys; and then he freighted three large ships and many terides and more lenys, and sent word to all parts that everyone who was to go with him should come to Messina. And the Lord King assisted everyone as much as he could with money and gave each person, man, woman and child, who was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

going with the Grand Duke, whether Catalan or Aragonese, one quintal of biscuits and five cheeses, and between every four persons one baco of salted meat and also garlic and onions.

CHAPTER CCI.

How Frey Roger, Grand Duke of Romania, took leave of the Lord King of Sicily and passed into Romania with two thousand five hundred armed knights and five thousand almugavars and foot soldiers.

So all embarked with their wives and children, very joyous and satisfied with the Lord King; there never was a lord who behaved more liberally to people who had served him than he did, as much as he could and even above his power. Everyone may know that the Lord King had no treasure; he had come out of such great wars that he had nothing left. And so, likewise, the richs homens and knights embarked, and the knights and horsemen had double rations of everything. But En Berenguer de Entenza could not be ready at that season, nor En Berenguer de Rocafort. En Berenguer de Rocafort had two castles in Calabria which he would not surrender at the peace until he was paid what was due to him of his pay and of that of his company, wherefore he could not embark so soon. But En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos and Ferran de Ahones and En Corberan de Alet and En Pedro de Aros and En Pedro de Logran and many other knights and leaders and almugavars embarked. And so, when they had embarked, there were, between galleys and lenys and ships and terides, thirty-six sails; and there were one thousand five hundred horsemen, according as it was written down, fitted out with everything except horses. And there were full four

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

thousand almugavars and full a thousand men afoot; without the galley-slaves and seamen who belonged to the shipping. And all these were Catalans and Aragonese and the greater part brought their wives or their mistresses and their children. And so they took leave of the Lord King and departed from Messina at a suitable hour with great cheer and content.

CHAPTER CCII.

How the Grand Duke landed at Monemvasia and passed into Constantinople, where he was well received by the Emperor and his son; and how Catalans and Genoese had a quarrel in which full three thousand Genoese were killed.

THEN God gave them fine weather and in a few days they landed at Monemvasia and there they found those who showed them great honour, and they were given great refreshment of all things. And they found there an order of the Emperor to go straight to Constantinople, and so they did. They left Monemvasia and went to Sept. 1303 Constantinople. And when they were at Constantinople, the Emperors, the father and the son, and all the people of the Empire, received them with great joy and great pleasure. But, if these were pleased at their arrival, the Genoese were sorry. They saw well that if these people remained there, they themselves would lose the honour and power they had in the Empire; that the Emperor had dared do nothing but what they wished, but that, henceforth, he would despise them. What shall I tell you? The wedding was celebrated, the Grand Duke took to wife the niece of the Emperor, who was one of the beautiful and learned damsels of the world and was about sixteen; and the wedding was celebrated

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

with great joy and content and every man received pay for four months.

But whilst this feast was great, some Genoese, by their arrogance, caused a fight with the Catalans; it was a great fight. And a wicked man, called Roso de Finar, carried the banner of the Genoese and came before the palace of Blanquerna; and our almugavars and the seamen came out against them, and even the Grand Duke and the richs homens and the knights could not hold them back; and they came out with a royal pennon carried before them and only about thirty squires and light horse went with them. And when they came near each other, the thirty squires proceeded to attack; and they attacked where the banner was and felled Roso de Finar to the ground and the almugavars hit out amongst them. What shall I tell you? This Roso and over three thousand Genoese were killed there; and the Emperor saw all this from his palace and had great joy and content thereat. He said before all:—"Now the Genoese, who have behaved with such arrogance, have found their match; and the Catalans were quite in the right, it was the fault of the Genoese."

And when the banner of the Genoese was on the ground and Roso and other important people had been killed, the almugavars, engaged in killing their enemies, wanted to go and pillage Pera, which is a select city of the Genoese, in which are all their treasure and merchandize. But upon this, when the Emperor saw they were going to plunder Pera, he called the Grand Duke and said to him:—"My son, go to your people and make them turn back; if they sack Pera the Empire is destroyed, for the Genoese have much of Our property and of that of the barons and the other people of Our Empire."

And, at once, the Grand Duke mounted a horse and, mace in hand, with all the richs homens and knights who had come with him, he went towards the almugavars,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

who already were preparing to demolish Pera, and he made them turn back. And so the Emperor was very content and joyous.

And next day he had more pay given to all and ordered all to prepare to proceed to Boca Daner[1] and attack the Turks, who, at that place, had taken from the Emperor land to the extent of more than thirty days' journeys, covered with good cities and towns and castles which they had subdued and which paid tribute to them. And also, which is a greater disgrace, if a Turk wished to marry the daughter of the most important man in one of these cities or towns or castles which they had conquered, her parents or friends had to give her to him to wife. And when children were born, if they were males, they made them Turks and had them circumcised as if they were Saracens; but if they were females, they could follow which law they pleased. You see in what grief and subjection they were, to the great disgrace of all Christendom. Wherefore you may well see how necessary it was that that company should go there. And what is more, the Turks had, in truth, made such conquests, that an army of them came opposite Constantinople; there was not more than an arm of the sea, less than two miles broad, between them and the city, and they drew their swords and threatened the Emperor, and the Emperor could see it all. Imagine with what grief he beheld it. If they had had wherewith to cross this arm of the sea, they would have taken Constantinople.

[1] Or, as in the Barcelona editions, Boca Daver, the Straits of Abydos, according to Buchon. From the indications given by Muntaner in Chapters CCIX and CCXIV it will be seen that Buchon's identification was wrong, and that Boca Daner was in Muntaner's time, the name of the Straits of Gallipoli, not of the Narrows.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCIII.

How the Grand Duke passed into Anatolia and landed at Cape Artaqui without the knowledge of the Turks and attacked them and delivered from captivity all the country conquered by them and wintered at Artaqui.

AND so, behold what sort of people the Greeks are and how God vented His wrath on them; for Skyr Miqueli eldest son of the Emperor, went to Artaqui with full twelve thousand horsemen and full a hundred thousand afoot, but dared not fight the Turks, so that he had to return with ignominy. And to that place, Artaqui, where he had been and whence he had to return, there the Emperor sent the Grand Duke with his Company, which was not more than fifteen hundred horse and four thousand afoot.

And before he departed from Constantinople, the Grand Duke arranged that the Emperor should give a kinswoman of his to wife to En Ferran de Ahones and make him admiral of the Empire. And this the Grand Duke ordained in order that the seamen he had brought should remain in the galleys, and that the Genoese or other people should not dare to move against the Catalans in all the Empire; and, also, in order that, as he penetrated inland with the host, the galleys should be in places known to him, with victuals and all refreshment. He ordained the whole matter so well that no one could improve it in any way. And so he had also, in the galleys, from the islands and other countries, and from the coasts all he needed for himself and his followers.

And when all this was ordained they took leave of the Emperor and embarked and went to Cape Artaqui, towards the mainland, because the Turks wished, at all costs, to have that peninsula which is a very fertile place. And all this peninsula is protected towards the land by a

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

wall, the line of defence of which is not more than half a mile, from one sea to the other. And then, from that neck onward, the peninsula is very large, there are over twenty thousand hamlets and manors and farms. And the Turks had come many times to demolish that wall; for, if they could demolish it, they could pillage the whole peninsula. And so the Grand Duke with all his followers landed there and the Turks knew nothing of it. And when he had landed, he heard that the Turks had fought there that day. He asked if they were far off, and they told him that they were about two leagues away and that they were between two rivers. And, at once, the Grand Duke had it cried that every man should be ready next morning to follow the banner. And it is the truth that he carried his banner and that of the Emperor with the chivalry, and the almugavars carried a pennon with the arms of the Lord King of Aragon and the van a pennon with the arms of King Fadrique; and this they had agreed to do when they did homage to the Grand Duke.

In the morning they rose with great eagerness and cheerfulness, so early that, at dawn, they were by the river where the Turks were encamped with their wives and children; and they proceeded to attack them in such manner that the Turks marvelled at these people who gave such blows with their darts that nothing could stand up before them. What shall I tell you? The battle was hard after the Turks had seized their weapons, but what good was it? The Grand Duke and his company of horse and foot threw themselves upon them in such wise that the Turks could not stand up before them; yet they would not flee because of their wives and children who were with them and for whom their hearts were sore. Rather would they die first. There never were men who fought so well, but nevertheless, in the end they were all taken captive with their wives and children. And there died of the Turks, on that day, over

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

three thousand horsemen and over two thousand afoot. And so the Grand Duke and his followers collected the booty and left no man over ten years old alive ; and they returned to Artaqui with great joy and brought away in the galleys, the slaves and very beautiful jewels, of all which they sent the greater part to the Emperor, and the female slaves to the Empress and to the daughter of the Emperor. And to my Lady, the wife of the Grand Duke, female slaves and many jewels were sent, as also to all the richs homens and chiefs and almugavars, and to my Lady, the mother-in-law of the Grand Duke. And this was on the eighth day after they had parted from the Emperor. The joy and cheerfulness were so great throughout the Empire, and especially the Emperor's and my Lady the mother-in-law's and my Lady her daughter's, that all the world should have rejoiced ; but, whoever else rejoiced, the Genoese were very sorrowful. And so likewise had Skyr Miqueli, the eldest son of the Emperor, great displeasure at it and great envy, so that, from that day, he was angry with the Grand Duke and his Company. He would rather have lost the Empire than that they should have gained this victory, because he had been at that place with so many followers and had been defeated twice, although he, himself, was one of the accomplished knights of the world. But God had sent down so much pestilence upon the Greeks that any one could have defeated them.

And this happened owing to two conspicuous sins to which they are given. One is that they are the most arrogant people of the world ; there is no people on earth they esteem and value, but only themselves, yet they are worthless people ; the other is that they are the least charitable people to their neighbour to be found in all time. When we were at Constantinople, the people who had fled from Anatolia because of the Turks, lived and lay amongst the rubbish heaps in Constantinople

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and called out that they were hungry, but there was no Greek who would give them anything for the love of God, and yet there was a great market of all kinds of victuals. But the almugavars, out of the pity they felt for them, divided with them what they had to eat, so that, owing to this charity which our people practised, when they moved to another place, over two thousand poor Greeks whom the Turks had plundered, followed them and all came with us. And so you may understand why God sent down this wrath upon the Greeks. The proverb of the wise man says that when God is angry with a man, the first way in which He punishes him, is that He takes his reason from him. And so the Greeks are under the wrath of God. They are worthless, but they believe that they are worth more than the other peoples of the world; so likewise, as they have no charity towards their neighbour, it appears clearly that they have lost all sense.

And when this was over, the Grand Duke with all his Company, prepared to march through Anatolia against the Turks and to deliver out of captivity the cities and castles and towns that the Turks had conquered. But when he and his followers were ready to depart from
1303 Artaqui, which was on the first day of November, there set in the most severe winter of the world, with rain and wind and cold and bad weather, so that the rivers became so large that no man could cross them.

And so he decided to winter in this place, Artaqui, which is a place fertile in all things. In that country is the greatest cold of the world with most snow; when the snow begins there is nothing else until April. And when he had decided to winter in this place, Artaqui, he made the most beautiful disposition that any one could make; he chose six good men of that place and two Catalan knights and two adalils and two almugavars, and these twelve men assigned a lodging to every rich hom, and also to the knights and to the almugavars;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and they arranged in this way, that the host of each man was to give him bread and wine and oats and salt meat and cheeses and vegetables and a bed and all he wanted, except fresh meat and condiments; he was to provide him with everything else. And these twelve men fixed a suitable price for each thing and they ordained that the host keep a tally of all things for him who lodged in his house and that this should be done from the first day of November until all through March. And when that time came, then each would make the reckoning with his host, before these twelve or one of them; and what each had taken would be deducted from his pay and the court would pay each good man of the house. With this those of the army were very content, and also the Greeks, and so it was arranged to spend the winter.

And the Grand Duke sent to Constantinople for the Grand Duchess, and they spent the winter with great joy and gaiety. And the Grand Duke ordained that the admiral, with the galleys and all the seamen, should go and winter in the island of Chios, a very fertile island where mastic is made, which is not made anywhere else in the world. And he made the admiral winter there, because the Turks, with barques, harry these islands. And so they guarded all that district and went visiting all the islands. And so they passed all that winter in a pleasant life, with solaces and diversions amongst each other. And when February was over the Grand Duke 1304
proclaimed throughout all Artaqui that every man should make his reckoning with his host during the month of March and be ready to follow the banner on the first day of April.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCIV.

How the Grand Duke went to Constantinople to leave the Grand Duchess there; and how he obtained four months' pay from the Emperor; and of the great presents he made to all his company.

AND so every one made his reckoning with his host and there were some who had nothing left, for they had taken the value of fully a year's pay from their host. Those who were prudent had lived in an orderly fashion, yet there was no one who had not had much more than he had needed in the time he had remained there. And whilst the reckoning was being made in the month of
1304 March, the Grand Duke with the Grand Duchess and his mother-in-law (sister of the Emperor), who had wintered with him, and two brothers of his wife, went to Constantinople in four galleys to leave the Grand Duchess there and to take leave of the Emperor. And when he was at Constantinople a great feast was made for him and great honour shown him. And he obtained from the Emperor pay for four months for the needs of his Company, a thing no one expected, because of the great expense incurred in the winter; every one owed much money. And so he left the Grand Duchess at Constantinople and took leave of her and of his mother-in-law and of his brothers-in-law and of his friends. And then he took leave of the Emperor and embarked in the four galleys and was back at Artaqui on the fifteenth of March. And all greatly rejoiced at seeing him. And the Grand Duke asked if every man had made his reckoning with his host and they said yes.

And upon this, he had it cried that every man should, on the following day, be in the square there was in front of the Grand Duke's lodgings, and bring a schedule of what he owed to his host. When the reckonings were

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

made, it had been ordained by the twelve good men that two schedules should be written, divided by A.B.C., one to be held by the host and the other by the soldier, and these schedules were sealed with the seal of the Grand Duke. And when the next day came, every man came with his schedule and the Grand Duke sat on a seat made for him under a tree of the kind called elm, and sent for every man with his schedule, and he found they had received an immense amount of goods in proportion to the time they had been wintering. And when he had received all the schedules and had put them on a carpet in front of him, he rose and said :—" Notables, I owe you much gratitude for being pleased to take me as your chief and lord, and for being ready to follow me wherever I wish to lead you. Now, I find that you have taken much more, twice as much than what you should have taken for the time you wintered here. There are some who have taken three times as much and others four times ; so that I find that if the Court claims it all from you, you will pass through great tribulation. Wherefore, for the honour of God, and for the honour of the Empire, and for the love I bear you, I, by special favour, give you all you have spent this winter, so that nothing shall be deducted from your pay. And I wish that now, at once, all the schedules you have brought to me here be burnt and that the Greeks bring their schedules to our treasurer and he will have them paid." And at once he sent for fire and had the schedules burnt in the presence of all. And everyone rose and went to kiss his hand and gave him many thanks ; and so they should, for it was the most handsome gift a lord had made to his vassals for more than a thousand years. Altogether he gave them pay for eight months, one with another, the pay of the horsemen amounted to fifty thousand gold onzas and that of the men afoot to nearly sixty thousand onzas. Altogether, with what the richs homens had had,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

it was reckoned that it amounted to a hundred thousand gold onzas, which makes six millions of silver.

And when he had done this, he wished to gladden them still more and he commanded that, on the next day, every man should be in the said square to receive pay for four months in fine gold. And so you may imagine what joy there was in the host and with what good will they served him henceforth. And so, next day, he had four months' pay given them, in order that every man should prepare, on the following day, to go to the war.

CHAPTER CCV.

How the Grand Duke and his Company had a second battle with the band of Cesa and Tiu and vanquished and killed them near Philadelphia.

WITH that, on the first day of April, by the favour of God the banner issued forth and every man prepared to follow it and, in due time, they entered the Kingdom of Anatolia. And the Turks were prepared to oppose them, namely the bands of Cesa and of Tiu, which were composed of kinsmen of those the Company had killed at Artaqui. The Company came to a city called Philadelphia, which is a noble city and of the great cities of the world, with a circumference of full eighteen miles, as much as Rome or Constantinople. And near that city, at a distance of one journey, were the said two bands of Turks who were altogether full eight thousand horsemen and full twelve thousand afoot, and they offered battle. And the Grand Duke and his Company had great pleasure thereat. At once, before the arrows of the Turks hit their mark, the horsemen attacked the Turkish horsemen and the almugavars the men afoot. What shall I tell you ? The battle was very hard and lasted from sunrise

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

until the hour of nones.[1] The Turks were all killed or taken prisoners; there did not escape a thousand of the horsemen nor five hundred of the men afoot. And the Grand Duke and his Company searched the field very joyously and had not lost more than eighty horsemen and a hundred men afoot, and they made infinite gain. And whilst they searched the field, which took them full eight days, they camped in that place which was beautiful and delightful, and then they went to the said city of Philadelphia where they were received with great joy and gladness. And so the news went throughout Anatolia that the bands of Cesa and Tiu had been defeated by the Franks, and all rejoiced, and that is not wonderful for, but for the Franks, they would all have been taken captive. And so the Grand Duke and his Company stayed in the city of Philadelphia fifteen days and then departed thence and went to the city of Nymphæum and then to Magnesia, and then they went on to the city of Tyre.

CHAPTER CCVI.

How the Turks were vanquished by En Corberan de Alet at Tyre where he was wounded by an arrow and died; and how En Berenguer de Rocafort came to Constantinople with two galleys and two hundred knights and went to Ephesus, where is the tomb of monsenyer Saint John the Evangelist.

AND when they came to the city of Tyre, those Turks who had escaped from the battle, with others who had joined them who were of the band of Mondexia, made raids in the direction of Tyre, as far as the church in which rests the body of monsenyer Saint George, which is one of the most beautiful churches I have ever seen, and is about two miles from Tyre. And at dawn of day the Turks came to Tyre, not knowing that the Franks

[1] 9 p.m.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

were there. And as they began to arrive, a cry of alarm went about the district. And the Grand Duke looked and saw the Turks (all could see them, for they were in the plain and the city of Tyre lies high), and he commanded En Corberan de Alet, who was seneschal of the host, to go out against them with what company would follow him. And the Company seized their arms hurriedly and En Corberan, with about two hundred horsemen and a thousand men afoot, went and attacked the Turks. He vanquished them at once and killed over seven hundred horse and many afoot, and he would have killed them all, but the mountain was near and they left their horses and fled to the mountain on foot. And En Corberan de Alet was a very accomplished knight and, with great spirit, dismounted also and went up the mountain. But the Turks, seeing them come up after them, shot their arrows. And unfortunately an arrow hit En Corberan, who had taken off his iron cap because of the heat and dust, and there he died. This was a great loss. The Christians remained with him and the Turks went away.

And when the Grand Duke knew this he was much displeased, because he loved him much. He had made him seneschal and had betrothed to him a daughter he had had by a lady of Cyprus and who remained with my Lady the Grand Duchess at Constantinople, and the wedding was to be celebrated on their return to Constantinople. And so they buried En Corberan, with about ten other Christians who had been killed with him, in the church of Saint George, with great solemnity. And they had fine tombs made for them; the Grand Duke and the host lingered eight days in order that a rich and beautiful tomb should be erected for En Corberan. And from Tyre, the Grand Duke sent a message to Smyrna and from Smyrna to Chios, to the admiral En Ferran de Ahones, to come to the city of Ani with all the galleys and the seamen who were with him; and so the admiral did.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And, when the admiral was ready to depart from Chios, En Rocafort came to Constantinople with two galleys and brought two hundred horsemen, namely with all their array except horses, and he brought full a thousand almugavars, and had an interview with the Emperor. And the Emperor at once commanded him to go to where he knew the Grand Duke was, and so he went to the island of Chios and together with the admiral departed from Chios and came to the city of Ani. And when they had stayed there about eight days, they had news that the Grand Duke was coming and they rejoiced greatly and sent two murtats[1] to him and they found him in the city of Tyre. And the Grand Duke was greatly pleased and wished me to go to Ani and bring En Berenguer de Rocafort as far as the city of Ayasaluck which the Scriptures call by another name, Ephesus.

And in the said place, Ephesus, is the tomb which monsenyer Saint John the Evangelist entered when he had taken leave of the people; and then a cloud as of fire was seen, in which, it is believed, he ascended to Heaven, body and soul. And this would well seem to be so, from the miracle which is seen every year at his tomb; namely, that on Saint Stephen's day, every year, at the hour of vespers, there comes out of the tomb (which is four-cornered and stands at the foot of the altar and has a beautiful marble slab on the top, full twelve palms long and five broad) and in the middle of the slab there are nine very small holes, and out of these holes, as vespers are being begun on Saint Stephen's day (on which day the vespers are of Saint John) manna like sand comes out of each hole and rises full a palm high from the slab, as a jet of water rises up. And this manna issues out, and it begins to issue out, as I have told you, when vespers are begun to be sung on Saint Stephen's day,

[1] The meaning of this word has not been ascertained by any of the translators.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and it lasts all night and then all Saint John's day until sunset. There is so much of this manna, by the time the sun has set and it has ceased to issue out, that, altogether, there are of it full three cuarteras of Barcelona. And this manna is marvellously good for many things; for instance, he who drinks it when he feels fever coming on will never have fever again. Also, if a lady is in travail and cannot bring forth, if she drinks it with water or with wine, she will be delivered at once. And again, if there is a storm at sea and some of the manna is thrown in the sea three times in the name of the Holy Trinity and Our Lady Saint Mary and the Blessed Saint John the Evangelist, at once the storm ceases. And again, he who suffers from gall stones, and drinks it in the said names, recovers at once. And some of this manna is given to all the pilgrims who come there; but it only appears once a year.

CHAPTER CCVII.

How the Grand Duke went to Ayasaluck and made En Berenguer de Rocafort seneschal of the host; and how they discomfited the Turks of the band of Atia who, joined a second time to all the Turks, were vanquished and full eighteen thousand killed at the Iron Gate.

I TOOK leave of the Grand Duke and the Company at once and sent twenty horses for the use of En Rocafort, for him to ride and come to me in the city of Ephesus, otherwise called Theologos in Greek; and he underwent much danger from many attacks from the Turks. And there came with him full five hundred almugavars; the others remained in the city of Ani with the admiral En Ferran de Ahones, because of the Turks who made raids every day. And when they had been in the city of Ephesus four days, the Grand Duke came with all

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the host and received the said En Berenguer de Rocafort and made him seneschal of the host, as En Corberan de Alet had been, and affianced to him his daughter who had been affianced to the said En Corberan; and he took up office at once. And the Grand Duke at once gave him a hundred horsemen and had four months pay given him. And so the Grand Duke stayed in the said city eight days, and then came with all the host to the city of Ani and left En Pedro de Aros in the city of Tyre as captain, and left him thirty horsemen and a hundred men afoot.

And when the Grand Duke entered the city of Ani, the admiral and all the seamen and all those who had come with En Rocafort, issued forth armed to receive him; the Grand Duke had great pleasure thereat, because they had thus reinforced his host. And whilst the Grand Duke was at Ani he refreshed all the Company with pay. And, one day, the cry of alarm was raised that the Turks of the band of Atia were raiding the huerta of Ani. And the host went out in such manner that they came upon the Turks and attacked them; so, on that day, they killed a thousand Turkish horsemen and full two thousand men afoot. And the others fled; if evening had not overtaken them they would all have been killed or taken prisoners. And so the Company returned to the city of Ani with great joy and cheerfulness and with great gain they had made.

And so the Grand Duke stayed with the host in the city of Ani full a fortnight. And then he had the banner brought out and wished to complete a visit to all the Kingdom of Anatolia; so that the host went as far as the Iron Gate, which is a mountain on which there is a pass called the Iron Gate, and which is at the parting of Anatolia and the Kingdom of Armenia. When he was at the Iron Gate, the Turks of that band of Atia which had been discomfited at Ani, and all the other Turks

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

who were left of the other bands, were all assembled on a mountain; and they were altogether full ten thousand horsemen and full twenty thousand men afoot. And in order of battle, at dawn of day, which was the day of Saint Mary in August, they marched against the Grand Duke and, at once, the Franks were ready with great joy and cheerfulness; it seemed that God was upholding them at that time. And the almugavars cried:— "Awake the iron!" And at once the Grand Duke with the chivalry attacked the horsemen and En Rocafort and the almugavars attacked the men afoot. And there you might have seen feats of arms such as man had never seen. What shall I tell you? The battle was very cruel, but in the end the Franks shouted all together: "Aragon! Aragon!" and then they had such a victory that they vanquished the Turks. And so, killing and overtaking them, they pursued them until nightfall, and night stopped the pursuit. Nevertheless, there fell of the Turkish horsemen, altogether, over six thousand, and of those afoot over twelve thousand. And so, that night, the Company had a good night, for the Turks lost all their provisions and cattle. And next day the Franks searched the field; altogether the host stayed in that place eight days to search the field, and the gain they made was infinite.

CHAPTER CCVIII.

How the Emperor of Constantinople sent to tell the Grand Duke to leave everything and return to Constantinople in order to come and help him against the Emperor Lantzaura who had rebelled against the Empire.

THEN the Grand Duke proclaimed that every man should follow his banner, and he went to the Iron Gate and there stayed three days and then prepared to return to the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

city of Ani. But whilst he was returning to Ani, messengers came to him from the Emperor, by whom he let him know that he should leave everything and return to Constantinople with all his host; because the Emperor of Lantzaura, father of the Grand Duchess, had died and had left his Empire to his two sons, who were brothers of the Grand Duchess and nephews of the Emperor. But their uncle, brother of their father, had rebelled against the Empire, and therefore the Emperor of Constantinople (because the Empire of Lantzaura belonged to his nephews) sent messengers to this uncle of his nephews who had rebelled, to tell him to leave the Empire to these children, who were his nephews and to whom it belonged. But he made him a very cruel answer, so that a great war ensued between the Emperor of Constantinople and he who had made himself Emperor of Lantzaura. The Emperor of Constantinople was being defeated every day and therefore he sent a messenger to the Grand Duke to come to his assistance.

CHAPTER CCIX.

How the Grand Duke having received the message of the Emperor of Constantinople held a council to consider what he should do, at which it was agreed that he should at all costs go and assist the Emperor.

BUT the Grand Duke was greatly displeased at having to abandon, at that time, the Kingdom of Anatolia which he had conquered completely and delivered out of its troubles and out of the hands of the Turks. And after he had received the message and the pressing entreaties of the Emperor, he assembled a council and told all the Company the message he had received, and that he begged them to advise him as to what he should do. And

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

finally, they gave him the advice that, by all means, he should go and succour the Emperor in his need and then, in the spring, they would return to Anatolia. And this the Grand Duke held to be good advice and acknowledged that the Company had advised him well. And, at once, they prepared to get ready and fitted out the galleys and put into them all they had taken. And the host took the road by the coast, so that the galleys were daily near the host and the Grand Duke left a good garrison in every place, although a small garrison would have sufficed, for they had swept away the Turks in such wise that hardly one dared show himself in all the kingdom, so that this kingdom was completely restored.

And when he had set all the country in order, he went by his journeys to Boca Daner and when he came to Passaquia, he sent an armed leny to Constantinople, to the Emperor, to ask what he wished him to do. And when the Emperor knew that the host of the Franks was at Passaquia he was very joyous and content and had a great feast made at Constantinople and sent to tell the Grand Duke to cross over to Gallipoli and lodge his followers in the peninsula of Gallipoli. And this peninsula has a length of altogether full fifteen leagues and is in no place wider than one league; the sea encircles it on every side; and it is the best provided peninsula of the world, as well with good bread, as with good wines and a great abundance of all fruit. At the entrance to the peninsula from the mainland there is a good castle called Examille, which means six miles, and it is called so, because, at that place, the peninsula is not more than six miles wide. And this castle stands in the middle, to defend all the peninsula, and on one side of the peninsula is Boca Daner and, on the other, the Gulf of Saros, and then, within the peninsula, are the cities of Gallipoli and of Potamos and of Sexto and Maditos; each of these is an important place, and besides these places there

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

are many manors and fiefs. And so the Grand Duke distributed all his host amongst these manors which are provided with everything, and agreed that everyone should pay his host for what he wanted and should make tallies of it and keep a reckoning.

CHAPTER CCX.

How, when the Emperor Lantzaura knew of the arrival of the Grand Duke, he treated with the Emperor of Constantinople, saying he would do all he wished; and how hatred arose between the Emperor of Constantinople and the Grand Duke.

AND when he had settled all the host, he went with a hundred horsemen to Constantinople to see the Emperor and my Lady his mother-in-law and his wife, and when he entered Constantinople a great feast was made for him and great honour shown him. And whilst he was at Constantinople, the brother of the Emperor Lantzaura, who was waging war against the Emperor as you have heard before, knew that the Grand Duke had come with all his host and held his cause for lost. And, at once, he sent his messengers to the Emperor and did all the Emperor wished; and thus the Emperor got, through the Franks, all he wanted in this war.

And when this peace was made the Grand Duke requested the Emperor to pay the Company. And the Emperor said he would do so; and he had money coined like the ducat of Venice, which is worth eight diners of Barcelona. And he had also some made called vincilions, but they were not worth three diners each, and he wanted them to be current at the value of those which were worth eight diners; and he commanded everyone to take horses or mules or victuals or other things they needed from the Greeks and to pay in that coin. And

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

this he did out of wickedness, namely in order to create hatred and ill-will between the population and the host; for as soon as he had obtained his wish in all the wars, he wished the Franks to be all killed or taken out of the Empire.

CHAPTER CCXI.

How the noble En Berenguer de Entenza came to Romania with his Company and was made Grand Duke by Frey Roger.

THE Grand Duke refused to take this money. And whilst this quarrel was going on, En Berenguer de Entenza came to Romania and brought full three hundred horsemen and full a thousand almugavars. And when he came to Gallipoli, he found that the Grand Duke was at Constantinople, and he sent him two knights to ask what he wished him to do. And the Grand Duke sent to tell him to come to Constantinople. And when he came to Constantinople, the Emperor received him very well, and the Grand Duke received him still better. And when he had been there a day, the Grand Duke went to the Emperor and said to him:—"Lord, this rich hom is one of the greatest nobles of Spain below the rank of a king's son, and is one of the most accomplished knights of the world and is to me as a brother. And he has come to serve you, for your honour and for love of me, wherefore I must give him a notable satisfaction, and so, by your leave, I shall give him the baton and cap of Grand Duke, and henceforth let him be Grand Duke." And the Emperor said he was content, and when he saw the generosity of the Grand Duke, that he was ready to divest himself of the office of Grand Duke, he said to himself that his generosity should be of benefit to him.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And so next day, before the Emperor and a full court, the Grand Duke took off his Grand Duke's cap and put it on the head of En Berenguer de Entenza, and then gave him the baton and the seal and the banner of the office. At which everyone marvelled.

CHAPTER CCXII.

How at the end of four hundred years during which the Empire had been without a Cæsar Frey Roger was made Cæsar by the Emperor of Constantinople and how he wintered at Gallipoli and by agreement passed into Anatolia.

AND as soon as he had done this, the Emperor, in the presence of all, made Frey Roger sit down before him and gave him the baton and the cap and the banner and the seal of the Empire, and invested him with the robes belonging to the office and made him Cæsar of the Empire. And a Cæsar is an officer who sits in a chair near that of the Emperor, only half a palm lower, and he can do as much as the Emperor in the Empire. He can bestow gifts in perpetuity and can dispose of the treasure, impose tributes, and he can apply the question and hang and quarter; and, finally, all the Emperor can do, he can do also. And again, he signs "Cæsar of Our Empire" and the Emperor writes to him "Cæsar of Thy Empire." What shall I tell you? There is no difference between the Emperor and the Cæsar, except that the chair is half a palm lower than that of the Emperor and the Emperor wears a scarlet cap and all his robes are scarlet, and the Cæsar wears a blue cap and all his robes are blue with a narrow gold border. And so Frey Roger was created Cæsar, and it happens that, for four hundred years, there had been no Cæsar

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

in the Empire of Constantinople,[1] wherefore the honour was all the greater. And when all this was done with great solemnity and with a great feast, En Berenguer de Entenza was thenceforth called Grand Duke and Frey Roger, Cæsar.

And, with great rejoicing, they returned to Gallipoli, to the Company, and the Cæsar brought with him my Lady his mother-in-law, and my Lady his wife and two brothers of his wife, of which the eldest was Emperor of Lantzaura. And when they came to Gallipoli they arranged to spend the winter there, for All Saints' day was already over. And with great cheerfulness the Cæsar spent the winter with my Lady his wife and my Lady his mother-in-law and with his brothers-in-law, and so did the Grand Duke.

And when it came to pass that they had celebrated the feast of the Nativity, the Cæsar went to Constantinople to arrange with the Emperor what they should do, for spring was approaching; but the Grand Duke remained at Gallipoli. And when the Cæsar was at Constantinople he arranged that he and the Grand Duke should pass into the Kingdom of Anatolia; and it was so settled between the Cæsar and the Emperor, that the Emperor would give him all the Kingdom of Anatolia and all the islands of Romania and that he should pass into Anatolia, and that he should distribute the cities and towns and castles among his vassals; and that each of them should give him a number of armed horse so that the Emperor need give no pay whatever. And so he prepared to go; and, from that hour, the Emperor was not bound to give

[1] The title was not as exalted as Muntaner thought. It was held in 1186 by Conrad de Montferrat, elder brother of Boniface, the leader of the expedition to Constantinople in 1203. "Cæsar, in the twelfth century a title next in rank below the Sebastocrator (the highest title given to a minister), had been given to several people at the same time. Under Alexius III (1195—1203) the highest offices were publicly sold. Moneychangers, ignorant men, and even Scythians were allowed to buy the title of Cæsar."—E. Pears: The Fall of Constantinople.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

pay to any of the Franks, but the Cæsar was to provide for them. However, the Emperor had first to give pay for six months, for so it had been settled in the covenant. And so the Cæsar took leave of the Emperor and the Emperor gave him that bad coin to pay his Company. And the Cæsar took it, for he reckoned that, as he was to pass into Anatolia, the displeasure of the people who remained in Romania would not injure him. And so, with this money, he came to Gallipoli and began to distribute the pay with it and with it every man paid his host.

CHAPTER CCXIII.

How the Cæsar resolved to go and take leave of Skyr Miqueli, in spite of his mother-in-law and of his wife who were sure of the envy Skyr Miqueli felt towards him.

AND whilst this pay was being distributed, the Cæsar said to my Lady his mother-in-law and my Lady his wife that he wished to go and take leave of Skyr Miqueli, eldest son of the Emperor. And his mother-in-law and his wife told him not to go there on any account; for they knew he was very hostile to him and was so envious that, assuredly, if the Cæsar went to a place where Skyr Miqueli had the greater power, he would destroy him with all who should come with him. But in the end the Cæsar said that nothing would prevent him from going, that it would be a great disgrace for him to depart from Romania and go to the Kingdom of Anatolia with the intention of remaining to fight the Turks and not to take leave, and it would be taken in bad part. What shall I tell you? His mother-in-law and his wife and his brothers-in-law were so afflicted, that they assembled all the council of the host and made them tell him on no

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

account to go on that journey. But they spoke in vain, for nothing would make him refrain from going. When his mother-in-law and his wife and his brothers-in-law saw that he would not refrain from it on any account, they told him to give them four galleys for they wished to go to Constantinople. And the Cæsar called the admiral, En Ferran de Ahones, and told him to take his mother-in-law and his wife and his brothers-in-law to Constantinople. And the wife of the Cæsar did not pass into Anatolia with him, as she was seven months gone in pregnancy and her mother wished her to lie in at Constantinople. And it was ordained that when the lady had been delivered, she should go with ten galleys, to where the Cæsar would be. And so the lady stayed at Constantinople and in due time had a beautiful son who was still alive when I began this book.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the lady and her son and must turn to speak to you of the Cæsar.

CHAPTER CCXIV.

In which is recounted what sort of country Gallipoli is and what forces are there; and mention is made also of Paris and Arena.

It is the truth, as I have told you already, that the host was at Gallipoli and in the other places; and, of the peninsula of Gallipoli, I wish you to know that it is the peninsula of the Kingdom of Macedonia of which Alexander was lord, and where he was born. And so Gallipoli is the capital on the seashore of the said Kingdom of Macedonia, as Barcelona is the capital of Catalonia on the seashore, and Lérida inland. And so likewise, inland there is another very important city called Adrianople, and it is five journeys from Gallipoli to Adrianople.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And Skyr Miqueli, eldest son of the Emperor, was at Adrianople. And, again, I wish you to know that the peninsula of Gallipoli is to the West of Boca Daner and on the other side, on the East, is Cape Artaqui where the Grand Duke had wintered the previous year with the host.

And this place, Artaqui, which was part of the city of Troy and one of its gates, was a port in the middle of Boca Daner, in which there is a very beautiful castle called Paris, which Paris, son of King Priam, had had built when he had taken Arena, the wife of the Duke of Athens, by force of arms, in the island of Tenedos, which is five miles distant from Boca Daner. And in this island of Tenedos there was, at that time, an idol, and in a certain month of the year all the important men and ladies of Romania went there on a pilgrimage. And so it happened that, at that time, Arena, wife of the Duke of Athens, came there on a pilgrimage, accompanied by a hundred knights; and Paris, son of King Priam of Troy, likewise had come on a pilgrimage, and had with him about forty knights. And he saw the Lady Arena, and became so enamoured of her that he said to his men that he must have her and take her away with him. And as he had set his heart on doing, so it was done. He and all his company put on their armour and captured the lady and he wanted to take her with him. And those knights who were with her, wished to defend her against him, but, in the end, all the hundred died and Paris took away the lady with him. Afterwards there ensued a great war; and in the end the city of Troy which has a circuit of three hundred miles, was besieged for thirteen years and then was invaded and taken and destroyed.

And beyond the Cape of Boca Daner there is another, called Cape Adramyti which was another gate of the city of Troy. And so you see why Boca Daner is surrounded

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

by good and fertile places in all parts. You will find that, on each side, there was a very fine town and a very strong castle at the time we went there. All has been destroyed and ruined by us, as you will hear further on, to the great hurt of the Emperor, but to our great advantage.

CHAPTER CCXV.

How the Cæsar came to the city of Adrianople to take leave of Skyr Miqueli, who had him and all his retinue killed by Gircon, chief of the Alans; not more than three escaped; and how he sent men to Gallipoli to raid the country and to destroy the Company of the Cæsar.

Now I shall turn to speak to you of the Cæsar, who fitted himself out with three hundred horsemen and a thousand men afoot to go to Adrianople to see Skyr Miqueli, eldest son of the Emperor, in spite of all his friends and vassals. And this he did from the great loyalty of his heart and great love and fidelity towards the Emperor and his son. And he thought that, as he was full of all loyalty, so the Emperor and his sons were also; but it was quite the contrary and this will be proved further on, as you shall hear.

And when the Cæsar parted from the host he left, as head and chief, the Grand Duke En Berenguer de Entenza and En Berenguer de Rocafort as seneschal of the host. And so, by his journeys, he came to the city of Adrianople, and the son of the Emperor, Skyr Miqueli, issued forth to meet him and received him with great honours; and this the wicked man did in order to see with what company he was coming. And when he had entered Adrianople, the son of the Emperor stayed with him, amidst great joy and cheer which the Cæsar made for him, and Skyr Miqueli made the same for him. And when he had

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

stayed with him six days, on the seventh, Skyr Miqueli made the same for him. And when he had stayed with him six days, on the seventh, Skyr Miqueli summoned Gircon to Adrianople, the chief of the Alans, and Melech, chief of the Turcopoles,[1] so that they were altogether nine thousand horsemen. And on that day he invited the Cæsar to a banquet. And when they had eaten, this Gircon, chief of the Alans, entered the palace in which Skyr Miqueli and his wife and the Cæsar were; and they drew their swords and massacred the Cæsar and all who were with him; and then, throughout the city, they killed all who had come with the Cæsar; not more than three escaped who went up into a bell tower. And of these three, one was En Ramon, son of En Gilabert Alquer, a knight of Catalonia, a native of Castellon de Ampurias; and the other, a son of a Catalonian knight, called G. de Tous, and the other Berenguer de Roudor, who was from Llobregat. And these were attacked in the bell tower and defended themselves so well that the son of the Emperor said it would be a sin if they were killed; and so he gave them a safe-conduct, and they alone escaped.

Again, the said Skyr Miqueli committed a greater crime, for he had arranged to send the Turcopoles with a part of the Alans to Gallipoli; and he ordained that, on the day the Cæsar was killed, they should sack Gallipoli and all the manors. And we had put the horses to grass and the people were at the manors. What shall I tell you? They found us thus off our guard and took all the horses we had at the manors and killed over a thousand people, so that there did not remain to us more than two hundred and six horses and not more than three thousand three hundred and seven men of arms, between horse and foot, seamen and landsmen.

[1] The Turks' prisoners of war trained as soldiers.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And, at once, they laid their siege and so many came upon us, there were full fourteen thousand horsemen, between Turcopoles, Alans and Greeks, and full thirty thousand men afoot. The Grand Duke, namely En Berenguer de Entenza, ordered that we should make a fosse and enclose with it all the raval of Gallipoli, and so we did. What shall I tell you? Full fifteen days did we stay there, and twice every day we had hand-to-hand fights with them, and every day it was our misfortune to be the losers. What shall I tell you? Whilst we were thus besieged, En Berenguer de Entenza had five galleys and two lenys equipped and, in spite of all who were there, he said he wished to go and make a raid, in order to get in refreshment of victuals, and money for the Company. And all said to him that this should not be done, but that it was better that we should all remain together to fight those who were holding us besieged. And he, expert and wise knight as he was, saw the risk of the battle and would on no account agree to it; but thought he would make a raid in the direction of Constantinople, and when he had made this raid he would return at once to Gallipoli. So in the end it had to be done as he wished and so many embarked with him that there only remained in Gallipoli, En Berenguer de Rocafort, who was seneschal of the host, and I, R. Muntaner, who was commander in Gallipoli. And no more than five knights remained with us, namely En G. Sischar, a knight of Catalonia, and En Ferran Gordi, a knight of Aragon, and En Juan Peris de Caldes of Catalonia and En Ximeno de Albero. And we passed in review how many we were when En Berenguer de Entenza had departed from Gallipoli, and we found there were, between horse and foot, one thousand four hundred and sixty-two men of arms, of which two hundred and six were mounted, for we had no more horses, and a thousand two hundred and fifty-six men afoot. And so we remained full of trouble for, every day, we had

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

hand-to-hand fights with those outside from morning till vesper-time.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of us at Gallipoli, for I shall know well how to return to it, and I must speak to you of En Berenguer de Entenza who went to take the city of Eregli, which is twenty-four miles distant from Constantinople, and there made so much gain, it was infinite. And this city is the one in which Herod was, who had some of the Babes killed. And I must recount to you a manifest miracle. Namely, at that place, Eregli, there is a bay which reaches to the island of Marmara, where all the marble of Romania is quarried. And in that bay are two fine cities, one called Panido and the other Rodosto. And you must know that in that city of Rodosto the greatest crime was committed against us that has ever been committed against anyone. And in order that you should know what the crime was I will tell it you.

CHAPTER CCXVI.

How the Company of the Cæsar resolved to defy the Emperor and impeach him for bad faith and for what he had done; and how the Emperor of Constantinople had En Ferran de Ahones, the admiral, killed with all the Catalans and Aragonese who were at Constantinople.

It is the truth that when the Cæsar was dead, and they had attacked us and held us besieged in Gallipoli, we agreed that, before doing any hurt to the Emperor, we would defy him and impeach him for bad faith and for what he had done to us; and that this impeachment, and then the challenge, be made at Constantinople, in the presence of the Commune of Venice and with all public letters. And it was ordained that En Sischar,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

knight, and En Pedro Lopis, an adalil, and two commanders and two boatswains should go there with a barge of twenty oars, in the name of En Berenguer de Entenza and of all the Company. And so it was done and they went to Constantinople. And in the presence of the aforesaid Commune they defied the Emperor and then impeached him for bad faith and offered to fight ten against ten or a hundred against a hundred, for they were ready to prove that he had wickedly and treacherously had the Cæsar and all the other people with him killed, and had attacked the Company without defying it, and his good name was stained by this, and henceforth they disowned him. And of this they made public letters, divided by A.B.C. One half they took with them and left the other half in trust with the aforesaid Commune. But the Emperor made the excuse that he had not done it. See how he could make excuses; and the same day he had all the Catalans and Aragonese who were at Constantinople with En Ferran de Ahones, Admiral, killed.

CHAPTER CCXVII.

How the messengers sent to the Emperor to defy him were taken prisoners and massacred in the city of Rodosto; and of the miracle of the Bay of Marmara, where a great number of Babes have been killed by Herod.

AND when this was done, they parted from the Emperor and asked him to give them a guide to guide them until they were at Gallipoli; and so he gave them the guide. And when they came to the city of Rodosto, the guide caused them all to be taken, twenty-seven persons they were, Catalans and Aragonese; and they cut them all into quarters in the shambles and the quarters were

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

hung up. And you can imagine what cruelty that was which the Emperor had had done to these who had been messengers. But take heart, for you shall hear further on that, of this, such vengeance was taken by the Company, with the help of God, that no such vengeance had ever been taken before.

In that gulf occurs the miracle that you will always find in it streaks of blood, the size of a boat's deck; some are larger, some smaller. And this gulf is always full of these streaks of fresh blood, but when you are outside this gulf you will find none. And the mariners gather up of this blood and carry it with them from one end of the world to the other as reliques. And this is caused by the blood of the Babes which was shed in that place, and so, from that time onwards, it is there and will always be there. And this is the real truth, for I have gathered some up with my own hands.

CHAPTER CCXVIII.

How En Berenguer de Entenza after sacking Eregli met eighteen Genoese galleys, by whom he was taken prisoner owing to his trusting to their word; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, wanted to give ten thousand gold hyperpers in order that he should be delivered through me.

AND when En Berenguer de Entenza had sacked the city of Eregli, which was one of the great feats of the world, he returned with great gain. And so, as he was returning from Gallipoli, eighteen Genoese galleys were going to Constantinople and were about to enter the Greater Sea,[1] and met him off the shore between Planido and Cape Ganos. And En Berenguer de Entenza bade his followers arm, and running the prows of his galleys on shore,

[1] The Black Sea.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

remained with the sterns of the five galleys towards the sea. And the Genoese saluted him and then went to him in a barge to give him a safe-conduct. And the commander of the galleys invited him to dine in his galley and En Berenguer de Entenza, to his misfortune, trusted them and went to the galley of the commander. And whilst they were dining, and the retinue of En Berenguer de Entenza was disarmed, two galleys went and took the four galleys and took all the followers in them prisoners and killed over two hundred persons. But one galley, in which En Berenguer de Vilamari and other knights were, would not surrender. What shall I tell you? On this galley the fight was so great that there died full three hundred Genoese and they of the galley were killed, none escaped. And so, see what banquet Genoese knew how to make for En Berenguer de Entenza; they took him a prisoner to Constantinople, him and all of his followers who were alive; and they took all En Berenguer de Entenza had gained at Eregli. Wherefore all lords and other men are foolish who trust to any man of the Communes. A man who does not know what faith is, cannot keep it.

So they brought away En Berenguer de Entenza and all his people prisoners, and they treated him with great contumely at Pera, which is a Genoese town opposite Constantinople. And he stayed there four months, until the galleys had gone to the Great Sea and out again, and then they took him with them to Genoa, passing by Gallipoli. And I interviewed him and wanted to give ten thousand gold hyperpers, of which each is worth ten sueldos of Barcelona, in order that they should leave him to us, but they would not do it. And when we saw that we could not have him for any price, I gave him one thousand gold hyperpers, in order that he should have something to spend. And so they took him with them to Genoa.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And so I must cease to speak to you of En Berenguer de Entenza, for I shall know well how to return to him in due place and time and I shall turn to speak of ourselves who remained at Gallipoli.

CHAPTER CCXIX.

How, hearing of the taking of En Berenguer de Entenza and of the death of the messengers of Gallipoli, we assembled a council to consider what we should do, in which it was resolved to scuttle the galleys and all vessels so that no one could escape or flee without fighting.

It is the truth that when we knew that En Berenguer de Entenza was taken prisoner and that all who were with him were either killed or taken, we were much distressed, and so we were likewise when we knew the death of Sischar and the other messengers we had sent to the Emperor. And, one day, we assembled a council to discuss what we should do. And as I have told you already, we found that there were not left of us more than two hundred and six horse and twelve hundred and fifty-six foot. And the opinions we came to were two: some said that we should go, with all we possessed, to the island of Mitylene, which is a good and fertile island; and that we had still full four galleys and full twelve armed lenys and many barges and a ship, a two-decker, so that we could embark and be saved; and then from that island we should wage war upon the Emperor. And the other opinion was this, that it would be a great disgrace to us to have lost two lords and that so many worthy people should be killed through such great treachery without our avenging them, or dying like them; that there would be no people in the world who would not have the right to stone us, if we did not do so, especially as we were people of such renown, and as the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

right was on our side; and so it was better to die in honour than to live in dishonour. What shall I tell you? The end of the council was that we decided to fight and to undertake the war, and that every man should die who said otherwise. What shall I tell you? For greater assurance we decided to take at once two planks out of the bottom of each of the galleys and lenys and barges and of the ship, so that no one could reckon on being able to escape, and so that every one should prepare to do his best. And this was the end of the council. And so we went at once to scuttle all the vessels. And I had at once a great banner made of Saint Peter of Rome, to place on our tower; and I had a royal banner made of the Lord King of Aragon, and another of the King of Sicily, and another of Saint George; and these three we were to carry in battle and that of Saint Peter was to be put on the principal tower. And so, between that day and the next, they were made.

CHAPTER CCXX.

How the Company resolved to fight those Skyr Miqueli had sent against Gallipoli; and how the Company vanquished them and killed full twenty-six thousand horse and foot.

AND when Friday came, and the hour of vespers, twenty-three days before Saint Peter's day in June, we all assembled with our arms at the iron gate of the castle, and I made ten men go up the chief tower; and a mariner, by name En Berenguer de Ventayola, who was from Llobregat, sang the hymn of the blessed Saint Peter and all responded with tears in their eyes. And when he had sung the hymn, as the banner was being raised, a cloud came over us and covered us with water, as we were kneeling, and this lasted as long as the singing of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Salve Regina. And when this was done, the sky became again as clear as it had been before; and all had great joy at this. And we ordained that, at night, every one should confess and in the morning, at dawn, go to communion, and at sunset, when the enemy would be coming for a hand-to-hand fight, we should be ready to attack; and so we did.

And we entrusted the banner of the Lord King of Aragon to En Guillem Peris de Caldes, a knight of Catalonia, and the banner of the King of Sicily to En Ferran Gori, knight; and the banner of Saint George we entrusted to En Eximeno de Albero, and En Rocafort entrusted his banner to the son of a knight, called Guillem de Tous. And so we ordained our battle in this manner, that we formed no van nor centre nor rear, but put the horsemen on the left, and the foot soldiers we put on the right. And what we had ordained the enemy knew; and it is true that the enemy were in tents near us, on a mountain all ploughed ground, distant from us about two miles.

And when the morning came, which was Saturday, twenty-two days before the feast of Saint Peter in June, they came to the number of eight thousand horsemen, and we were ready for battle; and they left behind two thousand horsemen with the men afoot in the tents, for they were confident that victory was theirs already. And when the sun had risen, we were outside the intrenchments, all arrayed for the fight, ordained as I have told you already. And we had ordained that no man should move until the Bona Paraula had been said, which was said by Berenguer de Ventayola; and when it had been said, that the trumpets and nakers should sound and we should attack all together. And so it was done, and the enemy stood, lance on thigh, arrayed for the attack. And when the signals were made which were ordained, we attacked all together in the same

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

place, and we so penetrated amidst them that it seemed as if the whole castle was coming down. And they likewise attacked most vigorously. What shall I tell you? For their sin, and by our good right, they were defeated; and after the van was defeated, they all turned at once and we attacked in such manner that no man there raised his hand without hitting flesh, and so we came as far as the mountain on which their host was. And if ever you saw people come to meet their friends, with a good countenance, to help them, there you saw the host, horse and foot, do so; so that, at that point, we feared we should have much to do. But one voice arose amongst us, for we all cried, when we came to the foot of the mountain: "Up! at them! Aragon! Aragon! Saint George! Saint George!" And we took fresh courage and all went on to attack them vigorously; and so they were defeated and then we need do nothing more than hit. What shall I tell you? As long as it was daylight the pursuit lasted, for altogether twenty-four miles. The night was dark before we left them and we had to return in the night; and it was midnight before we were back in Gallipoli.

And next day we reviewed our company and we found that we had not lost more than one horseman and two afoot. And we searched the field. And, assuredly, we found that, altogether, we had killed full six hundred horsemen and over twenty thousand afoot. And this was the wrath of God upon them, for we certainly could not imagine that we had killed so many, rather we thought that they had suffocated each other. And so likewise many died in barges, of which there were many beached along the shore which were abandoned, and they launched them and then put in so many people that, when they were out at sea, they capsized and all were drowned, and thus many men were lost. What shall I tell you? The gain we made in this battle was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

so great that it could not be counted. We stayed there eight days searching the field; there was nothing more to do but to bring away the gold and silver these people carried on them, for all the belts of the horsemen and the swords and saddles and reins and all their armour were garnished with gold and silver, and all carried money, the men afoot the same; and so what was gained there was infinite. And so, likewise, we got there full three thousand horses alive, the rest were killed or were going about the battlefield trailing their entrails. And so we took so many horses that there were three for each man.

And when the field was being searched I had taken four Greeks to mercy, whom I found in a house, and they were poor men who had been at Gallipoli. And I told them I would treat them very well if they would be my spies. And they agreed with great joy and I dressed them very well in the Greek fashion and gave each of them one of our horses, which we had just taken, and they swore they would serve me well and loyally. And, at once, I sent two of them to Adrianople to see what the Emperor's son was doing, and the other two I sent to Constantinople. And, within a few days, those that had gone to the son of the Emperor returned, and said he was marching against us with seventeen thousand horse and full a hundred thousand foot, and that he had already left Adrianople.

CHAPTER CCXXI.

How the Company, hearing of the coming of Skyr Miqueli, eldest son of the Emperor of Constantinople, agreed to attack his van which they defeated; and how Skyr Miqueli escaped, wounded in the face by a dagger.

UPON this we all assembled in council and discussed what to do, and, in the end, the council said that God

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and the blessed monsenyer Saint Peter and Saint Paul and Saint George, who had given us this victory, would give us victory over that wicked man who had so treacherously killed the Cæsar; and so, that we should on no account tarry at Gallipoli; that Gallipoli was a strong place and we had made so much gain that our courage might weaken, and so that we should, on no account, allow ourselves to be besieged. And, again, that the son of the Emperor would not be able to come with the whole host assembled, rather it would suit him to form a van, and that we should meet the van and should attack it, and if we defeated it, all would be defeated. And as we could not mount to Heaven nor go down into the depths, nor go away by sea or land, therefore it followed that we had to pass through their hands, and so it was well that our courage should not be weakened by what we had gained nor by the force we saw before us.

And so we thought to march towards them and this was agreed. And we left a hundred men and the women in the castle and proceeded to go. And when we had been gone three journeys, as it came to please God, we slept at the foot of a mountain and, on the other side slept the enemy, and one side knew nothing of the other until it was midnight, when we saw a great light from the fires they had lit. And we sent two Greeks we had taken, as scouts, to bring back news and we learnt that the son of the Emperor was lodging there with six thousand horsemen and that, early in the morning, they would set out for Gallipoli; and that the rest of the host, for want of water, was about a league distant from them, but was coming. And the son of the Emperor was lying at a castle there was in that plain, called Apros, a very good and strong castle, with a large town. And we were very pleased when we knew there was a castle and a town, for we reckoned that the want of spirit of these

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

people was such that they would wait until we could reach the castle or town of Apros. And when dawn came we all confessed and went to Holy Communion, and we all armed ourselves in battle array to go up the mountain, which was ploughed land. And when we were on the top and it was day, they of the host saw us and thought we were coming to surrender at mercy to the son of the Emperor. But he thought this was no trifling matter; rather, he put on full armour, for he was an accomplished knight; he wanted nothing to be that but that he was not loyal. And so, finely arrayed himself, he came towards us with all that retinue, and we towards him. And when we came to the attack, a great many of our almugavars dismounted from their horses, for they were bolder on foot than on horseback; and we all proceeded to attack very vigorously, and they likewise. What shall I tell you? It pleased God that this van should be defeated as in the other battle, except the son of the Emperor, who, with about a hundred knights, went and fought amongst us, so that he wounded in one of his attacks, a mariner called Berenguer Ff.[1] who was on a valuable horse he had taken in the first battle and also wore very handsome breastplates, which he had obtained in the same way; but he carried no shield, because he did not know how to manage it on horseback. And the son of the Emperor thought that he was a man of great importance, and gave him a blow with his sword on the left arm and wounded him in the hand. And he, seeing himself wounded, and being a young man and spirited, went to close with him and, with a dagger he had, gave him full thirteen blows. With one he wounded him in the face and he was quite disfigured, and then he dropped his shield and fell from

[1] The MS. of Poblet, instead of Ff., by which 'fulano' ('so and so') may have been meant, has P. for "Pere," a surname very frequently found in Catalonia, the equivalent of Pérez in Castilian.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

his horse. And his men carried him out of the press which was great (and we did not know it was he) and put him into the castle of Apros. And then the battle was very hard until night. And God, Who does all things well, arranged in such manner that they were all discomfited round about the castle and all fled to it who could reach it. But, however many fled, yet there died of them over ten thousand horse and an infinity of men afoot; but of ours, not more than nine horse and twenty-seven foot were killed. And so, that night, we remained on the battle field, all in armour, and next day, when we thought they would give us battle again, we found none of them in the field. And we went to the castle and attacked it and were there full eight days. And we searched the field and took away with us full ten carts, each cart drawn by four buffaloes, and so much cattle that they covered the land. And we had made endless gain, much more than in the first battle.

And from that hour all Romania was conquered and we had so put fear into their hearts, that we could not shout "Franks" but they were at once prepared to flee. And so, with great rejoicing, we returned to Gallipoli. And then, every day, we made raids and raided as far as the gates of Constantinople. It happened one day that a mounted almugavar, called Perico de Naclara, had lost at play, and he and two sons he had, took their arms and with no other company, went to Constantinople on foot. And in a garden of the Emperor he found two Genoese merchants shooting quails; and he took them and brought them to Gallipoli and got three thousand gold hyperpers as ransom, and a hyperper is worth two sueldos of Barcelona. And such raids were made every day.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXII.

How the Company plundered the cities of Rodosto and of Panido, and how they did at Rodesto what had been done to their messengers; and how they removed to Rodosto and to Panido and how En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos came to succour them.

AND when this was over and the land had been raided every day, the Company decided to go and sack the town of Rodosto, where our messengers had been killed and quartered and the quarters placed in the shambles. And as they decided, so it was done. They went one morning at dawn and, to all the people they found in that city, men, women and children, they did what they had done to the messengers; for no man on earth would they have desisted. And it, assuredly, was a very cruel deed, nevertheless they wreaked this vengeance. And when they had done this, they went to take another city, which is half a league distant from the other and is called Panido. And when they had taken these two cities, they thought it well that they should all move into them with their wives and children and their mistresses, except I, who remained at Gallipoli with the seamen and with a hundred almugavars and fifty horsemen. And so they did, they removed to Panido and Rodosto because these towns were sixty miles from Constantinople.

And when the Company was thus settled, En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos (who had parted from the Grand Duke at Artaqui the first winter because of dissensions he had had with him, and had gone to the Duke of Athens who showed him much honour) knew that we had been thus victorious over our enemies; so, experienced knight as he was, thinking we should require a company, he came to us from the Morea in a galley and brought about eighty men, Catalans and Aragonese. And all were very pleased and we were all refreshed by it, and we all gave him so

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

much that he and his company were very well mounted, and we provided them well with all things, as we would have done for a thousand, if there had been a thousand.

CHAPTER CCXXIII.

How En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos raided up to near Constantinople and attacked the castle of Maditos at midday and took it; and how the Company divided into three parts.

AND when he was thus established he, one day, took about a hundred and fifty horse and about three hundred foot and made a raid as far as the city of Constantinople. And as he was returning from it, with a crowd of people and cattle he was bringing with him, the Emperor had sent full eight hundred horse and full a thousand foot to a pass by which he had to come. And En Ferran Ximeno, seeing them, preached to his followers and admonished them to do well; and, all together, they attacked. What shall I tell you? Between killed and prisoners they had over six hundred horse and over two thousand foot. And it was a very fine and gallant feat. And so he and his company gained so much in this raid that, with this gain, they went to besiege a castle which is at the entrance of Boca Daner and is called Maditos. And know that that siege was made with no more than eighty horse and two hundred afoot, and within were over seven hundred Greek men of arms. And, indeed the rich hom was more truly besieged than those within. All the bread they eat I sent them in barges from Gallipoli, and there are twenty-four miles from Gallipoli there; and so I had to send all the refreshment. And so he kept up the siege full eight months and shot day and night with catapults. And I had sent him ten rope ladders with grappling irons; and many times in the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

night they tried to scale the walls, but it could not be done.

I shall tell you the finest adventure which happened to him, the finest that ever happened. One day in July, when the afternoon was very hot, all they of the castle were resting, some sleeping in the shade, some talking. And so, as the afternoon was so hot that all the world was baking in the heat, whoever may have slept, En Ferran Ximeno was watching, as one who had a great load on his shoulders. And he looked towards the wall and heard noone talking there, nor did anyone appear. And he approached the wall and pretended to set up scaling ladders and noone appeared. And then he returned to the tents and made every man get ready noiselessly. And he took a hundred young and spirited men and they approached the wall with the ladders and raised them to the top of the wall, and then mounted, five men on each ladder, one behind the other. And they all, noiselessly, went up the wall; they were not heard. Then others went up, so that there were full sixty. And they seized the three towers. And En Ferran Ximeno came to the gate of the castle with all the rest of the people with axes, to break in the door. And so, when the first men were killing the men of the wall and the cry of alarm was raised within, all ran to the wall, and the others broke in the door. And it happened thus: when those sixty men were up on the wall, they threw themselves on those of the wall whō were asleep, and all ran to succour these, and En Ferran Ximeno was at the door and broke it in and met noone to resist him. And when the doors were open, they entered to kill and destroy all they met. And so they took the castle; and so much coin was taken that, from that hour, En Ferran Ximeno and his company never were in want, rather they were all rich. And so you may well understand the finest adventure that you have ever heard

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

related, that, at midday, a castle was scaled which had been besieged for eight months.

And when all this was over, all the Company was divided into three parts, one behind the other, namely En Ferran Ximeno at Maditos and I, Ramon Muntaner at Gallipoli with all the seamen and others. Gallipoli was the chief of all and all came there who wanted clothes or armour or other things, and it was a city where they found all they wanted; and all merchants of whatever condition lived there or came there. And Rocafort was at Rodosto and Panido with all the rest of the Company, and we were all rich and well to do. We sowed nothing nor ploughed nor dug over the vineyards nor pruned the vines, but took, every year, as much wine as we wanted and as much wheat and oats.

So we lived five years on aftercrops, and the most wonderful raids were made man could ever imagine. If one wanted to tell them all to you he could never write enough.

CHAPTER CCXXIV.

How Sir George de Cristopol of the Kingdom of Salonica made a raid on Gallipoli with eighty horsemen whom I, Ramon Muntaner, defeated with fourteen horsemen.

It is the truth that there was a baron in the Kingdom of Salonica, called Sir George de Cristopol, who came from the Kingdom of Salonica to Constantinople, to the Emperor. And when he came to the district of Gallipoli he said to his company, which consisted of about eighty horsemen well apparelled and well mounted, that, as they were there, near Gallipoli, he wished to raid it; that he knew there were no horsemen there and hardly any men afoot, and so they would capture the pack-mules and the carts which are sent out for wood; all held this

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

for good. And so at the hour of tierce[1] they came to Gallipoli. And I used to send daily two carts and two mules for wood, and with them went a squire who lived with me, a mounted cross-bowman called Marcho. And when they came to the place where they were to get the wood, these others went at them. But the squire, seeing them, commanded four men he had with him to go up a tower without any doors which was there, to defend themselves with stones; and he would run to Gallipoli and they would soon have succour. And so they did. And the Greeks took the carts and mules at once, and the squire ran to Gallipoli and raised the alarm, and we issued forth. And, in truth, I had no more than six armed horse and eight light horse, for I had sent the rest of the horse company on a raid with En Rocafort. And these others came as far as our barriers and we all, horse and foot, collected together and they did also. And as we had done in the other battles, we proceeded to attack them all together, horse and foot. So it pleased Our Lord the true God that we should vanquish them, and we took thirty-seven horsemen, some killed and some prisoners, and the others we pursued as far as the tower where my four men were, who had been with the carts and mules; and we recovered these four men; then we let the enemy go and returned to Gallipoli. And next day we had an auction of the horses and of the prisoners and of what we had taken and we had, of the booty, twenty-eight gold hyperpers for each armed horse and fourteen for each light horse and seven for each foot soldier, so that everyone had his share.

And I have told you this fine adventure in order that you should all understand that it was due to nothing but the power of God, and that this was not done through our worth but by the virtue and grace of God.

[1] 9 a.m

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXV.

How En Rocafort went to harry Lestanayre and sacked and burnt all the ships and galleys and terides which were there; and how the Company resolved to fight the Alans and the lot fell to me, En Ramon Muntaner, to stop and guard Gallipoli.

AND whilst this was being done, En Rocafort had gone on a raid, full one day's journey, to a place which is on the Greater Sea, called Lestanayre, where all the ships and terides and galleys of Romania are made. And there were at Lestanayre over a hundred and fifty lenys, one with the other; and they burnt them all. And they took all that had been ours, and sacked all the town and the manors of that place. And they returned with a great booty and gained so much, it was infinite.

And then, a few days after, we all decided, En Rocafort, En Ferran Ximeno and I and the others, that all we had done was worth nothing if we did not go and fight the Alans who had killed the Cæsar. And in the end this was agreed and we at once set to work. And it was ordained that the Company, which was at Panido and Rodosto with their wives and children, should all return to Gallipoli with their wives and mistresses and children and all their property and leave them there, and that the banners be taken away from those towns. And so it was done; Gallipoli was the headquarters of all the host and I was at Gallipoli with all my household and all the clerks of the host. And I was commander of Gallipoli and when the host was there, all had to be subject to my jurisdiction, from the greatest to the least. And I was chancellor and comptroller of the host. And the clerks, all those of the host, were always with me, so that no one but I knew at any time how many we were in the host. And I had it set down in writing how much everyone took, armed or light horse, and the same with the men afoot, so that, from my book, they knew how to

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

divide the booty of the raids, and of that I had a fifth, from sea or land. And, again, I had the seal of the Company for, as soon as the Cæsar had been killed and En Berenguer de Entenza had been taken prisoner, the Company had a great seal made, on which was the blessed Saint George, and the words were these :—" Seal of the Host of the Franks who are ruling the Kingdom of Macedonia." And so Gallipoli was all the time the head-quarters of that company, namely for seven years that we held it after the Cæsar was dead. And five years we lived on aftercrops, for we never sowed or planted or dug over the land.

And when all the Company was at Gallipoli, the lot fell on me to remain and guard Gallipoli and the women and children and all belonging to the Company, and they left me two hundred men of arms afoot and twenty horsemen of my company. And it was ordained that they would give me a third of the fifth part of what they would gain, and the other third would be divided amongst those who remained with me, and the other third En Rocafort should have.

CHAPTER CCXXVI.

How the Company departed to fight the Alans and killed Gircon, their chief, and cut down their banners and killed his followers; and what happened to a knight of the Alans for delivering his wife out of the hands of the Company.

And so, with the favour of God, the host proceeded to issue forth out of Gallipoli and, altogether, it was full twelve journeys to where the Alans were, in the territory of the Emperor of Lantzaura. And if anyone asks me why the fifth was divided so that two hundred men who were to remain with me at Gallipoli should have a third,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

I tell you it was done because no one was found who wished to remain. What shall I tell you? In the night some of those who were to remain went away, so many, that there remained with me only a hundred and thirty-two men afoot, some being seamen, some almugavars, and seven horse who were of my household. To the others I was forced to give leave and they promised to give half of all the gain God would give them to those seven armed horsemen who remained with me. And so I remained, badly provided with men and well provided with women, for, altogether, there remained with me over two thousand women, one with another. So the host departed at a suitable hour and they went on their journeys until they entered the Empire of Lantzaura in a beautiful plain. And Gircon, chief of the Alans who, with his own hand, had killed the Cæsar at Adrianople, was there and had with him up to three thousand horse and up to six thousand foot. And all had their wives and children there, for the Alans live after the manner of the Tartars; they always march with all their belongings and never lodge in city or town or village. And when our men came near, they tarried one day without approaching them, to settle and arrange all about the battle. The Alans are held to be the best cavalry there is in the East. And when our men had rested one day they came, on the following day, to within one league of them, and then afterwards, rising very early, at dawn they were upon them and proceeded to attack amongst the tents. And the Alans had had news of them, but did not think they were so near. But full a thousand horse were ready at once. What shall I tell you? The battle was hard and lasted all day. And at the hour of midday their chief, Gircon, was killed and lost his head and his banners were cut down. They were soon defeated. What shall I tell you? Of all the Alans there did not escape, of horse or foot, three hundred

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

men; all died because they had not the heart to leave their wives and children.

But I must recount to you what happened to one of their knights who was bringing away his wife. He rode a good horse, and his wife another, and three horsemen of ours went after them. What shall I tell you about it? The lady's horse was getting tired and the knight was hitting him with the flat of his sword, but in the end our horsemen overtook the knight. And when he saw they were overtaking him and that he would lose the lady, he pushed on a little ahead, and the lady gave a great cry and he returned towards her and embraced and kissed her. And when he had done this, he struck her on the neck with his sword so that her head was cut off at one blow. And when he had done this, he turned towards our horsemen, who were already seizing the lady's horse, and gave a cut with his sword to one of them who was called G. de Bellver, which cut off his left arm at one stroke and he fell dead to the ground. And the other two, seeing this, rushed upon him, and he upon them, and one of them, an adalil, was called A. Miro and was a good man of arms, and the other was called Berenguer de Ventayola. What shall I tell you? I must tell you that he would not leave the lady's side, so that they cut him all to pieces. See how valiant the knight was; he had killed G. de Bellver and badly wounded the two others.

And so you can see how he died, like a good knight, and that he had done what he did to his own great sorrow. And so the greater part of the Alans died for the same reason; and, as I have told you already, not three hundred men of arms escaped, for all were killed. And our men took the women and the children and all they had and the cattle and the riding beasts. And they reviewed how many they had lost, horse and foot, and found there were forty-four men killed and many wounded.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And so, with great gain, they returned very joyous at the great vengeance they had taken for the death of the Cæsar. And so they started on their way and, at their ease, returned to Gallipoli.

CHAPTER CCXXVII.

Recounts the treaty Sir Antonio Spinola made with the Emperor of Constantinople; and how he defied the Company in the name of the whole Commune of Genoa and came to besiege Gallipoli where he was killed and his men were defeated.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of them who are returning and have had plenty of toil and trouble, and must turn to speak to you of ourselves, who remained at Gallipoli and have not had any less trouble than they. When the Company had departed from Gallipoli to march against the Alans the Emperor heard of it. And it happened that, at that time, eighteen Genoese galleys, of which Sir Antonio Spinola was commander, had come from Genoa to Constantinople, to take the youngest son of the Emperor to Lombardy to be made Marquis of Monferrat.[1] The said Sir Antonio Spinola told the Emperor that, if he would let his son, the Marquis, have to wife the daughter of micer Apicino Spinola, he would wage war for him against the Franks of Romania. And the Emperor said he was content.

And upon this Sir Antonio came to Gallipoli with two galleys and defied us in the name of the Commune of Genoa. And the challenge was this: that he commanded and told us, in the name of the Commune of Genoa, to get out of their garden, namely the Empire of Constantinople, which was the garden of the Commune of Genoa; otherwise if we did not get out, that he defied

[1] Demetrius, third son of Andronicus II and the Empress Irene.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

us in the name of the Commune of Genoa and of all the Genoese in the world. And I answered him that we did not accept their challenge; that we knew that the Commune had been and was the friend of the House of Aragon and Sicily and Mallorca and so, that there was no reason that they should send this challenge, nor that we should accept it. And so he had a public letter made of what he had said, and I of what I had answered for all the Company. And then, a second time, he returned to this same thing, and I answered the same, and more letters were made of it. And then, a third time, he returned to it, and I answered that he was wrong in persisting in these challenges, and that I had come to Romania in the name of God and to exalt the Holy Catholic Faith, and that he should cease from these challenges; rather, I required him, in the name of the Holy Apostolic Father, whose banner we had, as he could see, to join us against the Emperor and his followers, who were schismatics and very treacherously had killed our chiefs and our brothers when we came to serve them against the infidels; and so we required him, in the name of the Holy Father and of the King of Aragon and of the King of Sicily, to help us to take this vengeance; and that if they did not wish to help us, that they should not hinder us. Otherwise, if he did not revoke his challenges, I protested in the name of God and of the Holy Catholic Faith, that upon him who had made these challenges and upon all those who had been favourable to them, would be the blood that would be shed between us and them through this challenge; and that it would leave us free from sin or guilt, and that God and the world could see that we had been forced to accept it and must defend ourselves. And I had all this put in a public document; but he held to his challenge. And this he did because he had given the Emperor to understand that, as soon as he had sent us the challenge of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Commune we would not dare to remain in Romania. But he did not know our heart; we had resolved not to leave until we had taken full vengeance.

And so he returned to Constantinople and told the Emperor what he had done, and also told him that he would at once take the castle and me and all that were there. And he, at once, had his eighteen galleys assembled, and seven belonging to the Emperor, of which En Andriol Murisch,[1] a Genoese, was admiral; and they took the son of the Emperor with them to bring him to the marquisate. And they came upon us before Gallipoli, with all the twenty-five galleys, one Saturday at vesper time. And all that day and night, they prepared ladders and arms to attack Gallipoli, knowing that the Company was far from us and that we had been left with but few men of arms. And as they ordained their battles for the next day, I ordained my defence all night. And the defence was ordained thus: I made all the women who were there put on armour—for of armour there was plenty—and ordered them to the walls, and over each division of the wall I ordered a merchant of those Catalan merchants who were there, to be the commander of the women. And I ordered half-casks and bowls of well-tempered wine and much bread in every street, and who liked might eat and drink, for I knew well that the forces outside were so great, they would not let us eat indoors. And then I ordered that every man should have good cuirasses on, for I knew that the Genoese were well provided with sharp arrows and would shoot off many. They have a fashion of shooting ceaselessly and they shoot more quarrels in one battle than Catalans would shoot in ten. And so I made every man put on armour and had the posterns of the barbacana[2] left open (for

[1] ?Andreolo Morisco.

[2] The Spanish barbacana was a second, lower, outside wall; not, like the English barbican, the fortified entrance of a castle or of a town.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

all the barbacanas were stockaded) in order that I might hasten to where it was most necessary. And I also ordered physicians to be ready to assist when any man was wounded, so that he could return to the battle at once. And when I had ordained all this, where every one should be and what he should do, I went here and there with twenty men, where I saw it was most needed.

And day broke and the galleys approached in order to run ashore. And I, on a good horse I had and with a third of my knights in coats of mail and perpunt,[1] fought the palomers[2] until the hour of tierce to prevent their beaching the galleys. But in the end, ten galleys were beached, a long way off, and just then my horse fell; at last one of my squires came my way and gave me his horse; but, however much I hastened, the horse which had fallen and I got thirteen wounds between us. Nevertheless, when I had mounted the other horse, I put up the squire behind me, and so we went up to the castle, with five wounds I had, which I felt but little except one, a sword cut along my foot; this and the others I made them dress at once. But I had lost that horse.

And when they of the galleys saw I had fallen, they cried: "The commander is killed! at them! at them!" And then they landed all together, and they had ordained their battle very wisely. Out of each galley issued one banner with half the crew; and it was so ordained that, if any man of those who went to the battle was hungry or thirsty or was wounded, he should return to the galleys. If he was a cross-bowman, another cross-bowman should come out and if he was a pikeman, another pikeman. So those who fought in the battle would not be

---

[1] "Perpunt or pourpoint. The pourpoint originated in France. . . It occurs as early as the XIIth century and was called also counterpoint. The military, temp. Henry III and Edward I, are almost always depicted in it. It consisted of padded work, but more neatly wrought than gamboised."—Fosbrook: 'Encyclopædia of Antiquities.'

[2] Seamen of the topmast.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

diminished in numbers, either for going to eat or for any other reason; rather, they would be fighting in full numbers. And they issued forth thus ordained and every man prepared to fight where it was ordained, and the crews fought also, and they proceeded to attack very vigorously and we to defend ourselves. And they shot so many quarrels that they almost hid the sky from men's sight. And this shooting lasted until the hour of nones so that the castle was full of quarrrels. What shall I tell? No one of us outside was wounded. A cook of mine was in the kitchen, cooking fowls for the wounded, when a bolt came down the chimney and entered his thigh, full two fingers deep. What should I tell you about it? The battle was very hard, and our women defended the barbacana, with stones and pieces of rock which I had had placed on the wall, in so masterly a manner, it was marvellous. Indeed a woman was found there who had five wounds in her face from quarrels and still continued the defence as if she had no hurt. And so this fight lasted until the morning hour.

And when the morning hour came the aforementioned commander, called Antonio Spinola, who had made the challenges, said: "Oh, you despicable people, what is this? Three miserable people inside can defend themselves against you? You are most despicable." And then he got ready with four hundred men of old families who were there, who were all of the best families of Genoa, and with five banners he prepared to issue from the galleys. And I was told at once and went up on the wall and saw them come and, at once, had the armour put on my horse and on the other six horses I had. And when we were well arrayed and apparelled so that nothing was wanting, I summoned a hundred men of the best in the castle, and made them all take off their armour, as it was very hot, for it was the middle of July, and I saw the quarrels had stopped, none were being shot,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

they had all been used; and I made them all get ready, in their shirts and breeches, each man with a shield, and with a lance in his hand, and with girded sword and a dagger. And when the commander, namely Antonio Spinola, with all these good men with the five banners had come to the iron gate of the castle and had been attacking it vigorously for a long while, so that the greater number had their tongues hanging out with thirst and the heat, I commended myself to God and to Our Lady Saint Mary and I had the gate opened and with the six armed horses and with the men afoot who had come thus lightly equipped, we attacked the banners. At the first blow we cut down four. And they, seeing us attack thus vigorously, horse as well as foot, saw they were defeated, so that they soon turned their backs to us. What should I tell you about it? Antonio Spinola had his head cut off in the place in which he had made the challenges, and with him all the noblemen who had come out with him, so that altogether over six hundred Genoese were killed there. And I tell you that our men mounted the ladders of the galleys mingled with the enemy, so that, in truth, if only we had had a hundred fresh men for the galleys, we should have captured more than four. But we were all wounded and exhausted and so, unfortunately, we let them go.

And when all were collected (of whom some were drowned, for there were plenty who, on assembling, fell into the sea), there came a message to me, that about forty had remained on a hill. And I hurried there and the captain of these was the strongest man of Genoa, Antonio Bocanegra. What shall I tell you? All his companions were killed, but he had a bordon sword in his hand, and made such thrusts that no one dared go near him. And I, seeing him do so great a thing, commanded that no one should hit him and told him to surrender and begged him to do so many times; but

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

he would not on any account. And I then commanded one of my squires, who was on an armed horse, to rush at him, and he did this willingly and gave him such a knock with the horse's chest, that he threw him to the ground, and then he was cut into more than a hundred pieces.

And so the Genoese galleys, defeated, and with so great a loss of men, went to Genoa with the Marquis; and they of the Emperor went to Constantinople, and they had had this ill success, but we remained cheerful and content.

And next day the Company heard that I was besieged, and those who were well mounted hurried on; in one night and one day they went more than three journeys, so that on the following day, at vespers, more than eighty horsemen had joined us. And then, after two days, the whole host came and found us all disfigured and wounded. And they were all much displeased that they had not been present; nevertheless we all rejoiced with each other, and we made processions to render thanks to God for the victory He had given us. And they gave us all a fair part of what they had gained, so that we all then, by the mercy of God, were abundantly rich.

CHAPTER CCXXVIII.

How the Turk, Ximelich, wished to join the Company with eighty horsemen and how the said Company was increased by eighteen hundred Turkish horsemen.

WHEN all this was done the Turks we had cast out of Anatolia heard of the death of the Cæsar and of the captivity of En Berenguer de Entenza; but also of the victories God had given us who were so few in number. They returned to Anatolia and conquered all

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the cities and towns and castles of the Greeks, and oppressed them much more than at the time we went there. Behold what came of the wicked deeds of the Emperor and of the treachery against us; all Anatolia, which had been restored, was lost by it; the Turks took it and we were devastating all Romania. Except the cities of Constantinople and Adrianople and Christopolis[1] and Salonica, there was not a town or city that was not pillaged and burnt by us, nor any place, unless it was a castle in the mountains.

There came a Turkish captain to Gallipoli, called Ximelich,[2] and asked for a parley and said, if it were our pleasure, he wished to pass into Gallipoli to speak to us. And I sent him an armed leny and so he came with ten knights who were kinsmen of his, and he came before En Rocafort and En Ferran Ximeno and myself and said he was ready to pass over to us with his company and with his wife and children; that he would render oath and homage to us, that he would be as a brother to us, he and all his company; and that he would support us against all the peoples of the world; and they would put their wives and children under our power; and they wished to be in all and for all under our command, like the least of the company; and that they would give us the fifth of all they would gain. And of this we had advice and council of all the Company, and all thought it well that we should receive them. With that we received this Ximelich, who passed over to us with eight hundred horse and two thousand foot. And if ever people were obedient to a lord, they were to us; and if ever men were loyal and true, they were to us always, and they were very expert men of arms and experienced in all affairs. And so they stayed with us like brothers

[1] Neapolis of the Acts of the Apostles.
[2] Buchon calls him Isaac Melech. It will be remembered that the Arabs called Richard Cœur de Lion Melech Ric.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and they always remained near us forming a host by themselves.

And so, when these had come to us, there had only remained to the Emperor a thousand Turkish horsemen who were soldiers of his, and they used to be full four thousand horsemen; but in the first battle we killed full three thousand and so there remained to him that thousand, who also put themselves under our power with their wives and children, as the other Turks had done. And they likewise were good and always loyal and obedient to us. And so we had increased by eighteen hundred Turkish horsemen and had killed and taken away from the Emperor all the soldiers he had.

And so we lorded it over all the land and we raided the Empire at our ease; for when the Turks and the Turcopoles went on forays, those of our men who wished went also, and much honour was shown them, and they did in such wise that they always came back with twice as much booty as the others. And so it could never be found that there was any strife between us and them.

CHAPTER CCXXIX.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon delivered En Berenguer de Entenza out of prison, who went to the Pope and to the King of France to beg them for assistance; and how, it being denied him, he passed into Gallipoli; and of the discord there was between him and En Rocafort.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of us and must speak to you of En Berenguer de Entenza whom the Genoese took with them to Genoa. But, in the end, the Lord King of Aragon took him out of prison and when he was out of prison, the rich hom went to the Pope and to the King of France, to arrange that the Company should

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

get succours from them. But much might he labour; I do not believe that the Pope nor the House of France wished that all the infidels of the world should be conquered by the followers of the Lord King of Aragon; and so both denied him succours. And as the Pope said no to the King of Aragon when he was at Collo, you can see whether they wished the House of Aragon to be much advanced by their succours. And so the rich hom, not being able to obtain help from the Pope nor from the House of France, returned to Catalonia and mortgaged and sold a great portion of his lands, and hired a ship of En P. Saolivela of Barcelona; and he put in it, between men of birth and others, full five hundred good men and went to Romania.

And when he came to Gallipoli I received him very splendidly, as one whom I should consider as my captain and chief. But En Rocafort would not accept him as captain and chief, rather he thought he himself was and ought to be captain. And so this strife was great between the two. But I and those twelve counsellors of the host pacified them, so that we all were like brothers; and if En Berenguer de Entenza wished to go on a foray on his own account, anyone who liked could accompany him, and so it was also with En Rocafort, and with En Ferran Ximeno likewise. But En Rocafort, being very expert, so attracted the almugavars that they all looked up to him, and the Turks and Turcopoles did also, because they had come at a time when En Rocafort was the greatest and the most accomplished knight of the host; thenceforward they acknowledged no other lord. And in order to negotiate peace and concord between them, I suffered much toil and trouble and many dangers, because I had to go from one to the other, and always had to pass by castles of the enemy on our borders. What shall I tell you? En Rocafort, with the Turks and the greater part of the almugavars, went to besiege

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the city of Nona which was sixty miles distant from Gallipoli. And En Berenguer de Entenza went to besiege a castle called Megarix, which was half-way on the road between Gallipoli and the castle besieged by En Rocafort. And all the time En Ferran Ximeno, with all the Aragonese who were in the host and a part of the Catalan seamen, held with En Berenguer de Entenza. And so each conducted his siege and each had catapults with which he assailed the places he was holding besieged.

CHAPTER CCXXX.

How the Most High Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca came to Gallipoli in Romania where the Company was, under assured covenants with the Lord King Fadrique, King of Sicily; and how he was accepted and fealty was sworn to him as their chief and lord except by Rocafort and his company who wished to take the oath to him personally and not for the King of Sicily.

And things being thus, there came to Romania the Lord Infante En Ferrando, son of the Lord King of Mallorca, with four galleys. He came in the name of the Lord King En Fadrique, King of Sicily, who sent him with this covenant between them, that the Lord Infante could not take the command of the Company, neither of cities nor towns nor castles nor other places, except for the Lord King of Sicily. And again, that he could not marry in Romania without the consent and knowledge of the Lord King of Sicily. And of this covenant En Rocafort had letters of the King of Sicily, and I had one, and in all the host there was no other man who knew about this. And so the Lord Infante came to Gallipoli, and brought a letter to En Berenguer de Entenza and to En Ferran Ximeno and to En Rocafort and to me on

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the part of the Lord King of Sicily, bidding us receive the Lord Infante as Lord as if it were himself, and he sent a similar letter to all the community of the Company. I accepted, and made all who were in Gallipoli accept, the said Lord Infante as head and chief in the name of the said Lord King of Sicily, and gave up the whole of my house to him, and at once bought fifty horses and pack-mules for him, as many as he needed, and all he required for setting out I gave him, tents and harness of all sorts that are required by such a lord on a march. And I at once sent two men on horseback to En Berenguer de Entenza who was besieging Megarix, which was thirty miles distant from Gallipoli, and two others to En Rocafort at the city of Nona which he was besieging, which was sixty miles distant from Gallipoli; and also to En Ferran Ximeno who was at his castle of Maditos, which is twenty-five miles distant from Gallipoli. And En Berenguer de Entenza came to Gallipoli at once with his company and raised the siege and, at once, accepted the Lord Infante, he and all who were with him, as chief and lord for the said Lord King of Sicily. And so likewise, came to Gallipoli En Ferran Ximeno de Arenos with all his company and accepted the Lord Infante as head and chief for the Lord King of Sicily. And so we were all obedient to the command of the Lord King of Sicily and considered the said Lord Infante our head, chief and lord. And we all had great cheer and content at this and held our cause to be won, as God had brought us the said Lord Infante who is in the direct line of the House of Aragon, being the son of the Lord King of Mallorca; and besides, he was, himself, one of the four principal knights of the world and of the wisest, and one who wished most to exercise true justice. For many reasons he was a lord who suited us very well.

And when we had all taken the oath to the Lord Infante, we had a message from En Rocafort, that he

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

could not raise his siege, but that he entreated the Lord Infante to go there; that all the company had great joy at his arrival. The Lord Infante held a council upon this and we all advised him to go, and told him we would follow him, except that En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno would remain in Gallipoli, because they were both on bad terms with En Rocafort; but that, as soon as the Lord Infante had arranged everything with En Rocafort and his company, they would go to him. And so the said Lord Infante, with me and with all the company that was in Gallipoli, except a few that remained with these two richs homens, went to where En Rocafort was, namely to where he was conducting his siege. And when they knew that the Lord Infante was coming, they received him with great honours and with the great content and cheerfulness they all felt.

And when the Lord Infante had been full two days with them, at that great feast, he gave his letters to the Company. But En Rocafort, who alone knew the covenant between the Lord King of Sicily and the Lord Infante, reflected that the Lord Infante was of such high descent and was so worthy and true, that he would on no account fail to keep the covenant he had made with the Lord King of Sicily. And he thought of his own advantage and not of the common good. He thought: "If this lord remains here as lord and chief thou art lost, for En Berenguer de Entenza and Ferran Ximeno have accepted him before thou didst, and both are nobles and the Infante will always show them more honour than to thee, as well in council as in all other affairs, and they have mortal hatred against thee and so they will do thee all the evil they can with him. And thou art, to-day, chief and lord of this host, thou hast the greater part of the Franks, horse and foot, of those who are in Romania. Besides, thou hast the Turks and the Turcopoles who, here, acknowledge no other lord but thee. And, when

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

thou art lord, how canst thou return to be nothing? Thou must take measures that this lord does not remain here, but this thou wilt have to do with great dexterity. for the people are full of joy at his arrival and want him as head and chief. Then what wilt thou do? Thou hast only one way, that, with a good semblance, thou yet arrange in such wise that he does not tarry here."

And you will see what means he took; I never believed there was a man who would take a resolution so covertly as he did. And the Lord Infante, trusting him greatly, told him all his purpose and bid him assemble a general council, for he wished to give the Company the letters that he was bringing from the Lord King of Sicily. Those for En Rocafort he had already sent him. And En Rocafort said that he would assemble a general council on the following day; but, in the meanwhile, he assembled privately, all the heads of the companies, as well horse as foot, and said to them :—

"Notables, the Lord Infante wishes us to assemble a council to-morrow, for he wishes to give you the letters he brings from the Lord King of Sicily, and he wishes to tell you by word of mouth why he has come. And your nurture and the nurture of your companies is such that you will listen to him courteously; and when he has spoken none shall answer him; but I shall answer him that you have heard the letters and his good words, and that he should return to his lodging, and we shall hold our council upon what he has put before us."

And so the Lord Infante and all came to the council and he gave his letters and spoke good and wise words to the Company. And they answered what En Rocafort had ordained, namely that they would defer their agreement. And so the Lord Infante returned to his lodging and the council remained in the square. What shall I tell you? En Rocafort said: "Barons, this matter must not be managed by all. Let us elect fifty worthy

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

men who shall settle this answer and, when they have settled it, we shall tell it you all, to ask if it seems good to you. And if it seems good to you, we shall give it, but if amendment seems necessary it shall be made." And so all held what En Rocafort had said for good, so that before they left the square the fifty were elected. And when they had been elected, they took an oath of secrecy. And when they had done this En Rocafort said to them :—

" Barons, God has shown us His great love in sending us this lord ; there is none in the world who would be so much to us. He is in the direct line of descent of the House of Aragon and is of the most accomplished knights of the world and of those who most love truth and justice. Wherefore I should advise you that we accept him as our lord, out and out. But he has told us that we should accept him as representative of the King of Sicily ; but that we shall not do on any account. It is much better for us that he be our lord than the Lord King of Sicily, for he has neither land nor dominion, wherefore he will always be with us and we with him. As to the King of Sicily, you know already what guerdon he has given us for the service we have done him, we and our fathers. As soon as peace was concluded, he cast us out of Sicily with a quintal of bread for each man. And that is a thing we should all remember. Therefore let us answer him clearly that we shall on no account accept him as from King Fadrique, but that we are prepared to accept him for himself, as being the grandson of our natural lord, and that we hold ourselves much honoured and are prepared to render oath and homage to him. And for this he will be very grateful to us and we shall have done our duty to him. And we shall let the King of Sicily know that we remember what he did when he had obtained peace." And so, in the end, all said he had spoken well, but none, except En Rocafort,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

knew the covenants between the Lord King En Fadrique and the Lord Infante. But he knew well that they were so binding between them, that the Infante could on no account accept the sovereignty over any city or town or castle or anything in this journey. If the Company had known this, they would not have let him depart ; rather they would have received him willingly on the part of the Lord King of Sicily. But En Rocafort said to them : " Barons, if he refuses you and says that he will on no account take the sovereignty for himself, let it not disturb us ; he will take it in the end." What shall I tell you ? They put the agreement, just as they had made it, before the community and told them at length all that has been said before ; it was not En Rocafort who told it ; rather, two of these fifty men were ordained to speak for all. And all the Company cried : " Well spoken, well spoken." And so the answer was made to the Lord Infante. And when he heard it, it seemed to him that they said it to show him great honour. What shall I tell you ? They kept him in such parley for fifteen days. And when he saw that they persisted in it, he answered them that they should know for certain that, if they would not accept him as from the Lord King of Sicily, he would return to Sicily. And when he had given this answer, he wished to take leave. But En Rocafort and all the Company urged him not to part from them until they were in the Kingdom of Salonica and, until then, they would look upon him as their lord, and he would meanwhile make his decision and they likewise ; and that, if it pleased God, he would establish concord amongst them. And so, likewise, they told him of the discord between En Rocafort and En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno, and begged him to be pleased to mend it. And he answered that he would be pleased to do so.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXXI.

How the Lord Infante and the Company departed from the Kingdom of Macedonia and abandoned Gallipoli and the castle of Maditos and burnt them and went to the Kingdom of Salonica to wage war.

Now it is the truth that we had been in the peninsula of Gallipoli and in that district seven years since the death of the Cæsar, and we had lived there five years on the land and there was nothing left. And so, likewise, we had depopulated all that district for ten journeys in every direction; we had destroyed all the people, so that nothing could be gathered there. Therefore we were obliged to abandon that country. And this was the decision of En Rocafort and those who were with him, Christians as well as Turks and Turcopoles. And so likewise it was the intention of En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno and all their men, and mine too with those of Gallipoli. But we dared not move for fear of quarrels amongst ourselves; we had nothing else to fear. And so the Lord Infante spoke with all, and it was agreed that all should abandon that district together, and that I, with the seamen in twenty-four lenys we had, amongst which were the four galleys (the rest being armed lenys and armed barges) should take away all the women and children and go by sea to the city of Cristopol, which is at the entrance to the dominion of Salonica; and that I should demolish and burn the castle of Gallipoli and the castle of Maditos and all the places we held. And so I took leave of them and went to Gallipoli and carried out what had been ordained, and with thirty-six sail, between galleys and armed lenys and armed barges and shore boats, I issued out of Boca Daner and set my course for Cristopol.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXXII.

How the Company set out to go to the Kingdom of Salonica and how, two marches distant from Cristopol, a quarrel arose in the Company in which En Berenguer de Entenza was killed by the hands of the men of En Rocafort.

AND when the Infante and all the Company knew that I had burnt and demolished all the places and castles and that I had left Boca Daner in safety, they arranged their departure. And the ordering of it, which the Lord Infante made, was this: that En Rocafort and those who were with him, and the Turks and the Turcopoles should start one day ahead; namely, where they had lain one night, the next the Lord Infante should lie and En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno and all their companies; so that, all the time, they should be at a day's journey distant from each other. And so they went, very well ordered, on short journeys. And when they were within two journeys of Cristopol, the Devil, who does nothing but evil, arranged that the host of En Berenguer de Entenza should get up earlier, because of the great heat, and the men of En Rocafort only got up in broad daylight, because they had been lying in a plain which was all gardens, and there was every kind of good fruit of the season, and good water and much wine which they found in the houses. And so, being well lodged, they delayed leaving, and the others had been quite the opposite, wherefore they got up early. And so the van of the host of the Lord Infante overtook the rear of the host of En Rocafort. And when the men of En Rocafort saw them, the voice of the Devil arose amongst them, crying:—"To arms! to arms! see the company of En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno coming to kill us!" And so the word went from one to the other, as far as the van. And En Rocafort had the armour put on the horses and all got ready, and also

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Turks and Turcopoles. What shall I tell you? The noise reached the Lord Infante and En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno. And En Berenguer de Entenza quickly mounted his horse, with only a hauberk[1] on without any armour, with his sword girded on and a hunting spear in his hand, and he proceeded to head off and drive back his men and make them return. And whilst he was thus rallying them as well as he could (for he did not know whence the noise arose and headed them off, like a wise rich hom and expert knight) there came, on his horse, fully armed, En Gisbert de Rocafort, younger brother of En Berenguer de Rocafort, and likewise En Dalmau Sant-Marti, their uncle, on his horse and well armed. And together they came towards En Berenguer de Entenza heading off his men, but they thought he was urging on the company. And both together rushed at him and En Berenguer de Entenza cried :—"What is this?" But both attacked him and found him unarmed, and thrust their lances right through him, so that, then and there, they slew him, and this was a great wrong and a great loss, that they, when he was acting rightly, killed him. And when they had killed him they went to look for the others and especially for En Ferran Ximeno. And En Ferran, also an expert and wise knight, came out at the noise without any armour, and mounted his horse and was heading off the men. And when he saw that the men of En Rocafort had killed En Berenguer de Entenza, and that the Turks and Turcopoles were with them and did what they commanded and that every man would be killed, he fled with about thirty horsemen to a castle which belonged to the Emperor. See into what danger he had to put himself, being obliged to put himself into the power of his enemies, who received him willingly when they saw

[1] "Hauberk . . . a tunick or frock with wide sleeves reaching a little below the elbow."—Fosbrook: 'Encyclopædia of Antiquities.'

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the fight. What shall I tell you? Thus killing and wounding they came as far as where the banner of the Lord Infante and his company was. So the Lord Infante came armed, on his horse, mace in hand, and rallied the men as well as he could. And as soon as En Rocafort and his company saw them, they surrounded him, so that no one could do him any hurt, neither the Turks nor the Turcopoles. What shall I tell you? As soon as the Lord Infante was with them, the fighting ceased; nevertheless it did not cease so completely that throughout that day, they did not kill some of our men, namely, of the company of En Berenguer de Entenza and En Ferran Ximeno, over a hundred and fifty horsemen and full five hundred afoot. See if it was not indeed the work of the Devil, for if the country had been inhabited by people ready to come out to attack them they would all have been killed.

And when the Lord Infante came to the place where En Berenguer de Entenza was lying dead, he dismounted, and began a great mourning and kissed him more than ten times, and all that were in the host did the same, and En Rocafort also showed himself greatly displeased at it, and wept over him, as also his brother and his uncle, who had killed him. But when the Lord Infante upbraided them, they excused themselves, saying they did not recognise him. And so they did wrongly and it was a great sin to kill this rich hom and all the others. And the Lord Infante made all the host tarry in that place three days and, in a church near by, dedicated to Saint Nicholas, they buried the body of the said En Berenguer de Entenza and had masses sung and they put him in a fine tomb near the altar. God keep his soul, for he was a true martyr, for he died to stop wrong doing. And when this was done, the Infante heard that En Ferran Ximeno was in that castle with those who had gone away with him and with full seventy others who

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

had gone there afterwards, so that altogether he was in the castle with a hundred men, good men of the host. And the Infante sent to bid him return, and he sent to beg the Infante to excuse him, as it was not in his power (as indeed it was not); as he had come to the castle he had to appear before the Emperor with all his company. And so the Lord Infante held him excused, him and all who were with him.

And, things being thus, the four galleys of the Lord Infante, of which En Dalmau Serran, knight, and En Jaime Despalau of Barcelona were commanders, came to the place where the host was. The Lord Infante had sent them to me to accompany me, but they would not venture to enter Boca Daner for fear of the Genoese galleys, so they returned without me to where they knew the host was.

CHAPTER CCXXXIII.

How En Rocafort made his company maintain the resolution on no account to accept the Lord Infante En Ferrando as representative of the Lord King Fadrique, King of Sicily, but only in his own person; wherefore the Lord Infante parted from the Company and came to Sicily and I, En Ramon Muntaner, with him.

AND when the Lord Infante saw the galleys, he rejoiced and had a general council assembled and asked them what decision they had come to; if they had decided to receive him as representing the Lord King of Sicily, he would tarry with them, if not, he would not remain. And En Rocafort, who considered himself a greater man since En Berenguer de Entenza was dead and En Ferran Ximeno had fled, made the Company keep to the resolution on no account to accept the Lord Infante as representative of the Lord King of Sicily,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

but only for himself. And so the Lord Infante took leave of them and embarked in the galleys and came to an island called Thasos which is six miles distant from that place. And I came to that island on the same day with all my company, by chance, for I had no news whatever of the host. And I found there the Lord Infante, who rejoiced much at seeing me and told me all the affair, at which I and all those who were with me were much grieved and displeased. And so the Lord Infante requested me, in the name of the Lord King of Sicily and in his own, not to separate from him. And I told him that I was ready to do all he commanded, holding him to be my lord; but I begged him to await me in the island of Thasos, and I, with all the people I had brought, would go to the Company. And he said he was content.

And I went at once, with all the thirty-six sail, to the Company, which I found one journey distant from Cristopol. And when I came to them, before going on shore, I made them assure the safety of all the men, women and children, and of all there was there belonging to En Berenguer de Entenza and his company and also to En Ferran Ximeno. And then I went on shore and all those who wished to go to where En Ferran Ximeno was, went and I had them accompanied by a hundred Turkish horsemen and as many Turcopoles and by fifty Christian horsemen, and had carts lent them to carry their goods. And those who wished to remain with the host remained; and to those who did not wish to remain I gave barges to take them safely to Negroponte.[1]

And when I had done all this, for which I had detained the host three days, I had a general council assembled and reproved them for all that had happened and reminded them of all they owed to that rich hom they had

[1] Moncada says that Ferran Ximeno went with his followers to Constantinople where Andronicus received him very graciously, gave him his granddaughter, the widowed Theodora, in marriage and made him Grand Duke in succession to Berenguer de Entenza.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

killed, and likewise to En Ferran Ximeno who, for their sake, had left the Duke of Athens who was showing him much honour. And in the presence of all, I gave up to them the seal of the Community which I had, and all the books and I left them the clerk and took leave of all. And they begged me not to part from them, especially the Turks and Turcopoles who came to me weeping, begging me not to forsake them, for they looked upon me as upon a father; and in truth they never called me anything else than cata, which in Turkish means Father. Indeed I was more sorry about them than about anyone else, for they had put themselves under my command and always trusted me more than any other man in the Christian host. But I told them that I could on no account remain, that I could not fail the Lord Infante, who was my lord. In the end I took leave of all and, with an armed leny of sixty oars I had, and two armed barges, I parted from them and came to Thasos, where I found the Lord Infante awaiting me.

And when I had parted from the Company they went over the pass of Cristopol with much trouble and then, by daily journeys, they went to a peninsula called Cassandra, a peninsula in the sea, distant five hundred and twenty miles from the city of Salonica. And at the entrance to that peninsula they pitched their tents, and from there raided as far as the city of Salonica and all that country which they found new country. And they consumed that district as they had done those of Gallipoli, Constantinople and Adrianople.

And so I must cease to speak to you of the Company and must relate to you a fine adventure which happened to me at Gallipoli and which it is suitable to relate now.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXXXIV.

How Sir Ticino Zaccaria came to Gallipoli to beg me, Ramon Muntaner, to be pleased to help him with a company with whom to sack the castle and town of Fogliari where there were three relics which monsenyer Saint John had left on the altar when he entered the tomb at Ephesus.

It is the truth that, before the Lord Infante came to Gallipoli, there came a Genoese notable, called Sir Ticino Zaccaria, who was a nephew of micer Benito Zaccaria. And he came with a fully armed leny of eighty oars. And when he came to Gallipoli he asked for a safe-conduct, for he wished to speak to me. And I gave him the safe-conduct and he said to me: "Captain, it is the truth that I have held the castle of Fogliari full five years for my uncle, micer Benito Zaccaria. Now micer Benito is dead and his brother, who is likewise my uncle and to whom he commended the castle, came to Fogliari this year accompanied by four galleys and called me to account. And I rendered him account, but we did not agree very well about it. Now I have heard that he is returning with four more galleys and wants to take me and wishes to set up another captain at Fogliari. And I have had a letter from his son telling me on no account to await him; that, if he can take me, he would assuredly bring me to Genoa. And so I have come here to you; I am prepared, with all those with whom I have come, to swear fealty and do homage to you, to be one of your company." And I, who knew that he was an honourable man, and saw him thus wise and discreet, accepted him and gave him a good and valuable house and had him written down for ten armed horses in the book of the Company; for I had that power in the Company, a power no one else had.

And when he had been made one of our Company, he asked me to fit out a galley I had in the harbour, and two

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

lenys and to give him an associate; assuredly he would do in such wise that he would take the castle of Fogliari and he would obtain the greatest treasure of the world for me. And I at once equipped the galley and his leny and the two other armed lenys and an armed barge, and so there were five vessels. And all his company went on board, they were about fifty persons, all good and expert men; and I put in, as captain, a cousin-german of mine, called Juan Muntaner, to whom I gave power to do all things that I could do myself, and told him that, what he did, he should always do in counsel with the said Sir Ticino Zaccaria and four other good men, Catalans, which I assigned to him as counsellors. And so they departed from Gallipoli on the day after Palm Sunday. What shall I tell you? The said Sir Ticino Zaccaria did and ordained matters so that they came to the castle of Fogliari at night on Easter Sunday. And at the hour of matins they set against the wall their ladders, which they had brought ready, as he knew the walls exactly. What shall I tell you? Before they were heard in the place he made our men go up and had thirty of his and fifty of ours on the wall, in armour and apparelled. And when he was there, day broke and he, with all the rest of the company, went at the door with axes. And when those within heard them, they seized their arms and our men broke in the door and killed those of the wall and also all those they found in the towers. What shall I tell you? Altogether they killed over a hundred and fifty persons and took all the others; there were full five hundred combatants within.

And when they had taken all the castle, they issued out into the town which the Greeks were holding, over three thousand persons; they were workers of the alum which is made in that place; and they pillaged all the town and took and plundered what they pleased. What shall I tell you? What was gained there was infinite.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And in that place the three relics of the blessed Saint John the Evangelist were obtained, which he left on the altar at Ephesus when he entered the tomb. And when the Turks took that place, they carried off these three relics, and afterwards they pledged them at Fogliari for wheat. And the three relics are these: the first, a piece of the true Cross, which monsenyer Saint John the Evangelist took with his own hands from the true Cross, from the place where the precious head of Jesus Christ had been. And this piece was very richly encased in gold with precious stones which are of untold value. It would be hard for you to believe if I were to tell you what was set round it, besides a little gold chain; for monsenyer Saint John always wore it hanging from his neck. And the other relic was a very precious shirt without any seams, which our Lady Saint Mary made with her own blessed hands and gave him, and in which the blessed monsenyer Saint John always said mass. And the third relic was a book called Apocalypse, written in letters of gold by the own hand of the blessed monsenyer Saint John; and on the covers there was also a great wealth of precious stones. And so, amongst other things, they obtained these three relics, which were obtained because Sir Ticino Zaccaria knew beforehand where they were. And so, with great gain, they returned to Gallipoli and there divided it all. And we divided the relics by lot and the true Cross came by lot to me, and to Sir Ticino the shirt and the book; and then the rest was divided as it should be. And so you see what we took with the company of Sir Ticino Zaccaria. And afterwards Sir Ticino, with what he had gained, manned his leny with our people and his, and came to the island of Thasos where there was a fine castle, and he kept this castle and the town and settled it. And I came to that castle and found the Lord Infante with four galleys, and there he awaited me whilst I went to the Company to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

take leave, and then I returned to the Lord Infante. And if you ever saw a man receive his friend well, micer Ticino Zaccaria did so receive me; for he, incontinent, delivered the castle to me, and all there was in it, and provided for the Lord Infante and us all very richly during full three days he made us stay there. Then he proffered me his personal service and the castle and what he had. And I gave him much equipment in different ways, and I gave him an armed barge of twenty-four oars and left with him full forty men, who wished to remain in his pay. And so I left him well provided and equipped; for the Catalan proverb is true which says:— "Give pleasure and do not look to whom you are giving it" In that place, where I never expected to be, I received very great pleasure and the Lord Infante and all our company through me, and at need we could all have taken refuge in that castle, and from there we could have made further conquests.

CHAPTER CCXXXV.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando set his course for the port of Almyros and burnt and levelled all there was there; whence he set his course for the island of Spoll where he attacked the castle and sacked the town; and how he went to the point of the island of Negroponte, where he was captured through trusting the Venetians.

WE took leave of Sir Ticino Zaccaria and departed from the island of Thasos with the Lord Infante. And the Lord Infante had the best galley after his own, which was called La Espanyola, given up to me. And with his four galleys and my armed leny and a barge of mine, we set our course for the port of Almyros, which is in the Duchy of Athens, where the Lord Infante had left four

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

men to make biscuits; but the people of the country had plundered all. But, if they did plunder, a fine revenge we took for it; for all that was there we gave up to fire and flame. Then we departed from Almyros and we went to the island of Spoll[1] and there we attacked the castle and devastated all the island, and then we went to the island of Negroponte. And the Lord Infante said he wished to pass through the city of Negroponte, but we all told him on no account to do so. And it is true that he had passed through it on entering Romania, and he and the Company were feasted; and he thought they would do the same now. And so, in spite of us all, he persisted that we should go. And so, in an evil hour, we took that direction and, with our eyes open, put the rope round our necks. Wherefore it is very perilous to go with the young sons of kings; they are of such high birth that they think no one would, on any account, do them harm. And, assuredly, so it ought to be, if there were knowledge in the world, but the world is so ignorant that, in few things, does it perform its full duty towards anyone. And then, also, they are lords whom no one dares to oppose in anything they wish to undertake. Wherefore it happened to us that we had to consent to our own destruction, and we went to the city of Negroponte. And so we found that ten Venetian armed galleys and an armed leny had arrived, of which En Juan Teri and En Marco Miyot were captains, and they were sailing for micer Charles of France[2] who claimed the Empire of Constantinople, and they were in search of the Company. And there was there, on the side of micer Charles, a French rich hom called micer Thibaut de Chépoi. And so the Lord Infante made them give safe-conducts to

[1] This may be either Skopelos, North of Negroponte, or, as Moncada thinks, Skiro, North-east of Negroponte.

[2] The King of the Hat. He founded his claim on the descent of his second wife, Catherine de Courtenay, granddaughter of Baldwin II, who had been driven from Constantinople by Michael Palælogus.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

him and all his company. And the lords of Negroponte gave us safe-conducts and so did the captains of the galleys, and they invited the Lord Infante to a banquet. And when he was on shore, the Venetian galleys came against ours, and especially against mine, for there was a rumour that I was bringing the greatest treasures of the world from Romania, and, at the assault they made, they killed over forty men, and they would have killed me if I had been there, but I did not depart one step from the side of the Lord Infante. And so they plundered my galley and all there was there, which was a great deal,[1] and then they took the Lord Infante and ten of the best men who were with him. And when they had done this treacherous deed, micer Thibaut de Chépoi delivered over the Lord Infante to micer Juan de Misi, lord of a third of Negroponte, in order that he should take him to the Duke of Athens, for the Duke to guard him for micer Charles and do what micer Charles would command. And so they took him with eight knights and four squires to the city of Thebes and he had him put into the castle called Saint Omer,[2] and had him closely guarded.

And some men of Negroponte gave micer Thibaut de Chépoi to understand that, if he wished to obtain anything from the Company, he should take me back to it, for I had carried off a great part of the treasure of the Company. And so they would do two good things; they would please the Company, and, besides, they knew the men would kill me at once, and so there would be no one to claim what they had taken. And also, that they should take back En Garcia Gomis Palasin, whom En Rocafort hated more than any man on earth, and that they would thus please En Rocafort greatly. As they

[1] Muntaner never recovered any part of his treasure, which has been estimated at 100,000 gold hyperpers. Long after his death Venice paid 10,000 gold florins to his granddaughter in compensation for the spoliation of her grandfather.

[2] Built by Nicholas de St. Omer.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

were advised, so they did; they sent back En Garcia Gomis and me to the Company. And when they came to the Company they, at once, presented En Garcia Gomis to En Rocafort and he had great pleasure thereat. And he went at once to the stern of the galley and as soon as Garcia landed, without other sentence, in the presence of all, En Rocafort ordered his head to be cut off, which was a great loss and hurt, for indeed he was of the most accomplished knights of the world in all matters.

CHAPTER CCXXXVI.

How the Company rejoiced to see me, Ramon Muntaner, return; and how En Rocafort proceeded to approach micer Charles of France and made all the Company, against their will, take the oath to En Thibaut de Chépoi as their commander for micer Charles of France.

AND when they had done this, they brought me on shore. And when they of the Company saw me, En Rocafort and the others all came to kiss and embrace me, and they all began to weep over what I had lost. And all the Turks and Turcopoles dismounted and wanted to kiss my hand and began to weep for joy, thinking I wished to remain with them. And at once En Rocafort and all who accompanied me took me to the finest house which was there and had it at once given up to me. And when I was in the house, the Turks sent me twenty horses and a thousand gold hyperpers and the Turcopoles the same. And En Rocafort sent me a valuable horse and a mule and a hundred cahices[1] of oats, and a hundred quintals of flour, and salt meat, and cattle of one sort and another. And so also there was no leader nor

[1] One cahiz (or cafiz), 12 bushels. "A cafizada was the extent of ground requiring a cafiz of corn as seed."—Gayangos, quoted by F. D. Swift, "Life of James I of Aragon."

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

commander nor man worth anything who did not send me a present, so that, altogether, it was estimated that what they sent me within three days was worth four thousand gold hyperpers. En Thibaut de Chépoi and the Venetians held themselves much mistaken in having brought me back.

And, when this was done, En Thibaut de Chépoi and the captains of the galleys entered into parley with the Company about their affairs. The first thing they had to do was to promise to the Company to give me satisfaction for the damage they had done me, and this they had to swear. The Company told them that I had been their father and governor since they had departed from Sicily and that no evil could arise amongst them whilst I was with them. And, again, if I had been with them, that evil would not have been done, the killing of En Berenguer de Entenza and the others. This was the first clause they made them promise and swear, but they kept their oath badly, wherefore God gave them no success in any affairs, as you shall hear further on.

What shall I tell you? En Rocafort, seeing that he had lost the favour of the House of Sicily and Aragon and Mallorca, and also of all Catalonia, approached micer Charles of France and took the oath and made all the Company swear fealty to micer Charles, as their Sovereign; this proved to his disadvantage and to theirs. And when they had sworn and done homage to En Thibaut de Chépoi for micer Charles, they took the oath to the said micer Thibaut de Chépoi as commander; he exercised his authority with great urbanity, for he saw he could not do otherwise. What shall I tell you? When they had taken the oath to En Thibaut he imagined that no one but he would dare to command, but En Rocafort consulted him less than a dog; rather, he had a seal made with the figure of a knight, and a crown of gold, for he intended to be crowned King of Salonica. What

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

shall I tell you? When this was done, En Thibaut was commander of nothing but the wind, as his lord had been, who was King of the Hat and the Wind when he accepted the grant of the Kingdom of Aragon; so was he too commander of the Hat and the Wind.

And when the captains of the galleys saw this, they thought they had attained what they had come for, as they had made En Thibaut commander of the Company. And they took leave and wanted to return. And the Company and the Turks and the Turcopoles, and also En Thibaut, begged me to remain, but I said I would not do so on any account. And when they saw they could not alter this, they summoned the captains of the galleys and recommended me to them warmly. And they gave me at once a galley in which all my company could go; and micer Tari, the chief commander, wished me to go in his galley. And micer Thibaut made out letters for Negroponte, that every man, under penalty of loss of life and property, should return my property to me. And I gave all the horses and pack-mules and carts to those who had been of my company, and so I took leave of all and embarked in the galley of micer Juan Tari. And if ever a man was shown honour by a nobleman, I was, for he always wished me to lie in one bed with him, and we two dined alone together at one table.

CHAPTER CCXXXVII.

How the Venetian galleys parted from the Company and I, Ramon Muntaner, with them, to go and recover what had been taken from me; and how I went to the city of Thebes in order to take leave of the Lord Infante En Ferrando and to have him treated honourably.

And so we came to the city of Negroponte; and when we were in the city, the captains told the bailie

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of Venice to have it cried that every man who had anything of mine, should return it to me under penalty of loss of life and property; and micer Juan de Amici and micer Bonifazio de Verona[1] did likewise, when they saw the letter of micer Thibaut de Chépoi. What should I tell you about it? They were most willing to satisfy me with empty air, but of the goods I could recover nothing. And I begged micer Juan Tari to be pleased to let me go to the city of Thebes, to the Lord Infante; and he said, that, for love of me, he would wait for me four days, for which I was very grateful to him. And, at once, I took five riding beasts and went to the city of Thebes which is distant twenty-four miles; and I found the Duke of Athens[2] ill, but, ill as he was, he received me and told me he was much displeased at the hurt I had received and that he offered his services to me; that in all I saw he could help me, he would. And I gave him many thanks and told him that the greatest pleasure he could do me was to show all honour to the Lord Infante. And he answered that he held himself very bound to do so, and that he was greatly displeased at having had to serve the Venetians in such a case. And I begged him that it might please him to let me see him. And he said yes, I might see him and stay with him and that, in my honour, whilst I was there, anyone might go in and dine with him; and again, if he wished to ride, let him ride. And he at once had the gates of the castle of Saint Omer, where the Lord Infante was, opened and I went to see him. And do not ask me if I grieved when I saw him in the power of others; I thought my heart would burst. But he, in his kindness, consoled me. What shall I tell you? I stayed two days with him and begged him to be pleased to allow that I seek permission to remain with him, from the Duke of Athens. But he said it was not necessary that I should remain,

[1] Bonifazio dalle Carceri. [2] Guillaume de la Roche.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

rather it was opportune that I should go to Sicily, and he would give me a letter to accredit me with the Lord King of Sicily; and that he did not wish to write to anyone else. And he had the letter written at once and told me the whole of the message I was to give and all I should do, and that he knew well that there was no man in the world who knew the events that had happened in Romania as well as I did and, assuredly, he spoke the truth.

CHAPTER CCXXXVIII.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, took leave of the Lord Infante En Ferrando to go to Sicily; and how the Venetian galleys met those of En Riambaldo Desfar and sent the Lord Infante to King Robert and he came out of prison.

THEN, when I had stayed two days, I took leave of him with great grief; my heart almost broke with grief. And I left him a part of the few coins I was carrying and, also, I took off some garments I was wearing and gave them to the cook the Duke had assigned to the Lord Infante, and spoke privately with him and told him to look to it not to allow anything that could injure him to be put in his food; that if he guarded against it, he would derive much good for it from me and others. He laid his hands on the Gospels and swore to me that he would sooner let his head be cut off than suffer any harm to come to the Lord Infante through eating what he had prepared for him. And so I parted from him and took leave of the Lord Infante and his retinue. And I went to take leave of the Duke and, of his mercy, he gave me some of his rich and valuable jewels. And I departed, pleased with him, and returned to Negroponte where I found the galleys which were only waiting for me.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And I embarked at once and departed from Negroponte and went to refresh at the island of Sete Pace, and then at Cidia and then at Monemvasia and at Malea, at Sentannel and at Port Quaglio and then at Coron; and from Coron we went to the island of Sapienza, and that night we lay on shore in that island. And, when morning came, we looked and saw four galleys and a leny come the way we had come; and at once we left our post and steered for them. And they, seeing us, likewise proceeded to arm. And I looked and saw the iron caps and hunting spears shine; and I thought at once they were the galleys of En Riambaldo Desfar, of whom I had already had news, and I told our captain at once. And so the Venetians prepared to put on armour. And in a little while the armed leny of En Riambaldo Desfar came along with En P. Ribalta in the stern. And I knew him at once; and so he approached and he, seeing me, had great joy thereat, and so came to me on board the galley and told me that the galleys were those of En Riambaldo Desfar. But the Venetian captains took me aside and asked me to tell them about that knight, whether he was a wicked man and whether he had done any harm to Venetians. And I told them that, assuredly, he was a worthy man and one who would on no account do harm to any man who is a friend of the Lord King of Aragon; rather, I begged them that they love and honour him whilst we were together; and so they had the galleys disarmed and asked me to assure the others of their safety in their name and to tell them they were welcome.

And so I went on board the leny with En P. Ribalta and went to En Riambaldo Desfar, and he ordered everyone to take off their armour; and so, together, we went to the galleys and there greeted each other and, all together, went to the island of Sapienza, and there we all let down our ladders and our captains invited En

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Riambaldo Desfar and all the other captains. And that day we stopped there till the morning, and in the morning we left all together and went to Modon, and there we provisioned all the galleys and took in water. And on the following day we went to the shore of Matagrifon [1] and there also took in water, and then we went to Clarenza. And at Clarenza the Venetian galleys had to tarry to ordain four galleys they had to leave there on guard. And so I, with En Riambaldo Desfar, moved into a galley he had assigned to me and my company, and micer Juan Tari, captain of the Venetians, gave me two casks of wine and plenty of biscuits and salt meat and of all he had for his company, and I had what I wanted bought in Clarenza.

And so I took leave of them and, with En Riambaldo, we went to Corfu and then crossed from Corfu and landed in the gulf of Taranto, namely at the point of Cape Leuca, and then sailed along the coast of Calabria and came to Messina. And, at Messina, En Riambaldo disarmed, and he and I went to the Lord King whom we found at Castelnuovo. And there the Lord King received En Riambaldo well and gave him presents. And then En Riambaldo went away and I remained with the Lord King and gave him the letter of the Lord Infante and told him all the message. And the Lord King was greatly displeased at the imprisonment of the Lord Infante and at once sent a messenger to tell the Lord King of Mallorca and the Lord King of Aragon of it.

And meanwhile a message came to the Duke of Athens from micer Charles, bidding him send the Lord Infante to King Robert. And at once, he sent him to Brindisi, and from Brindisi he went by land to Naples and at Naples he remained in honourable captivity; he was guarded, but he rode with King Robert and dined with

[1] Akova.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

him and with my Lady the Queen, wife of King Robert, who was the Lord Infante's sister. What shall I tell you? The Lord Infante remained in captivity over a year. And then the Lord King, his father, obtained from the King of France that he sent him to him. And so the King of France and micer Charles commanded, by a message to King Charles (who was then still alive[1]) and to King Robert, to send him to the Lord King, his father. And at once they sent him to the Lord King, his father, and my Lady the Queen, his mother; and all, throughout the territories of the Lord King of Mallorca, made a great feast because they loved him more than any other child of the King.

And so I must let the Lord Infante be, who is with the Lord King, his father, safe and joyous, and must turn to speak to you of the Company, until I have brought them to the Duchy of Athens, where they are to-day.

CHAPTER CCXXXIX.

How En Rocafort was taken prisoner by the Company and handed over to En Thibaut de Chépoi who without the knowledge of the Company brought him away and handed him over to King Robert; who had him put in a vault in Aversa where he died of starvation.

And when En Rocafort had had the seal made, he so ruled over the Company that they considered En Thibaut de Chépoi less than a sergeant. He was very grieved by it and considered himself greatly insulted. And En Rocafort so degraded himself that no man died in the host that he did not take all his property; and besides, if anyone had a handsome wife or a handsome daughter

[1] Charles II, the Lame, died on May 4th, 1309.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

or a beautiful mistress, he must needs have her, so that they did not know what to do. In the end, all the heads of companies went secretly to En Thibaut de Chépoi and asked him to advise them about En Rocafort, for they could not endure him. And he answered that he could give them no advice, for En Rocafort was lord; but if they would act well, let them think over what they had better do and he would think it over also on his part. And En Thibaut said all this because he thought they wished to betray and deceive him. And so En Thibaut went to En Rocafort and, taking him on one side, reproved him, and he did not take it at all in good part.

En Thibaut had sent his son to Venice to equip six galleys, and these he was awaiting. They came shortly with his son who was captain thereof. And when the galleys had come, he held himself for safe and sent secretly to all the chiefs of the companies and asked them what they thought in the matter of En Rocafort. And they answered they thought it would be well that micer Thibaut should have a general council cried and that, when they were assembled in council, they would tell all En Rocafort had done to them and they would seize him and would deliver him up. And so it was done, to their misfortune. On the following day, when they were in council, they asked him for explanations, and, upon his explanation, they seized him and delivered him up to En Thibaut. In thus delivering him up they caused the greatest misfortune men ever did cause; it would have been better had they themselves taken vengeance on him, if their hearts were set on it. What shall I tell you? When micer Thibaut had En Berenguer de Rocafort and En Esberto his brother (their uncle En Dalmau de San-Marti had died of illness not long before) the chiefs of the companies ran to the house and coffers of En Rocafort, and found so many gold

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

hyperpers that each man's share was thirteen hyperpers; and so they plundered all he had. And when En Thibaut was holding En Rocafort and his brother, he embarked one night all secretly in the galleys, with all his company, and put En Rocafort and his brother on board and at once made the crew row hard and left the Company without taking leave of anyone. And in the morning, when the Company did not find micer Thibaut, and saw that he had gone away and had taken En Rocafort with him, they were very grieved and they repented of what they had done, and a tumult arose amongst them; and they seized their arms and killed with their lances fourteen chiefs of companies who had agreed to that affair. And then they elected two horsemen and an adalil, and a captain of the almugavars to govern them until they had a chief; and so these four were governors of the host, with the advice of the twelve. And En Thibaut de Chépoi went as far as Naples and delivered up En Rocafort and his brother to King Robert who hated them more than anyone in the world, because of the castles of Calabria which they had not surrendered as others had done. And when King Robert held them, he sent them to the castle at Aversa and he put the two brothers into
1309 a vault and there he let them die of hunger; after they had entered no man ever gave them to eat or drink. And so you can see that the evil a man does never leaves him, and that the higher in rank a man is, the more forbearing and upright he should be.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of En Rocafort who has run his course and shall turn to speak to you of the Company.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXL.

How the Duke of Athens left the Duchy to the count de Brienne; and how the said count being defied by the Despot of Arta and by the lord of Vlachia and by the Emperor had the Company to aid him; and how when he had recovered all his territory he wished to procure the death of the Company, in which attempt he and his were killed.

It happened at that time that the Duke of Athens[1] died of illness, and he had neither son nor daughter, and he left the Duchy to the count of Brienne,[2] who was his cousin-german. And the count de Brienne had been nurtured for a long time in Sicily, at the castle of Agosta, when he was a boy. His father, who had been a prisoner there, had put him there as a hostage and he came out of prison for a ransom. And he had made himself beloved by the Catalans and spoke Catalan. And when he came to the Duchy, the Despot of Arta defied him, and Angelo, lord of Vlachia,[3] did likewise, and also the Emperor, so that on all sides they gave him enough to do. And he sent his messengers to the Company and promised to give them pay for six months if they came to help him and also, afterwards, to keep them at that pay, namely four onzas a month to each man on an armed horse, and two for each light horse, and one onza for each man afoot. Of this they made a covenant with letters confirmed by oath on both sides. And upon this the Company departed from Cassandra and came to the Morea, after great trouble they suffered in passing through Vlachia, which is the most rugged country in the world.

And when they came to the Duchy of Athens, the count de Brienne received them well and gave them at once pay for two months. And they began to march against the enemies of the count; and in a short time

[1] Guy II de la Roche. [2] Walter de Brienne. [3] Thessaly.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

they had laid waste all the frontiers of his enemies. What shall I tell you? All were glad to make peace with him. He recovered over thirty castles which had been taken from him and was put in a very honourable position towards the Emperor and towards Angelo, the Despot. And this was done within six months and he had not given pay for more than two. And when he saw he was at peace with all his neighbours, he conceived a very wicked plan, namely, the destruction of the Company. And he chose about two hundred horsemen of the host, of the best there were in it, and about three hundred afoot; and these he made his Company and enfranchised them, and gave them land and properties. And when he had made sure of them, he commanded the others to leave his Duchy. And they told him to pay them for the time they had served him. But he told them he would set up gallows for them. And meanwhile he had summoned full seven hundred French knights, some from the territory of King Robert, some from the Principality of Morea, some from all that country. And when he had collected them, he collected full twenty-four thousand men afoot, Greeks from the Duchy. And then, with them formed into a host, he marched against the Company. And they of the Company, who knew this, issued forth with their wives and their children, on a beautiful plain near Thebes. And in that place there was a marsh, and of that marsh the Company made a shield for themselves. And when the two hundred Catalan horsemen and three hundred men afoot saw that things were getting serious, they went, all together, to the count and said to him:—"Lord, our brothers are here, whom we see you wish to destroy, which is a great sin; therefore we tell you that we wish to go and die with them; and so we defy you and take our discharge from you." And the count told them to go, and bad luck go with them, that it was well that they should die with the others;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and so they, all together, went to join the Company and all proceeded to form in battle array. And the Turks and Turcopoles all assembled in one place; they did not wish to join the Company, thinking it was done by an agreement between the two sides, in order to destroy them. And so they wished to be all collected together and watch. What shall I tell you? The count advanced against the Company in battle array, with two hundred French knights, all with gold spurs, and with many others of the country and with the men afoot. And he put himself in the van with his banner and proceeded to attack the Company, and they of the Company went to attack him. What shall I tell you? The horses of the count, at the noise the almugavars made, turned towards the marsh, and there the count and the banner fell, and all those who were in the van. And the Turks and Turcopoles, who saw that things were getting serious, proceeded to attack and fall upon them. And the battle was very hard; but God, Who always helps the right, helped the Company in such manner that, of all the seven hundred knights, only two escáped; all died, the count and all the other barons of the Principality of the Morea who had all come to destroy the Company. And of those two, one was micer Bonifazio da Verona, lord of the third part of Negroponte who was a very honourable, good man, and had always loved the Company. They saved him as soon as they recognised him. And the other was micer Roger Deslaur, a knight of Roussillon, who had often come to the Company as a messenger. And so, likewise, all the horsemen of the country who were there died; and of men afoot there died more than twenty thousand. And so the Company collected the booty, and they had won the battle[1] and all the Duchy of Athens. 1311

And as soon as they had collected the booty, they

[1] The Battle of Kephissos, March 15th, 1311.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

begged micer Bonifazio to be their commander. But he would not accept the office on any account. And so they made micer Roger Deslaur captain, and gave him to wife, with the castle of Salona, her who had been the wife of the Lord of Salona. And so they divided amongst themselves the city of Thebes and all the towns and castles of the Duchy and gave the ladies as wives to the men of the Company, to each according to his importance, and to some they gave so distinguished a lady that he was not worthy to hand her her bowl to wash her hands. And so they insured their safety and ordained their lives in such manner that, if they persevere in it wisely, it will be to their honour for all time.

CHAPTER CCXLI.

How the Turks parted from the Company and the Genoese captured them at Boca Daner owing to their trusting them; and how those who had remained about Gallipoli were killed by the Emperor of Constantinople.

AND the Turks and Turcopoles, who saw that henceforth the Company had no intention of leaving the Duchy of Athens and had conquered it all, said they wished to leave. And the Catalans told them that they would give them three or four places, or more, of the Duchy, wherever they wished; but they said they would not remain on any account; that, by the favour of God, they were all rich and wished to return to the Kingdom of Anatolia, to their friends. And so they separated in great love and concord towards each other, and proffered help to each other if it were needed. And so they returned safely to Gallipoli, by short journeys, pillaging and burning all they met; they had no fear that any man would resist

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

them, in such a state had the Catalans left the Empire. And when they were at Boca Daner, there came to them ten Genoese galleys by arrangement of the Emperor, and told them they would set them across the arm of the sea at Boca Daner, which is not more than four miles wide at that place. And so they made an agreement with them and they swore on the Holy Gospels that they would take them safely across, that it was not more than four miles across in that place. So they took across, in one journey, all the lesser people that were there. And when the notables saw that they had taken those people across safely, they went on board the galleys. And when they came to the galleys, as they went on board, the Genoese took away all their arms; such was the agreement, that the Turks should deliver up all their arms to the Genoese; and the Genoese put them all into one galley. And then, when the Turks were collected in the galleys and were without arms, the mariners threw themselves upon them and killed full half of them and the rest they put below; and so they captured the greater part of those who were of importance and took them with them to Genoa, and went along selling them in Apulia and in Calabria and in Naples and everywhere; and of those who had remained about Gallipoli, not one escaped; the Emperor had sent many of his men from Constantinople who killed them all.

And see through what deceit and disloyalty the Turks were annihilated by the Genoese; none escaped but those who had crossed in the first journey. And at this, they of the Company were much displeased when they heard of it. And see to what end the Turks came and how much it was to their misfortune that they separated from the Company.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXLII.

How the Company elected the Infante Manfredo, second son of the King of Sicily, as chief, and swore fealty to him as chief and lord; and how he being so young, the Lord King sent as commander for the Infante, En Berenguer Estanyol who ruled the host a long time very wisely.

AND when the Catalans saw themselves thus settled in the Duchy of Athens and lords of the country, they all sent their messengers to Sicily, to the Lord King, to say that, if it pleased him to send them one of his sons, they would take the oath to him as their lord and would deliver up to him all the fortresses they possessed. They saw clearly that it was not well for them to be without a lord. And the Lord King of Sicily held a council and decided to give them, as their lord, his second son, namely the Infante Manfredo. And they were content, but he told them that the Infante was still so young[1] that it was not time yet to send him to them; but that they should take the oath to him as lord, and that a knight would go, instead of the Infante, to be there in his place. And this the messengers granted and took the oath to the Infante Manfredo in the name of all the Company. And the Lord King chose a knight, called Berenguer Estanyol, who came from Ampurdan, to go with them to be commander of the host and to take the oath of homage of all; and so the Lord King sent them in five galleys. And when they came to the Company all were very well pleased at what the messengers had done and with En Berenguer Estanyol who came to be their commander and lord in the name of the Infante Manfredo. So the said En Berenguer Estanyol governed the host a long time very well and very wisely, as one

[1] Roger Manfred, second son of King Frederick III of Sicily and Eleanor, daughter of Charles II of Naples, was then seven or eight years old.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

who was a very accomplished knight, and he did many feats of arms, which the Company undertook; thus he had to fight against great power, namely, on the Marches, and against castles and places of the Emperor's, and so likewise on the Marches of Angelo, lord of Vlachia, and besides on the Marches of the Despotate of Arta and besides against the Prince of Morea. And En Berenguer Estanyol arranged in such manner that they always waged one war and made truces with their other enemies, and then, when they had despoiled that country with which they were at war, they made a covenant with them and made war on the others; and this life they lead still. They could not live without war.

CHAPTER CCXLIII.

How, En Berenguer Estanyol having died, the Lord King of Sicily sent En Alfonso Federico, his son, to the Company as representative of the Infante Manfredo; and how, the Infante Manfredo having died, they took the oath to En Alfonso Federico as chief and lord; and the daughter of micer Bonifazio of Verona was given him to wife.

AND, presently, En Berenguer Estanyol died of illness, and so they sent to Sicily, to the Lord King, to ask him to send them a governor. And the Lord King summoned from Catalonia his son, En Alfonso Federico, who was being brought up by the Lord King of Aragon; and he brought with him from Catalonia a company of knights and sons of knights and other retainers. And from Barcelona he went to Sicily, where it gave his father great pleasure to see him so big and of such a fine figure; and he fitted him out very well and sent him to the Company, with ten galleys, as head and chief, as representative of the Lord Infante Manfredo. And when he came to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Company, they of the Company were very joyous and received him with great honour and he governed them and ruled them, and does so still, very wisely and prudently.

And, before long, the Infante Manfredo died. And so the Lord King sent to tell them that, as the Infante Manfredo had died, they should henceforth have En Alfonso Federico as head and chief. And they were very content and soon procured a wife for him, and gave him to wife the daughter of micer Bonifazio of Verona, to whom had been left all micer Bonifazio possessed, namely the third part of the city and of the town and of the island of Negroponte, and full thirteen castles on the mainland of the Duchy of Athens. And so he had to wife this damsel who was the daughter of that nobleman who was, I believe, the wisest and most courteous noble ever born. And to show his worth I will relate to you the honour the good Duke of Athens showed him. And so En Alfonso Federico had to wife this gentlewoman, who descends on her father's and on her mother's side from the men of most noble blood there is in Lombardy; and her mother, who was the wife of micer Bonifazio, was the descendant of nobles of the Morea, and, through his wife, micer Bonifazio had the third part of Negroponte. And by this lady En Alfonso Federico had plenty of children and she was the best lady and the wisest there ever was in that country. And, assuredly, she is one of the most beautiful Christians of the world; I saw her in the house of her father when she was about eight years old, for I was put into the house of micer Bonifazio with the Lord Infante when we were made prisoners.

Now, I shall leave off speaking to you of En Alfonso Federico and of the Company; henceforth, I shall not attempt to speak of them. Since I came back to Catalonia they are so far away, I should have to speak of their

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

affairs at random, and I do not wish to put into this book anything but what is the real truth. And so, may God make them act and speak well; with their affairs, henceforth, I shall not meddle.

Yet I wish to recount to you the honour the good Duke of Athens, who left the country to the count of Brienne, showed one day to micer Bonifazio de Verona, and this I wish to recount, in order that kings and sons of kings and richs homens, take good example by it.

CHAPTER CCXLIV.

Recounts who micer Bonifazio of Verona was and his descent; and how the Duke of Athens chose to be knighted by the said micer Bonifazio of Verona and bestowed a very great gift and honour on him on the day he was knighted.

It is the truth that the Duke of Athens was of the men of highest rank there are in the Empire of Romania, after the King, and of the richest. And in old days, there were two brothers, sons of the Duke of Burgundy, who passed beyond sea in ships, for the sake of the Holy Roman Church with much chivalry and many other followers. And they had embarked at Brindisi and at Venice, and winter overtook them in the port of Clarenza. And, at that time, the people of that country were rebels against the Church. And these two lords sent messengers to the Pope to say that, if he granted them the Principality of Morea, they would conquer it that winter; that they could not, in any case, go further. And the Pope granted them this with great joy. These two brothers conquered all the Principality and all the Duchy of Athens. And the elder became Prince of Morea and the younger Duke of Athens. And each had his territory free and exempt and they bestowed castles and manors

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and villages on their knights, so that, altogether, a thousand French knights settled there who all sent to France for their wives and children. And then, those who have come after them, always chose their wives in the families of the highest barons of France; so that they are nobles and of high descent in a direct line.

And it happened that the good Duke of Athens, as I have already told you, left the country to the count of Brienne, who wished to be knighted, and convoked Cortes throughout all his territory. And he commanded that, on Saint John's day in June, all the men of importance there were in his Duchy, be at the city of Thebes, where he wished to be knighted; and so likewise he commanded all prelates and all other men of importance to be there. And then he had cried through all the Empire and through all the Despotate and through all Vlachia that every one who wished to be there should come to receive gifts and favours from him. And so Cortes were summoned full six months before they were held.

And it is the truth that the Lord of Verona (which is a fine city in Lombardy) had three sons. And one, namely the eldest, he made heir of Verona; and the one who came next he provided with thirty knights and thirty sons of knights and sent him to the Morea, to the Duchy of Athens; and he who was Duke of Athens, father of this Duke I am speaking of to you now, received him very willingly and gave him much of his own, and made him a great rich hom and gave him a wife with great riches, and made him a knight; and by his wife he had two sons and two daughters. And when his brothers heard he was doing so well, micer Bonifazio, who was the youngest, said to his brother that he wished to go to his brother in the Morea; and it pleased the elder brother and he helped him with what he was able. And micer Bonifazio had not more than one castle which his father

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

had left him and this he sold, the better to apparel himself. And so he fitted himself out with ten knights and ten sons of knights and was knighted by his elder brother, because it was better he should be a knight than that he should be a squire; in those parts no son of a rich hom is held in consideration until he is a knight, and therefore he was made knight by the hand of his brother.

And so he departed from Lombardy and embarked at Venice and came to the Duchy of Athens. And when he was in the Duchy, he came to the Duke, who received him very well. And he found that his brother had died not a month before and that he had left two sons and two daughters. And so the rich hom held himself for undone, because the property of his nephews was of no benefit to him, for their guardians could give him nothing. And so you can understand how he thought himself bereaved of everything. But the good Duke of Athens, who saw him thus disconsolate, comforted him and told him not to be dismayed, that he would receive him in his house and in his council, with all those who had come with him. And so the rich hom was thoroughly cheered, and the Duke of Athens had him inscribed for a good and splendid allowance for himself and his company. What shall I tell you? He led this life full seven years; there never was a man at the court of the Duke who dressed more elegantly than he and his company, and no one went arrayed as he did, so that he brightened all that court.

And the Duke of Athens noted his good sense and his good understanding, though he did not let it appear; and, besides, found him very wise in council. At this time, when the Duke had sent out his letter, everyone endeavoured to prepare garments for himself and his company to do honour to the court, garments which they would give to juglars. What shall I tell you?

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

The day of the court came and in all the court no one was better dressed and more splendidly than micer Bonifazio and his retinue, and he had full a hundred torches with his device; and the money for all this he borrowed on the allowance he was to receive later. What shall I tell you? A great feast began. And when they were in the cathedral where the Duke was to be knighted, the archbishop said mass and the arms of the Duke were on the altar, and all men were in expectation of the Duke being dubbed knight, and wondered, thinking the King of France and the Emperor had a dispute, for each would think it a great honour that the Duke should wish to be knighted by his hand. And as all were thus waiting, he had micer Bonifazio of Verona called, and he came at once and the Duke said to him:—"Micer Bonifazio, sit here, by the side of the archbishop, for I wish that you dub me knight." And micer Bonifazio said:—"Ah, my Lord, what are you saying? Are you mocking me?" "Assuredly not," said the Duke, "I wish it to be thus." And micer Bonifazio, who saw that he meant to stand by what he said, approached the archbishop at the altar and there he dubbed the Duke knight. And when he had dubbed him knight, the Duke said before all:—"Micer Bonifazio, it is the custom that those who dub a knight always give a present to the new knight they have made. But I wish to do quite the opposite; you have made me knight, wherefore I give you here fifty thousand sueldos torneses of yearly income for ever, from this day onward, to you and yours, all in castles and important places and free fiefs, to do as you like. And again I give you to wife the daughter of a certain baron who has remained in my power, and who is mistress of the third part of the island and city of Negroponte." And so, see how he endowed him in one day and in one hour, for it was the most splendid gift any prince had made in one day for a long time and it

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

was a new and strange thing. And thereafter micer Bonifazio lived rich and wealthy, and the Duke, in dying, left the care of his soul to him and made him procurator of the Duchy, until the arrival of the count of Brienne.

And so you can have understood whose daughter the wife of En Alfonso Federico was. Now I shall cease to speak to you of all the affairs in Romania and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord King of Mallorca and of the Lord King of Sicily.

CHAPTER CCXLV.

How a peace was negotiated between the Lord King of Aragon and the King of Castile, with a covenant that the eldest son of En Jaime of Aragon should marry the daughter of King En Fernando of Castile.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon[1] had taken the Kingdom of Murcia from King En Fernando[2] of Castile and had devastated much of his territory, the Lord Infante En Pedro of Castile and others of Castile saw that the war with Aragon did them no good and they, and in particular Don Enrique who was very old and wise, negotiated a peace with the Lord King of Aragon; so that peace was 1309
made in this manner; that the eldest son of the King of Aragon, called the Infante En Jaime,[3] was to take to wife the daughter of King En Fernando as soon as she was old enough; and they delivered her at once to the Lord King of Aragon, who had her brought up in Aragon. And the Lord King of Aragon gave up the Kingdom of Murcia to King Don Fernando, except what was of his conquest, which the Lord King En Jaime, his grandfather, had given as a dower with one of his daughters

[1] Jaime II. [2] Fernando IV. [3] He eventually became a monk.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to Don Manuel, brother of King Don Alfonso[1] of Castile; and, as that lady had died childless, the territory should have gone back to the Lord King of Aragon. And because of the great friendship between the Lord King En Jaime and King Don Alfonso, his son-in-law, and between him and the Infante Don Manuel, the Lord King now wished to recover this territory and with good reason and right. So, in that peace, he recovered it, and it is Alicante and Elche, and Aspe, and Petrel, and the valley of Elda and Novelda and Mola and Crivillente, and Abanilla and Callosa and Orihuela and Guardamar.

CHAPTER CCXLVI.

How it was arranged between the Lord King of Aragon and the King of Castile that they should march resolutely against the King of Granada, because he had broken the truce; and how the King of Castile went to besiege Algeciras and the King of Aragon, Almeria.

AND when he had signed the peace, the Lord King of Aragon thought that, as he was at peace with all peoples, he would attack the Saracens, namely the King of Granada, who had broken the truce when the King of Castile had left him; therefore he wished to take a complete revenge for this.

1309 And he arranged with the King of Castile that they should march resolutely against the King of Granada in this manner, that the King of Castile, with all his power, should go and besiege Algeciras de Alhadra,[2] and the Lord King of Aragon should go and besiege the city of Almeria. And so it was ordained and promised by both Kings, that this should be done on a fixed day, and that neither should abandon the war nor his siege

[1] Alfonso X El Sabio. [2] Alcira.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

without the leave of the other. And this was wisely ordained in order that the King of Granada should be obliged to divide his followers in two parts. And so it was done; the King of Castile went to besiege Algeciras and the Lord King of Aragon, Almeria, which is a very 1310
fine city. And the siege lasted full nine months; the Lord King conducted it with catapults and with mangonels and with all the apparel belonging to a siege. The Lord King of Aragon came to it very powerfully apparelled, with many Catalan and Aragonese richs homens and barons. And amongst others came the Lord Infante En Ferrando, son of the Lord King of Mallorca, very richly apparelled with a hundred armed horse and with many men afoot and with galleys and lenys which brought the horses and victuals and companies and catapults. For the Lord King of Mallorca wished him to come to the assistance of the Lord King of Aragon well arrayed at all points, as one who was himself one of the most accomplished knights of the world. And this was well apparent in all the feats which fell to his share in the siege, for, amongst other affairs, he had three times encounters with the Moors and he carried off the palm of chivalry from all men.

CHAPTER CCXLVII.

How the King of Castile raised the siege of Algeciras without the knowledge of the Lord King of Aragon and how the Lord King of Aragon fought a battle at Almeria against the Saracens and the Infante En Ferrando killed the son of the Saracen king Godix; and how the King of Granada begged the Lord King of Aragon for a truce.

It happened one day, on the eve of Saint Bartholomew, that the Moors had all got ready, all there were in the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Kingdom of Granada, against the Lord King of Aragon, through the fault of the King of Castile, who raised the siege he was conducting without letting the Lord King of Aragon know anything about it. And it was a great crime of the King of Castile not to let the Lord King of Aragon know that he was raising the siege, for it put the Lord King of Aragon into great hazard; he was surprised by so many people who came upon him, a thing he had not expected. And so all the power of Granada came, on the eve of Saint Bartholomew, upon the host of the Lord King of Aragon. And he, when he saw this great power, marvelled much; but he was nothing dismayed by it, but ordained that the Lord Infante En Ferrando should stay with his company near the city, at a place called the esperonte[1] of Almeria, in order that if anyone should attempt to issue from the city to attack the besiegers whilst he was fighting with the Saracens, the Lord Infante should prevent it. And I wish you to know that it was the most threatened point there was, and therefore the Lord Infante chose it, otherwise he would not have remained there. What shall I tell you? When the Lord King was ready with all his host to attack the host of the Saracens, there came out of Almeria by the esperonte, a son of the King of Guadix with full three hundred horsemen and many afoot, wading through the sea, with water up to the horses' girths. And the cry of alarm arose in the tents of the Lord Infante. And he, very handsomely arrayed, with his company, issued forth with all his chivalry in very good order. And when the Moors had passed the esperonte, this son of the Moorish King, who was an expert knight and one of the handsomest of the world, came on first with a javelin in his hand, crying:—"Ani be ha Soltan!" No other words issued from his mouth. And the Lord Infante asked

[1] The esperonte was a projecting angle in the centre of the curtain, or in front of a door.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

"What is he saying?" And the interpreters who were near him said:—"My Lord, he says that he is a King's son." Said the Lord Infante:—"He is a King's son, and so, too, am I." And the Lord Infante rushed towards him and before he could get near him, he had killed more than six knights with his own hand and had broken his lance; and then he seized his sword and, sword in hand, made room for himself, until he came to him who was shouting that he was a King's son. And he, seeing him come and knowing that he was the Infante, came towards him and gave him such a blow with his sword that the last quarter of the Infante's shield fell to the ground (and it was a most marvellous blow) and he cried:—"Ani be ha Soltan!" But the Lord Infante gave him such a blow with his sword on the head that he cut it open to the teeth, and he fell dead to the ground. And at once the Saracens were discomfited and those who could return by the esperonte saved their lives, but the others all died and so the Lord Infante overcame those of the city.

And whilst this clamour at the esperonte was going on, the Moors of the host were preparing to attack, and the Lord King wished to attack, but En Guillem de Anglesola and En Asberto de Mediona dismounted and seizing the King's bridle said:—"My Lord, what is this? On no account do this; there are those already in the van who will attack and do it well." The Lord King was so desirous of attacking that his heart was nearly broken. And I tell you that if he had not had those richs homens and other honourable men to hold him back, he would not have refrained, but he could not help himself. And so the van attacked amongst the Moors and vanquished them; and, assuredly, the Moors would have lost all their chivalry on that day, had it not been that the pursuit had to stop, for fear that others might come and attack the besiegers from another side.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Nevertheless innumerable Moors died that day, horse and foot; it was the greatest feat ever done and the greatest victory. From that day the Moors so feared the Christians that they dared not resist them. What shall I tell you? The Lord King returned with all his followers, with great joy and gladness, to the tents where they found that the Lord Infante En Ferrando had performed as many feats of arms as Roland could have done, had he been there. And on the following day they celebrated worthily the feast of the blessed Saint Bartholomew, apostle.

And when the King of Granada saw the marvellous deed performed by the Lord King of Aragon and his followers, he held himself for lost, for he had not thought at all that there was so much strenuousness and so much valour in them. And so he chose his messengers, whom he sent to the Lord King of Aragon to tell him that he begged him to raise the siege, for winter was coming upon him; and that he might see well that he was working for people in whom he would find no merit; that the Castilians had raised the siege of Algeciras in order that the King of Aragon and his followers should be killed; that this conquest was not worthy of him; and so he begged him to be pleased to make a truce with him. And he offered always to support him in war against all the men in the world, and again that, for love of him, he would liberate all the Christian captives he had, which was a considerable matter.

And when the Lord King had heard the message, he called his council together and put before them what the King of Granada had sent to tell him. And in the end the advice was that, for three reasons especially, he should return to his country. The first reason was that winter was coming upon him; the other was the great ingratitude the Castilians had shown him; and the third was the surrendering of the Christian captives, which was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

a greater thing than if he had taken two cities of Almeria. And so it was agreed and the truce confirmed.

And so the Lord King had all his followers collected with all their property. And when they were collected the Lord King, with all his followers and all their property, returned, some by sea and some by land to the Kingdom of Valencia. And so you may understand whether the Lord King of Aragon is desirous of increasing and multiplying the Holy Catholic faith, when he went to conduct a siege in a conquest which was none of his. You may all be certain that, if the Kingdom of Granada had been of his conquest, it would long ago have belonged to the Christians.

And when this was done the Lord King of Aragon returned to Valencia and the Lord Infante En Ferrando, with his galleys and his followers, returned to Roussillon, to the Lord King his father, who had great joy in seeing him, and especially as he had so well performed his tasks.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily.

CHAPTER CCXLVIII.

How En Roger de Luria, son of the admiral En Roger de Luria, with the help of the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily, went to raise the siege of Jerba which was besieged by the King of Tunis and how, passing through Naples, he died and the territory was left to his brother, En Carlet.

It is the truth that at the time the Lord King of Aragon went to Almeria, the Lord King of Sicily was not altogether at peace; rather, it happened to him according to the saying of Catalonia that, sometimes, a man does not know whence evil and trouble come to him. And so it happened to the Lord King of Sicily, for he was well at peace and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

yet he came to have plenty to do and plenty of trouble; however, all that happened to him he accepted to the glory of God and of the Holy Catholic faith. Now I shall tell you the matter.

It is the truth that the island of Jerba, as you have heard before, was held by the admiral En Roger de Luria. And when the admiral died En Rogero, his son, kept possession of it, but, through the fault of officials, the island rebelled against him. He went to Jerba with six galleys and many armed lenys, by the help of the Lord King of Sicily, who had affianced to him one of the daughters he had by my lady Sibilia de Solmela before he was married. The castle of Jerba was being besieged. The King of Tunis had sent there El Lahieni, a great moab of Tunis, with a host of Christians and Saracens, and he had laid siege to the castle and was shooting with four catapults, so that, altogether, he held it besieged full eight months. And when En Rogero had come to Jerba with the galleys, El Lahieni feared he would occupy the Sound between the mainland and the island; and he saw that, if he did this and cut him off this Sound they were all lost, and so he raised the siege and left the island and returned to Tunis. And En Rogero, who saw that he had gone away, sent to the old men of the territory and conciliated them and punished those who were guilty.

And it is the truth that Jerba is an island inhabited by good men of arms, but there are two factions in the island, one called Miscona and the other Moabia. And these factions are like the Guelphs and Ghibellines in Tuscany and Lombardy. And so likewise these factions of Miscona and Moabia have spread so much that they have spread to the mainland of Africa, as well to the Arabs as to the Moabs and Berbers. And I believe that, on the one side and the other, over a hundred thousand persons have been killed. And the head of these factions

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

is always in Jerba, for they began in Jerba and there they continue still and give favour and help to all those of their own faction. And the House of Bensimomen is head of the Moabias in Jerba and they are very loyal people and kind to Christians.

And when En Rogero had pacified the island, he returned to Sicily, for he had to celebrate his marriage. And King Robert summoned him to come to him at Naples, because En Rogero had twenty-three castles in Calabria. And so he went to Naples and there he was seized with illness and died, which was a great loss for, if he had lived, he would have been very like the admiral, his father. And his territory remained to his brother, En Carlet, who was a boy of twelve or fourteen, very worthy and wise for his age.

CHAPTER CCXLIX.

How the Misconas and some Moabias besieged the castle of Jerba and En Carlet, with the help of the Lord King of Sicily Fadrique, going to Jerba, expelled the chivalry and died a short time after; and how, Jerba rebelling a second time, the Lord King sent En Jaime de Castellar who also died there.

WHEN the Saracens of Jerba heard of the death of En Rogero, the wicked Misconas with some wicked Moabias, and also with the band of El Duyques, rebelled against the Christians and against the House of Bensimomen. They brought chivalry from Tunis into the island and again besieged the castle. And En Carlet, with the help of the Lord King of Sicily and of King Robert, went to Jerba with five galleys and lenys. And he expelled the chivalry of Tunis out of all the island. And so, likewise, he pacified the people of Miscona by the advice of the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

House of Bensimomen and pardoned them. And, the island settled, he returned to Calabria where he had left my lady Nangarina[1] de Entenza, his mother. And before long he also died, and left his territory to a very young son he had left, who at that time was not five years old and was called En Roger de Luria, like En Carlet's eldest brother. That is to say, he was christened Francisco, but when the brother died they changed his name at his confirmation, and he was given the name of Roger de Luria. And when the wicked Misconas knew what had happened, they rebelled against the Christians and against the Moabias. War began between them; there was no foreign chivalry, neither on one side nor on the other, except that Simon de Montoliu, who was commander of the island for En Roger, helped the Moabias with those of the castle, because of the House of Bensimomen. And the war being at this stage, micer Conrado Lansa of the castle Menart, who was guardian of En Roger in those parts, begged the Lord King of Sicily to be pleased to divert towards Jerba En Jaime de Castellar —an accomplished and expert seaman, who had equipped four galleys to go on raids to Romania—and to tell him to visit the castle of Jerba and give it all the aid he could, and likewise to the House of Bensimomen. And the Lord King, for love of En Conrado Lansa, and in order that the castle should hold out the better, granted this, and summoned En Jaime de Castellar and commanded him to pass by Jerba and comfort and help those of the castle; and then to go on his raid, for the galleys had been equipped with the money of the Lord King. And En Jaime de Castellar took leave of the Lord King and went to Jerba and when he was at the castle they persuaded him to go, banner unfurled, with all the galleys, with those of the castle and a party of Christians and with the Moabias against the Misconas; but the Moabias

[1] 'Saurina' further on.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

were vanquished; En Jaime de Castellar and over five hundred Christians were killed, which was a great loss and damage. And when the wicked Misconas had obtained this victory, they were fuller still of devilry and pride and the maddest of all was a knave amongst the Misconas who was the chief and was called Alef. When they had thus discomfited their enemies they proceeded to attack the castle daily. That knave wished to get possession of the island altogether.

CHAPTER CCL.

How En Simon de Montoliu asked the guardians of En Roger and my lady Saurina and the Apostolic and King Robert for help, who all said no to him; and how, they failing him, he came to the Lord King of Sicily, Fadrique, who had sent micer Pelegri de Pali with eighteen galleys to where he was defeated and taken prisoner.

THEN, when the Lord King of Sicily knew of the death of En Jaime de Castellar and the others, he was greatly displeased, but yet he was comforted, for they had done more than they had been commanded; for the Lord King had not commanded them to leave the galleys and fight on land.

And a few days later En Simon Montoliu saw the affair of the island was going badly, and especially that of the castle (the men of the castle were asking to be paid and he could not do it, for he got nothing from the island), and so he left in his place En Borde de Montoliu, his cousin-german, and went to Calabria, to my Lady Saurina, and told her the state of the castle and of the dominion, and asked her and micer Conrado Lansa, who was guardian of En Roger, to help him with money and men. And my Lady Saurina was not well provided with

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

money at that time; rather was she in debt and hampered by the fleet of En Carlet, which she had raised when he went to Jerba. And she was getting no revenue from Calabria, for all the revenue was assigned to pay the damages and debts of the admiral and of En Rogero. And so he sent to the Pope for help, but he said no. And so likewise to King Robert, who also said no. And in default of these, he came to Sicily, to the Lord King, and asked him for succour. And in the end the Lord King, for the glory of God and in order to save the people of the castle who were all Catalans, took possession of the island of Jerba in this manner: my Lady Saurina and micer Conrado Lansa and En Amigutxo de Luria, who were guardians of En Roger, should deliver the castle and all the island to the Lord King of Sicily, and all he advanced should be secured upon the island of Jerba and on the Kerkennas; and he should possess and hold them as his own property, until he was repaid all he had advanced, and he should be lord and chief of all. And, of this, proper documents were made and En Simon de Montoliu, who was holding the castle and was there at the time, was ordered to deliver up the castle and the tower of the Kerkennas. And the said En Simon took the oath and did homage to the Lord King, saying that he would surrender to him all that he commanded, namely the island and castle of Jerba and the tower of the Kerkennas.

And when this was done, the Lord King had eighteen galleys equipped and put on board a hundred horsemen, Catalans of good birth, and full fifteen hundred men afoot of our people, so that they were a strong force. And he put in, as captain of these people, micer Pelegri de Pati, a knight of Sicily, of Messina, and he had so much coin delivered to him that he would be able to pay the men of the castle and of the tower what was due to them. And so they took leave of the Lord King and landed in the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

island of Jerba, at a place called the Island of the Admiral, about five miles distant from the castle. And instead of going to the castle to refresh the men and the horses for two or three days, they penetrated into the island in a disorderly manner, imagining that all Barbary was afraid to oppose them; as, assuredly, if they had gone properly led, they need not have feared five times the number of people there were in the island. But, owing to the bad order amongst them, they marched without a leader, and the Saracens of the island, Misconas as well as Moabias, had retreated, except the old men of the House of Bensimomen who had gone into the castle. But when the Saracens saw the Christians come towards them without any order, they attacked the foremost. What shall I tell you? They defeated them at once, and they were full twenty-five miles from the castle. What shall I tell you? Micer Pelegri was taken prisoner and of all the Christian horsemen there did not escape more than twenty-eight, and the others were all killed; and of the men afoot, between Latins and Catalans, there died over two thousand five hundred. And so they were all destroyed. And then the insolent Misconas seized the island and Alef made himself lord of all. And he sent to Tunis and the King of Tunis sent him three hundred Saracen horsemen; and they so besieged the castle that not a cat could have come out without being taken prisoner. And micer Pelegri ransomed himself with the money he had brought for the men of the castle.

And so the galleys returned defeated to Sicily where there was much mourning and grief when this became known, and above all the Lord King was grieved. And micer Pelegri and the twenty-eight horsemen who had escaped from the battle remained in the castle. And if you have ever seen people get on badly with others, these did with the men of the castle; they were daily

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

on the point of cutting each other to pieces, and this happened because of the wives and mistresses of the men of the castle.

CHAPTER CCLI.

How En Simon de Montoliu entreated the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily of his mercy to bestow the castle of Jerba and the tower of the Kerkennas upon whomsoever he pleased; and how the said Lord King offered the conquest of Jerba to me, R. Muntaner, and I fitted myself out to conquer it.

AND En Simon de Montoliu returned to Sicily, to entreat of the Lord King's mercy that he bestow the castle and the tower of the Kerkennas on whoever he pleased, and to send pay; but the Lord King did not easily find one who would have the castle; and, again, I tell you that the Lord King did not find anyone who wished to go on board the galleys or lenys for Jerba. See in what hazard he was.

1310 And it is the truth that I, En Ramon Muntaner, came to Sicily at that time from Romania, and begged leave of the Lord King of Sicily to go to Catalonia, to my wife, who had been affianced to me in Valencia as a small girl full ten years before. And the Lord King said he was content. And so I had a galley of a hundred oars equipped, which was my own. And the Lord King commanded that, when I had equipped the galliot, I should go to him at Montalba, a place in the mountains thirteen leagues distant from Messina, where he was for the summer (and this was in July), for he wished to send presents to my Lady the Queen of Aragon and to the Infantes and he wished me to take them. And I told him I was ready to do what he commanded. And, at that
1309 time, the Lord King and my Lady the Queen were before Almeria. And so I had my leny equipped to go to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Catalonia and I bought all I wanted for celebrating my wedding. And when I had got everything ready at Messina and had fitted out the galliot, I went to Montalba, to the Lord King, to take leave of him. And when I came to Montalba, the Lord King had summoned En Simon de Montoliu and, the day after I arrived, the Lord King summoned me to his presence in the palace; and there were count Manfred de Claramunt, and micer Damian de Palafi and micer Horigo Roço, and many other richs homens of the island, and many Catalan and Aragonese knights, and many other people of quality; and so there were altogether, in that palace, a hundred worthy men of great account and many other people.

When I came before the Lord King he said to me:— "En Muntaner, you know the great damage and the great grief and disgrace We have suffered in the island of Jerba, and We feel it much that We have not been able to take vengeance for it. But We have set our heart on vengeance; wherefore We have reflected that We have no one in our Kingdom, who, with the help of God, could give Us better counsel in this than you, for many reasons. And especially because you have seen and heard more in wars than any men in our country; and besides, you have commanded men of arms for a long time and know how to manage them. And besides, you know the Saracen language; wherefore you can do your business in the island of Jerba without interpreters, about spies as well as in other ways; and there are many other good reasons in your favour. Wherefore We wish you, and beg you earnestly, to be commander of the island of Jerba and of the Kerkennas, and that you take up this matter boldly and willingly. And We promise you that, if God brings you out of this war with honour, We shall send you to Catalonia for your marriage more splendidly than you could go

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

now; and so We pray you on no account say Us nay." And I, who saw that the Lord King had so much faith in me in these matters, made the sign of the Cross and went to kneel down before him and gave him many thanks for the praise he had been pleased to give me, and also for his trust that I should know how to conduct such great affairs. And I acceded to all he commanded in this matter and in all others, and I went to kiss his hand, and many richs homens and knights kissed it for me. And when I had consented, he called En Simon de Montoliu and commanded him before all to give up to him the castle of Jerba and the tower of the Kerkennas, and to deliver them to me in his name, and to swear fealty and homage to me, and also that I should hold the castle in my own name, and that, together with me, he should go to Jerba and to the Kerkennas and surrender them to me. And so he swore and promised and did homage to me. And the Lord King had the charters made for me at once and gave me as much power as he had himself; thus he retained no appeal whatever, and gave me power to bestow grants in perpetuity and to take in my pay whatever followers I wished, and to make war and peace with whoever I pleased. What shall I tell you about it? He sent me with full powers. And I said to him:—"Lord, you have yet more to do, namely to send orders by your letters to the treasurer and the portrieve and all the officials and all your other officials on the outer coast, that everything I ask for in my letters be sent to me, money as well as victuals and everything else I shall need; and to command now at once a ship to be loaded with wheat and flour and another with oats and vegetables and cheeses and another with wine, and that they sail immediately." And the Lord King commanded that this should be done at once and I said to him:—"Lord, I have heard that there is great famine and scarcity of victuals in

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the island of Jerba and all the district, and also on the mainland, wherefore these victuals will cause them to fight with each other." The Lord King understood that I spoke well, wherefore he provided me with all things better than lord ever provided vassal, so that I wanted for nothing.

And so I took leave of him and went to Messina. And when I came to Messina I wanted to go on at once. But all those Latins who should have followed me, proceeded to return to me all the money they had accepted; they said they did not wish to go and die in Jerba. Their mothers and wives came to me, weeping, begging me to take back my money for the love of God; all complained that they had lost their father or their brother or their husband. So I had to take back my money from them all and had to make fresh contracts with Catalans.

CHAPTER CCLII.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, went to Jerba as commander and received the castle and the homage of all who were there; and how I summoned the Misconas and Alef, their chief, three times and defied them and drove them into a corner of the island where there was such a famine amongst them that they made bread of the sawdust from the palm trees.

THEN, when I had fitted myself out, I departed from Messina and En Simon de Montoliu, in another armed leny, one of his own, departed together with me. And in a short time we came to the island of Jerba. And when we came to the castle we found before it, on a raid, full four hundred Moorish horsemen of the King of Tunis, and all the Moors of the island; and we found the gate of the castle closed. We landed at once and entered the castle; and I assure you that I found as

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

great a war inside as out, namely between the knights and squires who had escaped from the defeat and the men of the castle. But before I acted in any way, I received the castle and the homage of all there; and then I gave a letter of the Lord King to micer Pelegri de Pati and to the other knights and squires, in which the Lord King commanded them all to do me homage by hand and mouth and to look upon me as upon himself; and so they at once fulfilled the command of the Lord King.

And when I had made them do all this, some willingly, some by force, I established peace amongst all and took care that, thenceforth, no man should annoy another, neither for the sake of a woman nor for any other reason. And when I had done this I gave pay and succour to all. And, meanwhile, the Lord King had sent me the three loaded ships, as I had ordained. And as soon as I had the ships, I sent my armed leny to Gabes, where all the old men of the House of Bensimomen were, in a castle of an Arab friend of theirs who is a great lord in those parts and is called Jacob Benatia. And as soon as they had the letters which the Lord King sent them and mine, they went on board my leny and came to me. And whilst the leny was going to them I had stakes fixed in front of the castle, at the distance of about a cross-bow shot, and I ordered that, under penalty for treason, no man should go outside without my consent, for any reason. And I ordered all those in the castle to go out for tourneys, always a squire with a cross-bowman; we had tourneys twice every day. And we were about thirty armed horse and had about fifteen light horse in the castle; and so we began our defence well and in order; we met constantly outside. Nevertheless I, meanwhile, cited the old men of the island of Jerba in the name of the Lord King of Sicily to come to me, and I sent letters to all, to tell them that the Lord King bid them obey me in all things as they would obey him.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And all the old men of Moabia came to me, as well those who were outside the island as those who were in it, and I forgave all of them all they had done. And I had, at once, a fosse with a wall of stone and earth made outside the castle, and within this fosse and wall I had many huts made, of planks and matting and branches. And all they of Moabia came to me in the night with their wives and children and I gave, at once, rations of flour and vegetables and cheeses, which were coming in abundantly. And so, likewise, I sent to tell the traitor who was chief of Miscona, namely Alef, to come to me; but he would not. However, two old men of Miscona came to me, but their followers would not leave the others; and of these two one was Amar Ben Buceyt and the other Barquet. What shall I tell you? I had not been in Jerba a month before I had in my power, altogether, three hundred men of Moabia with their wives and children.

And when all this was done, I summoned the said Alef and those of Miscona three times, before I did them any ill, but they would not come in to mercy. And when I had summoned them three times and they would not come in to mercy, I defied them, and put two hundred Arab horsemen in the island, all expert knights, who were friends of the House of Bensimomen and were on the side of Moabia. And I gave each one besant a day, which is worth three sueldos, four diners of Barcelona, and oats and a ration of flour and of vegetables and of cheeses. And when this was done and I had two hundred knights in the island with those of Moabia, I proceeded to make raids, so that we attacked them in every place in the night. What shall I tell you? This warfare lasted fourteen months and we met once every day. And by the grace of God, in these fourteen months we took over seven hundred men of arms of theirs, between killed and prisoners, and discomfited them two or three times. They had full four hundred horsemen. What shall I tell you?

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

In the end we drove them to one end of the island and there was great famine amongst them, so that they made bread of sawdust from palm trees.

CHAPTER CCLIII.

How Alef left the island and collected full eight thousand horsemen with fourteen barges by whom the Christians of the country were discomfited; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, in person attacked them and vanquished them and obtained seventeen barges and took the sound.

AND, one day, the said Alef gave the people of Miscona to understand that he would go to fetch succour, and he left the island and went to Selim ben Margan and to Jacob Benatia and other Arabs and gave them to understand that, if they came to the island, they could take us all. Full eight thousand horsemen came to the sound and there I had two armed lenys and four barges, of which the captains were En Ramon Goda, and En Berenguer Despingals, into whose keeping I had delivered the sound. And when the Arabs got there, they asked Alef how they could invade the island. And he answered that he would soon defeat those of the country and that then they could invade it. What shall I tell you? He had fourteen barges and, that night, attacked the Christians. And the Christians were so taken by surprise at dawn, that they fled and so left the sound. And then he told Selim ben Margan and the others to come and invade the island. But they said they would first see what I would do; that he knew that if, when they were within, I took the sound from them, they would be lost, owing to the small amount of victuals they had; and so they would not come on that day.

And, soon, our men came to the castle, thus defeated;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and I was so angry that, for a little, I would have hanged the boatswains. And I, at once, entrusted the castle to micer Simon de Vayllguarnera and left him in my place and went on board one of the lenys, which was of full eighty oars; and I took the others with me and two armed barges besides and, that day, I came to the sound. And on the following day Selim ben Margan and the others said to Alef:—"What would have happened to us if we had been in the island? He would have captured us all." And said Alef:—"If I drive away again those of the sound, will you enter?" And they answered:— "Yes, assuredly."

He armed twenty-one barges and came towards us. And I made all the other lenys stay behind mine. And as they came on and were near me, I proceeded to attack amongst them in such manner that I sent full seven of the barges to the bottom, and I went charging them and attacking, here and there, with the other lenys and barges, so that they soon ran ashore. What shall I tell you? Of twenty-one barges that were there, not more than four escaped; in these the said Alef escaped on shore, namely on the island. His company was there but the Arabs were on the mainland, and so he dared not flee to where the Arabs were, who would have cut him to pieces. And, on that day, we killed over two hundred Moors and took seventeen barges. And from that hour all the country was conquered by us, for all held themselves for dead men and we had obtained the sound; thenceforth no one could go in or out without my consent.

And Selim ben Margan and Jacob Benatia and the others, who saw this, raised their hands to God in gratitude that they had not entered the island. And they sent me a man swimming, to say that if I pleased, would I come and speak to them on shore, trusting to their loyalty, and that they would come to me on board the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

leny. And I went to them and descended on shore, where they showed me much honour and gave me of their jewels; and then begged me to let a hundred horsemen come out, who were on the island with En Alef and who were kinsmen and vassals of Selim ben Margan, and as many of Jacob Benatia's. And I kept them entreating me long, and they would have given five thousand onzas in the name of the lords, to get them out of the island; and so in the end I granted it, pretending that I was reluctant and was putting them under a great obligation. I told them that I would bring them away in my barges and wished to be present in person, and that they should deliver to me two knights, and Jacob Benatia two more, who knew these men and watched so that no others were brought away, but only theirs. And they gave me many thanks. And when this was granted, there came other chiefs who were there, who asked me, some for ten, and some for twenty men; but I would grant nothing. And all threw themselves at my feet, and there was as great a crowd to kiss my hand as if I were a king newly come to his territory. And so likewise, in the end, I granted it to them all. What shall I tell you? All the chiefs had to promise me that, at no time nor for any reason, they and their people would go against me; and they put it in writing and promised and swore to support me with all their power against all the peoples of the world. And for this Selim ben Margan and Jacob Benatia and Abdela ben Bebet and En ben Marquen and the other chiefs did oath and homage. What shall I tell you? When this was done and put into proper form, all the four hundred horsemen who were of the faction of Miscona with En Alef left the island in my presence.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLIV.

How all they of Miscona with Alef wished to surrender to me, En Ramon Muntaner; and how the Lord King of Sicily sent micer Conrado Lansa with twenty galleys, with the object of taking vengeance on all; and how the command of the van was given to me, En Ramon Muntaner.

AND when this was done, I parted from them in great peace and love and left the sound well guarded, and I returned to the castle; for I held the affair for won, as indeed it was. And when I was at the castle, I had a message from those of Miscona and from En Alef, that they would surrender to me. But I would not pardon them without the knowledge of the Lord King and sent an armed barge to the Lord King Fadrique, to ask what he wished me to do, and to say that they were dead men and lost if he wished it, and that now was the time, if he wanted to take vengeance. What shall I tell you? The Lord King assembled his council who said that, on no account, should he receive them to mercy, that it would be a great disgrace to him if he did not take vengeance for the damage they had done him. And so he equipped twenty galleys and sent micer Conrado Lansa of Castell Menart to Jerba with two hundred armed horse of people of condition, and two thousand men afoot, besides those of the galleys; and he sent word to me, by the barge I had sent to him, that I should not, on any account, receive them to mercy, but, if they were dying of hunger, that, without seeming to know anything, I should let the Saracens who were with me give them succour of victuals. And this he commanded, in order that none should, because of starvation, leave the island in the night by swimming. And it was fulfilled as the Lord King commanded.

And one of the castle, who knew that the King was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

sending us En Conrado Lansa with that following, sent a messenger to the Lord King in an armed barge, begging him to give us the van of the battle, because of the hunger we had suffered full a year and a half, and because the Moors knew what sort of men we were. And this the Lord King granted us. And when I knew that micer Conrado Lansa was ready to come with all those people of condition, I paid the two hundred Arab horsemen who had been at the war with me (and who had served me as loyally as ever knights served their lord), all I owed them, and to each I gave, as a favour, victuals for fifteen days and food for their horses to take with them; and to each I gave an aljuba[1] of woollen cloth and another of linen and to each chief I gave one of scarlet silk cloth and another of shalloon. And I had them taken to the mainland and they went away so pleased with me that they offered me support against all men in the world. And I sent away the Arabs in order that the men of Miscona should hold themselves the more secure, and I had commanded that no one should do them harm.

In a few days micer Conrado Lansa came to Jerba with all that good company and landed at the castle. And there they set the horses on shore, and the horses were so afraid of the camels, that they were like mad when they saw them. It was arranged to put a horse to feed between two camels; this was the greatest trouble in the world. However, they became so reconciled to them that they fed together. What shall I tell you? For thirteen days we made the horses and people rest thus. And during these thirteen days the traitor En Alef came to put himself in the power of micer Conrado who promised not to kill him and that he would keep him in honourable captivity. The said Alef was false and cunning; he held his cause for lost and wished

[1] A Moorish garment also worn by the Christians in Spain.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

rather to put himself into the custody of the Lord King, for he knew well that, if he came into our hands, he could never set himself free again.

CHAPTER CCLV.

How we had a battle with the Moors of Miscona and defeated them and took twelve thousand people prisoners, what between women and children; and how the Lord King En Fadrique of Sicily by special favour gave me the island and the Kerkennas for three years.

AND so, on the eve of Ascension Day, we moved from the castle and, that day, went to pitch our tents at a distance of half a league from the enemy. And in the morning we went up to them and found them very well arrayed in order of battle; and they were altogether full ten thousand expert men of arms afoot and about twenty-two horsemen, no more. And they had put the old men and the women and children into a fine manor house there was in that place, and the men of arms had put themselves all in line, one knee firmly on the ground, well covered by their shields. And we had decided that of our Moors, namely of those on our side, there should be none there; and so we were on horseback about two hundred and twenty armed horse and thirty light horse, and about a thousand Catalan men afoot; the other men were in the galleys, guarding the sound. And we had ordained that, when we were opposite them, every man should grasp his arms when the first trumpet sounded and, at the second trumpet call, every man should be ready to attack and when the trumpet and nakers sounded that they should all attack, horse and foot. And we had put our foot-soldiers on the right, and on the left were all those on horseback. What shall I tell you? When

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the two signals were made, the Moors saw that, at the third we were to attack; they hastened and rose all together and attacked our foot-soldiers in such manner that they routed them. But we, who were in the van, attacked amongst them; we could not wait for the third signal, for we saw that all our foot-soldiers were lost if we did not attack. And so we attacked in such manner that we came right into the middle of them; and afterwards micer Conrado and all the others attacked, before the third signal could be made. And there we were all intermingled; you have never seen such fierce people as they were. What shall I tell you? Truly no man could be found amongst them who was not willing to die; they rushed about amongst us as a wild boar does amongst those who wish to kill him, when he sees himself at the point of death. What shall I tell you? The battle lasted from half tierce[1] until the hour of nones; and so, in the end, they all died; not one escaped who was on that battlefield, for all were killed. And, altogether, they killed, on our side, full sixty horses and fatally wounded full sixty more, and there were more than three hundred men of the Christians wounded, but, by the mercy of God, not more than seventeen died. And when all the Moors had been killed, we went to the fort and attacked it and in the end, took it and every man there was killed who was over twelve years old and we captured, between women and children, full twelve thousand people. And then we collected the booty and every man made his gain and his profit. And then we returned to the castle with great joy and cheer, and so did micer Conrado with all the people who had come with him, and also all those knights and sons of knights who were at Jerba, who had escaped from the battle of micer Pelegri; and they returned to Sicily safe and joyous, and took all the captives, male and female, with them.

[1] 9.30 a.m. to 9 p.m.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And I remained commander of the island as I was before, with only those who belonged to the castle. And I proceeded to people the island with those of Moabia in such manner that within that year it was as fully inhabited as it had ever been. And we were all at peace, so that the Lord King had as good a revenue from it than had ever come out of it. And so, see the favour God granted the Lord King, enabling him to take vengeance for what had been done against him, by which the Christians will, for all time, be the more feared and loved in those parts, and more considered. I brought Jerba to such a condition, and it is so still, that, if a wily Christian took with him thirty or forty Saracens tied together with a rope, he would meet no one who told him he was doing wrong.

Wherefore the Lord King in his mercy, when he heard from micer Conrado and the others what I had done 1310
in Jerba, gave me the island of Jerba and the Kerkennas by special favour for three years, with all rights and revenues, and with leave to treat it, for those three years, as my own property, in such manner, however, that I was to guard the castle and island at my own expense; and I was to go and fetch my wife, for he remembered well, like the good lord he was, the promise he had made me. And upon this I left, in Jerba, my cousin Juan Muntaner and, at the Kerkennas, another cousin-german of mine, called En G. Sesfabreques; and I went to Sicily and equipped a galley. And from Sicily, by the leave of the Lord King, with the grant of the said favour, I went to the Kingdom of Valencia, but landed first at the city of Mallorca, where I found the Lord King En Jaime of Mallorca and the Lord Infante En Ferrando. And if ever a man received great honour from lords, I did from them and they gave me of their property, in their mercy. And above all the Lord Infante En Ferrando made great rejoicing; he did

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

not know what to do, so great was his joy at seeing me. The Lord King, his father, said many times that I was the person he ought to love more, after the Lord Infante, than any man in the world. Indeed he gave me many thanks and many entertainments. So I went to Valencia and went to fetch my wife and did not stay more than twenty-three days. And then I embarked her in the galley and returned to Mallorca and found that the Lord King of Mallorca had died; that, on the day after
1311 my departure, he was attacked by an illness of which he died. God, in His mercy, keep his soul and absolve him, as the good and upright lord that he was. And so, likewise, I found there the Lord King En Sancho, to whom his father had left the Kingdom, but entailed on the Lord Infante En Ferrando if the said Lord King En Sancho died childless. And so likewise I found the Lord Infante En Ferrando. And if ever honour was shown to me by the Lord King, his father, much greater was shown to me and to my wife by the Lord King En Sancho. The Lord Infante En Ferrando, in his graciousness, sent many presents to my wife and the Lord King of Mallorca sent to me, in my galley, sixty baskets of bread and much wine and cheeses and three oxen and twenty sheep and much poultry; no other man so unimportant as I am could ever boast of so much kindness from such exalted lords. And so also the Lord Infante En Ferrando sent me, to my galley, all his own harness of arms and many other things.

And so I departed from them by their leave, and the Lord Infante En Ferrando entrusted to me two mountain falcons trained for chasing herons, which had belonged to the Lord King his father, and which he was sending to the Lord King of Sicily. And I went to Minorca and when I came to Mahon a message had come already from the Lord King of Mallorca, ordering great refreshment to be given to me in his name if I

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

returned. And if he had ordered it, well did his officials carry it out. And so, departing from Mahon, I came to Sicily and landed at Trapani and at Trapani I left my wife and, in my galley, went to Messina and found that the Lord King was at Montalba, a place in which he liked to spend the summer, and this was in July. And I went there and gave him the two falcons which the Lord Infante En Ferrando had sent him, and told him the news I knew of the Lords in the West. And then I took leave of him and, in his mercy, he gave me of his property and showed me much honour. And by his leave I went to Trapani with the galley and two armed barges which I had bought at Messina, and I brought away my wife and went to Jerba where a great feast was made for me and my wife. And, at once, they gave me and my wife jewels to the value of two thousand besants. And they of the Kerkennas likewise sent me their presents to the extent of their power. And so, with the grace of God, we stayed in good peace, cheerful and content, in the castle of Jerba all those three years for which the Lord King had given it to me. But later on I shall have to recount to you into what trouble and toil the island of Sicily fell again, and all those belonging to the Lord King.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the island and shall turn to speak of the affairs which accumulated upon the Lord King of Sicily. I do not wish to recount to you anything about many events which happened to me in Barbary, because no one should speak of himself, unless they are matters which concern a lord; wherefore I shall say nothing of events which happened to me, except when they are events concerning a lord.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLVI.

How the war between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert broke out again ; and how the Lord King of Sicily passed into Calabria and took castles and towns.

WHEN all this was over, not long after, the peace and
1313 truces between King Fadrique and King Robert[1] were broken, through the great guilt of King Robert. King Robert prepared to pass into Sicily. But the Lord King Fadrique, who knew this, and saw that the galleys of King Robert had cut his tunny nets and captured Sicilian lenys, passed into Calabria and took the city of Reggio by assault and the castle of Santa Agata and Castle Corlana and Motta and Stilaro and Labaynare and other places. And, because of this, King Robert proceeded to complete his preparations for passing into Sicily.

CHAPTER CCLVII.

How the Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca passed a second time into Sicily and of the honour shown him ; and how En Berenguer de Sarriá stayed at Palermo with his company and En Dalmau de Castellnou passed into Calabria as commander and proceeded to wage war.

AND the Lord Infante En Ferrando, son of the Lord King of Mallorca, who knew that his brother-in-law, King Robert,[2] was getting ready to pass into Sicily, apparelled himself with a good company and went to Sicily, whereat King Fadrique had great pleasure, when he saw him,

---

[1] He had succeeded his father, Charles II, in 1309.
[2] He had married Ferrando's sister, Sancha.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

because he had not seen him since he had passed into Romania for him. And so he gave him such a reception as a father would give to a son, and gave him the city of Catania with all civil and criminal jurisdiction for life; and, besides the city of Catania, he gave him two thousand onzas of yearly revenue from his coffers. And so they lived together with great cheer and great content until King Robert passed into Sicily; he came over with great power, for he came over with altogether more than four thousand horsemen of good birth, and innumerable men afoot, and with a hundred and twenty galleys and many ships, and lenys without number.

And it is the truth that, at that time, the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá had passed from Catalonia into Sicily with full three hundred horsemen and full a thousand Catalans afoot; and so had the noble En Dalmau de Castellnou, with full a hundred horsemen and two hundred men afoot and other knights. And the Lord King of Sicily could well say that no man did more for his Lord than the said noble En Berenguer de Sarriá did for him; for, in order to pass into Sicily, he gave up the command of the navy of the Lord King of Aragon and mortgaged all his land. And when those two richs homens came to Sicily, the Lord King ordained that En Berenguer de Sarriá should be at Palermo with his Company and that En Dalmau de Castellnou should be commander in Calabria and should go to Reggio and proceed to wage war in Calabria, as being one of the most expert knights of the world.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLVIII.

How King Robert passed into Sicily and landed at Palermo and took Castellamare and besieged Trapani; and how the Lord King sent the Infante En Ferrando to Mount Saint Julian whence he did great damage to the said King Robert.

AND so the Lord King Robert, when he came to Sicily, landed at Palermo and thought to take Palermo, but En Berenguer de Sarriá was within with his company and defended the city in such manner that King Robert fully recognised that he could do nothing. And he departed from Palermo and, by sea and land, went to a castle which is on the sea-shore between Palermo and Trapani, and is called Castellamare, in which there were about twenty men; and they surrendered. And when he had this castle, he garrisoned it well and thought he had all Sicily. And then he went, by sea and land, to besiege Trapani. And within Trapani was En Simon de Vayllguarnera, a knight of Peralada, very accomplished and expert in arms, very diligent, and a knight very learned in war; and so, likewise, there was there the noble En Berenguer de Vilaragut and, besides, full a thousand Catalans, horse and foot, expert in arms, who defended the city right manfully. King Robert set up his siege. And the Lord King Fadrique sent the Lord Infante En Ferrando with expert chivalry and almugavars to Mount Saint Julian, which was at a distance of a mile from the siege. And besides, En Berenguer de Sarriá came there with all his company and, from that place, they gave the host a very bad time. They attacked every day and surprised them ten or twelve times, and carried off pack-mules and people who were fetching grass and wood. They were having this evil time, and those within the city were giving them bad days and bad nights and they shot at each other with catapults.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLIX.

How whilst I, Ramon Muntaner, was in Jerba, the noble En Berenguer Carros came with a great force to besiege it for King Robert; and how, whilst I was thinking about defending myself, a messenger from King Robert came to Pantanella, whom he had sent to tell En Berenguer Carros to return to Trapani.

AND whilst the siege was being thus carried on, King Robert arranged to send the noble En Berenguer Carros with sixty galleys and four hundred horsemen and four catapults against me, to the castle of Jerba. And the Lord King, who knew this, sent me an armed barge by which he told me to clear the castle of Jerba of women and children and to prepare to defend myself well, for King Robert was sending those forces against me. And when I knew this, I hired from En Lambert of Valencia, who was at the city of Gabes, a ship called Ventura Bona, which had been mine. And I gave him three hundred gold doubloons and put into the ship my wife and two little daughters I had, one two years old and the other eight months; and I had them well accompanied and sent a great number of the women of the castle with them. And my wife was five months gone in pregnancy. And in the ship, which was well armed, I sent them to Valencia, coasting along Barbary. They were thirty-three days at sea from Jerba to Valencia, where they arrived safe and sound by the mercy of God. And when I had sent away my wife and had cleared the castle of the common people, I proceeded to set the said castle in order and to set up catapults and mangonels; and I had the cisterns and many jars filled with water; and I fitted myself out with all I needed. And besides, I had interviews with Selim ben Margan and with Jacob Benatia and with Abdela ben Bebet and with the other Arab chiefs who had treaties with me, and I told them that the time had

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

come when they could all become rich and could gain renown and glory for all time, and that they should aid me; and I told them of the forces coming against me. And if ever I saw worthy people take up my cause, they did, with great joy and cheer. And, at once, they took the oath and kissed me on the mouth and promised that, within eight days, they would be with me at the sound with eight thousand horsemen and they said that, as soon as I had sight or knowledge of the enemy in these waters, I should send to tell them and all would pass into the island in such manner that, when the enemy had landed, they would fall upon them in such wise that if any escaped from them, I should never trust them again. And also they said that they promised me that galleys and all else they took should be mine, that they did not wish to have more than honour and the gratitude of the Lord King of Sicily and mine. And so I concluded this matter with them. What shall I tell you? On the day they had promised, they were at the sound with over five thousand horsemen well apparelled. And you may say they came willingly and so did those of the island. And I had placed four armed barges at intervals from the King's Bay[1] to Jerba, with orders that they should come to me when they saw that fleet. And thus was I prepared.

And King Robert apparelled the galleys, as I have told you before, and En Berenguer Carros and the others who were coming, took leave of King Robert and of the Queen who was there. And they departed from the siege and came to the island of Pantanella, and the commander of Pantanella sent me a barge by which he let me know that the galleys were at Pantanella.

[1] "Per Scala del rey tro a Gerba." Bofarull says: "Desde el Rey à Gerbes" (from the Rey to Jerba). Scala, in Spanish, escala, has the meaning, amongst others, of a bay in which ships can ride at anchor; 'scala del rey" may therefore be taken to mean the King's bay. Buchon and the Barcelona edition have "El Bey."

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And I had great joy and great pleasure and at once let it be known to all the Moors who were there, who made a great feast. And so, likewise, I let the Arabs know and told them to be ready to pass over at the next message they had from me. And to them a day seemed a year.

And En Berenguer Carros had departed from Pantanella and there came to him messengers in two armed lenys whom King Robert had sent and by whom he commanded him urgently to return to him at Trapani with all the galleys; for the King of Sicily had armed sixty galleys to come against his fleet. And En Berenguer Carros returned to Trapani. And see how things happened to me; if they had come to Jerba, never would men have been so welcome as they would have been to me, nor have come so opportunely for my plans. But as I knew nothing and wondered why they delayed so long, I sent an armed barge to Pantanella and the commander let me know that they had been there and had gone away. And when I knew this, I sent the Arabs great refreshment of victuals and aljubes, in such manner that they all returned home content and ready to come to me at any time with all their forces if I needed them.

CHAPTER CCLX.

How the Lord King Fadrique of Sicily had sixty galleys armed in order to destroy all the host of King Robert; and how the Queen, mother of King Robert and mother-in-law of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord King of Sicily, knowing this, negotiated a peace for a year between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert.

It is the truth that the Lord King of Sicily knew that, in the host of King Robert, the greater part of the expert men, horse and foot, and the greater part of the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

horses had died, and that the fleet was almost wholly disarmed, partly through death, partly through sickness. And so he had sixty galleys equipped, what between Messina and Palermo and Syracuse and other places in Sicily, and when they had come to Palermo the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá and the noble En Dalmau de Castellnou and En Pons de Castellar and other richs homens and knights went on board. And the Lord King had come with all his forces to Mount Saint Julian and it was ordained that the galleys should attack all the host, and the Lord King and the Lord Infante En Ferrando, with all their forces, would attack the besiegers, so that, on one day, all those of King Robert should be killed or taken. And this was as easy to do as it would be for a lion to devour three or four ewes, for, assuredly, all would be lost. But when my Lady the Queen[1] (mother of King Robert and mother-in-law of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord King of Sicily), who was at the siege with King Robert, her son, and the Prince,[2] and likewise my Lady the Queen (wife of King Robert, sister of the Lord Infante En Ferrando and cousin-german of the Lords Kings of Aragon and Sicily) knew that all this was ordained, they, at once, sent their messengers to the Lord King of Sicily and to the Lord Infante En Ferrando who were not two miles away, and sent to beg them that this wrong be not done on any account and that, for the honour of God and for love of them, they consent to there being a truce between them for a year and that, during that year, all should be bound to keep the peace as ordained between them by the Lord King of Aragon; and that they would make King Robert and the Prince sign this in such a manner that no one could go back upon it.

[1] Maria, daughter of Stephen V, King of Hungary, widow of Charles II.
[2] Philip, Prince of Taranto, brother of King Robert.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And when the Lord King and the Lord Infante En Ferrando had heard the message, the Lord King held his council with the Lord Infante and with all the richs homens that were there, and sent a message to En Berenguer de Sarriá and to En Dalmau de Castellnou, who were already at the foot of the mountain with the galleys, to come to him. And so they did. And when all were assembled in council, the King told them the message which had come to him from the two Queens. And, when they had heard all, they held that, on no account, should there be a truce, but that they should attack; that the object would be gained for all time and that, at this juncture, he would take all the Principality and Calabria and all the Kingdom; and so, as God had brought him to this point, now was the hour to put an end to trouble. And in the end all the council was of this opinion.

And the Lord King, when he had heard their decision, took the Lord Infante En Ferrando by the hand and conducted him to a chamber and said to him :—" Infante, this matter touches you and me above all men in the world; wherefore I tell you that, for four reasons, we should wish a truce to be made. And the first reason is this: that we should make a truce for the honour of God, Who has shown us and shows us so much favour that we should acknowledge it, and His Christian people should not die through us. And the second is, that here are two Queens to whom we are much beholden, namely my Lady the Queen, my mother-in-law and mother of King Robert and mother-in-law of Our brother, the King of Aragon, whom I should honour as a mother; and so likewise the Queen, wife of King Robert, your sister, whom we must love and honour as a sister; wherefore we must do this thing for love of them. And the third reason is that, even if King Robert and the Prince do not act towards us as they should, yet we should

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

remember that they are uncles of the sons of the Lord King of Aragon, who is our eldest brother, and they are our nephews, whom we love as dearly as our sons; and so likewise they are uncles of our sons and brothers of the Queen, Our wife. And again, King Robert is Our brother-in-law and his son is Our nephew and yours, for he is your brother-in-law. Wherefore it seems to Us that we should not wish him to be killed or taken prisoner here, nor that he should have so much dishonour. The dishonour would fall upon Our families who have such great ties with them. And the fourth reason is that, if they are what they should be, they must ever after guard against causing Us any annoyance or damage. Indeed for all these four reasons I hold it well that, if you agree, we accept the truce."

And the Lord Infante agreed to what the Lord King held for well. And, at once, the Lord King sent his messengers to the Queens and granted them the truce; in this manner, however, that he did not give up anything he had in Calabria, except as the Lord King of Aragon should think well. And so it was granted to him. What shall I tell you? The truce was signed by the Queens, as had been proposed, whereat all those on the side of the Lord King of Sicily were greatly displeased and those on the side of King Robert very joyous, as men who had seen that they could not escape death or capture. And so King Robert and the Queens embarked and went to Naples and there were some who went by land as far as Messina and passed into Calabria.

And the Lord King sent the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá to Castellamare, which King Robert had garrisoned, and recovered the castle. And so King Robert had laboured and spent money in vain, as will always happen whilst God gives life to the Lord King of Sicily and his sons; for the Sicilians are so fixed in their love for the House of Aragon and of the Lord King Fadrique and his

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

sons that they would sooner let themselves be quartered than change the sovereignty. And it will never be found that a king can take away a kingdom from another king if his peoples themselves do not take it away. Wherefore King Robert laboured in vain, and so it will be always. Therefore it would be more sensible if, in his lifetime, he united his son in ties of love with his uncles and his cousins-german, for if he should quarrel with them, perhaps an Emperor will come from Germany who will want to take his inheritance from him; but if he finds him in amity with the Houses of Aragon and Sicily he would not do so.

CHAPTER CCLXI.

Treats of how the Lord of the Morea descends from the Duke of Burgundy, who was a grandson of the King of France, and from whom my lady Isabel, wife of the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca, descended in the direct line.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of this war, suspended by a truce, and must turn to speak to you of what happened to the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca.

It is the truth that, full two hundred years ago, barons of France went beyond sea to gain indulgences, of whom were chiefs and lords the Duke of Burgundy and a brother of his who was count de la Marche, and they were grandsons of the King of France, and the Duke was the eldest. And they went with, altogether, full a thousand French knights and with many men afoot. And they came to Brindisi where they embarked; but they had delayed their departure so much that winter overtook them. They were advised to await the spring, but they would follow no one's advice. And so they departed from Brindisi in many ships and went away in many lenys.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And a tempest overtook them and they had to return to Clarenza in the Morea.

Now it is the truth that, at that time, he who was the Greek Prince of the Morea and Duke of Athens and Lord of Salona and Lord of the barony of Matagrifon and Lord of the barony of Damala and Lord of the barony of Larissa and of Boudonitza and Negroponte, was a bastard son of the Emperor of Constantinople who had risen, with the country, against his father, the Emperor, and against the Holy Apostolic Father. And he was a man of bad life. And when the barons of France found themselves in so severe a winter and in such difficulties about their voyage, they sent a message to the Pope, that, if he pleased, they would take the country from that bastard, the son of the Emperor of Constantinople, and that they should obtain those indulgences they would have gained beyond sea, and that they would divide the country among prelates and bishops and archbishops of the catholic faith. What shall I tell you? The Pope granted them all they asked for.

And whilst they were sending their messengers to the Pope, the Emperor was in the Kingdom of Salonica, marching against his son; but he could not pass through Vlachia from the Principality of Arta, which was assisting his son, and so he did not know what course to take. And he heard that those two brothers, richs homens, grandsons of the King of France, were in the country with a great power. And he sent them messengers to say that, if they would destroy the traitor, his son, he would give them all the territory, free and exempt. And at this the richs homens had great pleasure, and they chose two knights who went to the Emperor with their messengers, to ask him to make out a formal charter of what he promised them. And the messengers went to the Emperor, and brought back, in a gold case, charters of the said grants with seals attached, and the Emperor sent

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

them also aid of money. What shall I tell you? Those two richs homens built a city which is now called Patras, and made it the seat of an archbishop, and they defied the son of the Emperor, who was called Andronicus.[1] And in the end he collected all his forces and part of the forces of the Principality of Arta and marched against them. And they issued forth to battle and it pleased God that this Andronicus was vanquished and died on the battlefield, he and all the chivalry he had in his territory and a great number of men afoot who were with him. And so these two lords took all the territory, which he had ruled; the common people had disliked him greatly, and so all surrendered to them cities, towns and castles, and those two lords divided the country between them; the Duke became Prince of Morea and the Count became Duke of Athens, and each had his territory free and exempt. And then they divided all the baronies and castles and villages, which they gave to their knights, so that they endowed them all in the Morea, and many others who came from France.

From these lords, therefore, the princes of Morea are descended and they have always since taken their wives from the best French houses, and so likewise the other richs homens and knights did not marry any lady who did not descend from French knights; wherefore it is said that the most noble chivalry of the world is that of the Morea, and they speak as beautiful French as in Paris. And this noble chivalry lasted until the Catalan company killed them all in one day,[2] when the count of Brienne attacked them, as I have told you already. And you may believe that they all died, not one escaped.

---

[1] The rebel was the Emperor Michael VIII's illegitimate son John. Andronicus was the eldest legitimate son and succeeded his father.

[2] In the battle of Kephissos (1311).

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXII.

How the barons of the Principality of Morea decided to make a marriage between the infant Princess of Morea and Philip, second son of King Charles; and it was so agreed and also that the son of the Count of Aria should marry the sister of the said Princess, Lady of Matagrifon.

AND so it is the truth that from that lord Duke of Burgundy, who was a grandson of the King of France, as I have related to you already, descended the princes of Morea, namely down to Prince Louis, who was the fifth prince in descent from that lord of Burgundy, grandson of the King of France. And this Prince Louis died, and no prince was left; but there remained two daughters of his; one was fourteen years old when he died and the other twelve. And the Prince left the Principality to the eldest, and, to the younger, the barony of Matagrifon; and he left the Principality entailed on the younger, so that if the eldest died without legitimate children, it should return to the younger. And so, likewise, he left the barony of Matagrifon entailed on the elder. And when the barons of the Principality had lost Prince Louis, who had been a very good lord to them, they considered to whom they could give the eldest daughter in marriage, to one who was a powerful lord, able to defend them against the Principality of Arta and the Emperor and the lord of Vlachia, for the Principality and the Duchy of Athens marched with all those. In old times the Duchy was held by the Principality, but since the partition made by the two brothers who conquered them, the count de la Marche had the Duchy.

What should I tell you about it? King Charles, at that time, had conquered the Kingdom of Sicily, as you have heard already, and was the greatest and most powerful lord in the East at that time. And this

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Lord, King Charles, had a son, called Philip, who was next to the eldest. And the barons of Morea thought that they could give the Princess to no one better than to monsenyer En Philip, son of King Charles, who was very wise and good. And so they chose an archbishop and a bishop and two richs homens and two knights and two citizens, and sent them to King Charles, to Naples, where they found him. And these messengers spoke of the marriage. It pleased King Charles much, for he knew that this girl was of his lineage, and that, besides, the Prince of Morea is one of the richest noblemen after the King. And so he granted the marriage of my Lady the Princess with monsenyer En Philip. But before they proceeded further, he summoned his son to his presence and told him that he had agreed to this marriage, if he wished it. And monsenyer En Philip answered and said that he was content if the King would be pleased to do one thing, namely to grant him a favour. And King Charles told him to ask for what he liked, it would be granted to him. And upon this he kissed his hand and said: "Lord, what I ask of you is this: you know well that, in my childhood, you gave me for companion the son of the count of Aria,[1] who is of my age, and if ever a man could hold himself pleased with a servant and companion, I hold myself pleased with him. Wherefore I pray you, Father and Lord, that he have to wife the sister of the Princess, with the barony of Matagrifon,[2] and that the two sisters be brides at the

[1] The variations of this name are numerous; chroniclers and historians give it indifferently the following forms: Aria, Adria, Andria, Larcha, Arcadia, and Achaia. The three last have no doubt been adopted on seeing that this title sometimes occurs in connection with the duchy of Clarenza, a country which is believed to have included Achaia. The two first are transformations of the third, the only one, in my opinion, which should be accepted, because it is very likely that it was derived from the ancient Andros, or Island of Andria, belonging to Athens, rather than from Achaia, for this was included already in the greater title of Clarenza.—Bofarull.

[2] Akova.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

same mass and that you dub us both knights on that day, with your own hand." And King Charles granted him this and sent for the messengers and confirmed also this marriage. And he commanded at once ten galleys to be equipped at Brindisi, to bring the two damsels to this place, Brindisi, and there King Charles and his son would await them, and there celebrate the wedding. And from Brindisi to the Principality it is not two hundred miles and so it was a neighbouring place. What shall I tell you? They brought the damsels to Brindisi and there King Charles dubbed his son a knight and afterwards his companion also. And monsenyer En Philip made a hundred knights on that day with his own hand, and his companion twenty, and the two sisters were brides together. And the feast was great that was made on that day and for eight days after.

And then they passed into the Principality with the ten galleys, and monsenyer En Philip was Prince of Morea and his companion lord of the barony of Mata-grifon. What shall I tell you? Monsenyer En Philip did not live long, but died and had no children. And then the Princess married a great baron of the lineage of the count of Nevers,[1] and by him had a daughter. And then this Prince died and the Princess, when her daughter was twelve years old, gave her to wife to the good Duke of Athens,[2] he who left the Duchy to the count of Brienne who was his cousin-german; for he had no child by the daughter of the Princess. And when the Princess had married her daughter, she went to France and married monsenyer En Philip of Savoy, and the two together came to the Principality. A short time after the Princess died of illness and left, in her will,

[1] The Princess Isabel married, as her second husband Florence, Count of Hainault and of Nevers. The titles were combined in one family in 1193 when Mahault de Courtenay, Countess of Nevers, married Philip of Hainault, second son of Baldwin II.

[2] Guy II.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

that her husband was to be Prince during his lifetime and, after his death, she left the Principality to her daughter, which she could not do, for it was to return to her sister who was alive, on whom her father had entailed it. And when the Princess died, the Prince was in France.

And at that time, the Prince of Taranto, brother of King Robert, had passed into the Morea to march against his brother-in-law, the Despot of Arta; and seeing the Principality without a lord or lady, he took it, for he found no one to oppose him. Monsenyer En Philip of Savoy, Prince of Morea, when he knew this, was greatly displeased. Not long after, the Prince of Taranto went to France. And the Prince of Morea appealed to the King of France about the Prince of Taranto, and how he had taken his Principality without sending him a challenge and, in the end, sentence was given that he should evacuate it. And so it was done. The Prince of Morea sent his representatives who received the Principality for him.

And, at that time, the Duke of Athens died childless 1309
and left the Duchy to the count of Brienne, his cousin-german, as I have told you already; and the Duchess, daughter of the Princess, was left a widow. Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Princess and must turn to speak to you of her sister.

CHAPTER CCLXIII.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca took to wife my Lady Isabel, daughter of the count of Aria and grand-daughter of the Prince of Morea; and how the Lady of Matagrifon endowed her daughter with the barony of Matagrifon and all rights she had in the Principality of Morea.

WHEN the son of the count of Aria had celebrated his wedding he entered into possession of the barony of

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Matagrifon and, if ever a lord proved himself worthy, he did; he was very wise and accomplished in all things, And he had, by his wife, a daughter called my Lady Isabel. And when his daughter was born, soon after. he died, whereat all his barons and vassals of the Morea were greatly displeased. And this count of Aria is of the lineage of the counts of Baux, which is the oldest and most honourable house of Provence and they are kinsmen of the Lord King of Aragon. And when the lady lost her husband she was much grieved and did not wish to take another husband. And when the Princess, her sister, died, she claimed the Principality; but those who held it gave her curt answer. She heard that the Lord Infante En Ferrando, son of the Lord King of Mallorca, was in Sicily and had neither wife nor territory. And she thought that there was no man in the world with whom her daughter would be so well situated, provided that he received, freely or by force, all her right to the Principality. And so she sent her messengers to the Lord King of Sicily and to the Lord Infante En Ferrando. In the end it was agreed that the lady and her daughter should come to Messina, and then, if the damsel was what she was said to be, the marriage would please them. The lady, with her daughter and full ten damsels and as many ladies, and twenty knights and twenty sons of knights, and other retinue came to Messina, where much honour was shown her. And when she was at Messina, the Lord King and the Lord Infante saw the damsel and, if they had given him the whole world, the Lord Infante would not have exchanged her for anything, but was so pleased with her that a day was a year to him until the matter was concluded. Indeed, he told the Lord King positively that he wanted this damsel to be his wife, and no other in the world. And it was no wonder if he was enamoured of her, for she was the most beautiful creature of fourteen one could see,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the whitest and rosiest and the best. And she was the most learned damsel, for her age, of any in the world. What shall I tell you? The Lady of Matagrifon endowed her daughter during her lifetime and after her death, with all the barony of Matagrifon and all the rights she had with the barony, to do and say according to her will, without any condition.

And when this was done and the documents made of the wedding gifts, by the grace of Our Lord the Lord Infante took my Lady Isabel to wife, with great ceremonies and a great feast made by the Lord King and my Lady the Queen and all the barons of Sicily and the Catalan and Aragonese and Latin knights and all the others of Messina; and the archbishop of Messina said the mass, and the feast lasted full fifteen days, so that everyone marvelled how pleased all were.

And when the feast was over, the Lord Infante took her to Catania with her mother, with all the retinue that had come with her, and gave her Catalan ladies and Catalan damsels, and wives and daughters of knights. And when they were at Catania the Lord Infante made great gifts to all who had come with her; and so they stayed full four months at Catania. And then the lady, mother-in-law of the Lord Infante, returned to the Morea with her retinue, cheerful and content, and the Lord Infante, cheerful and content, stayed with my Lady the Infanta. And it pleased God that she became pregnant, whereat great rejoicing was made when it was known. And when the lady was pregnant, the Lord Infante prepared to go to the Morea with full five hundred horsemen and many afoot.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXIV.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, sent a message to the Lord King of Sicily to entreat him of his mercy to allow me to go to Catania where the Lord Infante was with the Infanta his wife who gave birth to a son called Jaime; and how the said Lord Infante prepared to pass into the Morea.

AND whilst he was getting ready I heard of it at Jerba; and, however much had been given me, I would not have refrained from going to him, and, with him, wherever he wished to go. I sent a message to the Lord King, asking him to be pleased to allow me to come to Sicily. And the Lord King was content and I came to Sicily with all the elder men of the island, who came with me in a galley and a leny, and I left the castle of Jerba and the island under a good chief. And the first place at which I landed in Sicily was Catania. And there I found the Lord Infante well and cheerful and my Lady the Infanta pregnant; before eight days had gone by, she gave birth to a child and had a beautiful son, for which a great feast was made. And when I had descended from the galleys, I had two bales of carpets brought on shore, which came from Tripoli, and anibles and ardiens and almaxies and aquinals and mactans and jucies and jewels.[1] And I had all these displayed before my Lady the Infanta and the Lord Infante and presented them with all, whereat the Lord Infante was very content. And then I departed from them and went to Messina; the Lord Infante told me he would be there before fifteen days had gone by and that he wished to speak to me at length.

[1] 'Anibles,' short coats open in front; 'aquinals,' slippers worn over a kind of leather socks, called 'almaxies.' 'Mactans,' a piece of linen or cloth intended for the making of a garment. 'Jucies,' a waistcoat with sleeves worn by women over their dress; it was also the name of a jerkin with short sleeves worn under the coat of mail. 'Ardiens,' which means 'very modest,' may designate some article of dress giving a special appearance of modesty.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And, when I was at Messina, fifteen days had not gone by before a message came that my Lady the Infanta had had a beautiful son, born on the first Saturday in April of the year 1315. May God grant everyone as 1315
much joy as I had. And do not ask me if the Lord Infante was joyful and all they of Catania. The feast made in Catania lasted over eight days. And the Lord Infante had him baptised in the cathedral of the blessed Lady Saint Agatha and had the name of Jaime given to him. And if ever an infant was born endowed with all beauty, this Infante En Jaime was. What shall I tell you? When the Lord Infante En Jaime had been baptised and the lady was out of danger, the Lord Infante came to Messina. And when he was at Messina I offered myself to him, in person and property, to follow him wherever he pleased. He was very grateful to me for it and said to me:—"You have to go to the Lord King who is at Piazza, where you will find him, and give up to him the castle and island of Jerba and the Kerkennas, and then you will return to Us and then we shall settle all We have to do."

And so I took leave of him. And whilst I was taking leave of him, a message came to him to hasten to Catania, for my Lady the Infanta was ill, she had been seized with fever and dysentery. And so he rode and, that night, entered Catania. And when my Lady the Infanta saw him, she was better; but she made her will before she got worse, and then confirmed it; and she left the barony of Matagrifon and also all the rights she had in the Principality to her son, the Infante En Jaime, and, if the Infante, her son, should die, she left it to the Infante En Ferrando, her husband. Now it is the truth that it was full two months since her mother had died of illness at Matagrifon, but she knew nothing of it, nor did the Lord Infante wish anyone to tell her whilst she was pregnant, nor likewise after she had been delivered,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

until she had gone to mass. And therefore the Lord Infante had prepared everything for his journey, and only waited until the Infanta should have been delivered and had gone to mass; after which he and she were to embark at once. All things were ready for embarcation.

CHAPTER CCLXV.

How the Infanta, my Lady Isabel, wife of the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca, passed from this life; and how I, Ramon Muntaner, gave up the islands of Jerba and of Kerkenna to the Lord King of Sicily and went to where the Lord Infante En Ferrando was.

WHAT shall I tell you about it? The Infanta, as it pleased God, passed from this life thirty-two days after the Infante En Jaime, her son, was born; and she died in the arms of the Lord Infante En Ferrando. And he and all the city made the greatest mourning ever seen. And, with great ceremonies, as for one who was pure and had confessed and received Holy Communion and Extreme Unction, she was put into a beautiful tomb, near the body of the Holy Virgin, Saint Agatha, in the church consecrated to her in Catania.

And after this misfortune had happened, the Lord Infante came to Messina to embark and to go to the Morea. And I went to the Lord King whom I found at Piazza, and I went to Palermo and, in the presence of the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá and many other richs homens of Sicily and knights and citizens, I surrendered to him the castles and islands of Jerba and Kerkenna. And would it pleased God that all who wish us well may render as good an account of what is entrusted to them as I did to the Lord King of Sicily of the said islands, which I had held seven years;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

namely, first for two years during the war, and then three years, when he granted them to me by favour, and then for two years because of the war with King Robert.

And, as soon as I had surrendered the islands and had the letter of discharge, I took leave of the Lord King and returned to the Lord Infante whom I found in Messina, preparing to embark. And I told him that I had come to serve him and to go on board the galleys and also to lend him all I had. And on the day I told him this, he said to me he would answer me on the following day. And next day, when he had heard mass, he summoned a great number of knights and of men of good birth and before all he said to me:—"En Ramon Muntaner, it is the truth that you are the man to whom We are more beholden than to any other." And here he gave many good reasons and acknowledged how I had lost, in his service, all I had brought from Romania; and, again, that I was put into prison with him, and how King Robert had done me much hurt because of him; and how I had lent him of my fortune in Romania and given up all I had; and, again, how I had left all the charges I had in the Company for him, and many other services which I do not remember, which he heard I had done him; especially that, for love of him, I had given up the command of Jerba, which I had had for seven years; again, that I had lent him, at that juncture, all the money I had. "And so," said he, "so many are the services you have rendered me that I could not reward them at all. But now We have arrived at a case in which the service We beg of you will surpass all the other services you have rendered Us; and We beg you, in the presence of these knights, to grant Us this service." And I rose and went to kiss his hand and gave him many thanks for the praise he had given me and for holding himself well served by me. And I

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

said to him:—"Lord, command what you wish me to do; whilst there is life in me, I shall fail in nothing, Lord, that you command me to do." "Now know," said he, "what this is that We wish you to do for Us. We will tell it you. It is the truth that We have great need that you should go with Us on this journey; you will be much needed in it, and understand that We shall miss you greatly; but so dear is to Us that service that We wish all other things given up for it."

CHAPTER CCLXVI.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca entrusted to me, Ramon Muntaner, the Lord Infante En Jaime, his dear son, in order that I should carry him and deliver him to the Queen, his mother; and gave me full authority by a formal document to do whatever I wished.

"IT is the truth that God has given Us this son En Jaime, by my Lady, my wife, and so I beg you to receive him and carry him to the Queen, Our mother, and deliver him into her hands. And proceed to hire ships or fit out galleys or anything you know by which you consider you would go most safely. And We will write a letter to the honourable En Berenguer Despuig, Our knight-procurator, to give you all that you will have advanced and to believe all that you will tell him in Our name; and so, likewise, shall We write to my Lady the Queen, Our mother,[1] and to the Lord King of Mallorca, Our brother. And We will have a letter of full powers in the four quarters of the world made for you; namely, from East to West and from South to North, and what you shall promise or do or owe for Us to knight or man afoot or to any other person, We shall hold for well done and

[1] Esclaramunda, daughter of the Count de Foix.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

valid, and, on no account, will We fail in it; and We pledge to this all territories and castles and villages We have, or expect to take with the help of God. And so you will go with full power from Us. And when you shall have delivered Our son to my Lady Queen, Our mother, you shall go to your house and shall review and settle all your affairs; and then, when you have settled all your affairs, you shall come to Us with all the company, horse and foot, you can. And the Lord King of Mallorca, Our brother, will give you as much money as you shall ask for, to pay the Company you will bring Us. And this is what We wish you to do for Us."

And I, who heard these things, was much amazed at the great charge he was putting upon me, namely the charge of his son; and I entreated him to give me a companion. But he said that he would not give me a companion, but that I should get ready and should guard his son, as a man should guard his lord or his lord's son; and I rose at once and went to kiss his hand and I crossed myself and accepted this sacred command. And the Lord Infante at once commanded En Oton de Monells, knight, who was guarding his son in the castle of Catania, to deliver him to me; and that, from that day onwards, he should hold him for me and for no other person, and that, whenever I wished, he was to deliver him to me. And of that En Oton de Monells rendered me oath and homage and did as he was commanded. Wherefore, from that day onwards, the Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, was in my power, and on that day it was forty days since he was born and no more. And so likewise the Lord Infante En Ferrando had a procurator's charter drawn for me, as has been said already, with pendant seal, and all the other charters.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXVII.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca passed into the Morea and took Clarenza by force of arms and took all the district and how all they of Clarenza and of the Morea took oath to him as head and chief.

AND when this was done he embarked at a suitable hour in Messina and went to Clarenza and landed near the city, at a distance of two miles. And the host came out of Clarenza, with full two hundred horsemen, to defend it against him. What shall I tell you? The almugavars who were with the Lord Infante and the cross-bowmen landed and attacked these people, and they drove them away and cleared the place and meanwhile the horses were landed. And when about fifty horsemen had landed and the Lord Infante had put on his armour and was apparelled and upon his horse, he had the banner unfurled, for he would wait no longer for the rest of his chivalry; rather, he made his attack with these fifty horsemen and with the almugavars; and he proceeded to attack the enemy, and defeated them, so that they fled towards the city, and the Lord Infante and all his company followed them, attacking them and stabbing them. What shall I tell you? Together with them they entered the city and killed all they pleased, and they would have killed them all, but, when they were within the city, all the people cried:— "Mercy, Lord! mercy, Lord!" And upon this, he rallied his followers and forbade that anyone should be killed thenceforth.

And so the galleys and all his fleet came to the city and every one entered within. And the people of the city assembled and took the oath to the Lord Infante En Ferrando as lord, and rendered him all homage; and they knew well that to him belonged the Principality, through my Lady, his wife. And as soon as they of the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

city of Clarenza had taken the oath to him, he went to besiege the castle of Bellver, which is one of the most beautiful castles of the world and is near Clarenza. And he attacked it vigorously, and set up catapults and, in a few days, pressed it in such wise that it surrendered to him. And then he rode about the country, and all the places surrendered to him willingly, for he had had the testament of Prince Louis read publicly, which entailed the Principality on the Lord Infante's mother-in-law, so it belonged to her by the entail and because she long survived her sister the Princess, so that all knew the Principality was to return to her. And then he showed the grant that she had made of it, in her lifetime, to the Infanta; and then how, likewise, when she was dying, she made a will and left as heiress, my Lady the Infanta, her daughter; and then he showed how my Lady the Infanta, in her will, had left it to the Infante En Jaime, her son, and again that she entailed it upon the Lord Infante En Ferrando, if her son should die. And when the Lord Infante had demonstrated this in public in Clarenza, letters about it went through all the country. And so all understood that, by right, the Principality belongéd to his son, and failing his son, that it should belong to himself. And so all obeyed him as their natural and rightful lord; and the Lord Infante ruled them in truth and justice.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord Infante and shall turn to speak of his son, the Infante En Jaime.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXVIII.

How I, Ramon Muntaner, apparelled myself to pass into Catalonia with the Lord Infante En Jaime, to his grandmother; and how I had news that they of Clarenza had equipped four galleys in order to capture the said Infante; and how I landed at Salou on All Saints Day.

It is the truth that when the Lord Infante departed from Messina, I hired a ship of Barcelona, which was in the harbour of Palermo at the orders of En P. Desmunt, and ordered it to come to Messina and from Messina to Catania. And so, likewise, I sent there a lady of quality, a noble lady who came from Ampurdan and was called my Lady Agnes de Adri and had come to Sicily as companion of the noble Lady Isabel de Cabrera, wife of the noble En Berenguer de Sarriá, and had had twenty-two children, and was very devout and good. And so I obtained from the said Lady Isabel and from the said noble that they would leave her to me, and that I would entrust the Lord Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, to her; and, in their courtesy, they left her to me. And I entrusted the Lord Infante to her, for it seemed to me that she must know much about children; and also because of her worth and because she was of good and honourable lineage. And, besides, there was there a good lady who had been wet-nurse of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, whom my Lady, the Queen of Mallorca, had sent him when she heard he had married. And then I had other ladies, and the Infante had a good wet-nurse of good constitution, who was from Catania and nourished him abundantly. And besides his wet-nurse, I had two others put on board the ship, with their infants, so that if one failed the others should be ready. And I put these two on board with their infants, in order that their milk should not spoil,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

rather they should suckle their infants every day until they were wanted.

And thus I ordained my passage and fitted out the ship very well and put into it full a hundred and twenty men of arms of good birth, and others; and I put on board all we should want for our living as well as for defence. And when I had the ship ready at Messina, an armed barge came from Clarenza, which the Lord Infante was sending to the Lord King of Sicily to let him know the favour God had shown him. And so, likewise, he sent to tell it me at length, in order that I should be able to recount it to the Lord King of Mallorca and to my Lady the Queen and to his friends; and he sent me letters to give to my Lady the Queen, his mother, and to the Lord King of Mallorca, and he let me know that he begged me to leave Sicily soon. And, assuredly, I was hastening, but I hastened with greater joy when I knew these good news. And so I went to Catania by land, and made the ship sail from Messina and ordered it to come to Catania. And a few days after I came to Catania, the ship arrived and I made every one embark.

And when I wished to take the Lord Infante on board, En Oton de Monells assembled all the Catalan and Aragonese knights who were there, and the Latins and all the citizens. And before all he said:—"Lords, do you acknowledge that this is the Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando and son of my Lady Isabel, his wife that was?" And all said:—"Yes, for we were all at his baptism, and have seen him since and know him, and are certain that this is he." And upon this, the said En Oton had a public letter made of it. And then he repeated the same words, and they answered him in the same way, and he had another letter made of it. And then again he repeated them once more and had another letter made. And then he put

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

him in my hands and in my arms and wished to have another letter from me, to say that I acquitted him from the oath and homage he had rendered me and that I acknowledged having received the Infante. And all this done, I carried the Lord Infante in my arms out of the city, with over two thousand people following me, and I put him on board the ship, and all made the sign of the Cross over him and blessed him. And on that day a carrier of the Lord King Fadrique came to Catania, bringing from him two suits of clothes of cloth of gold and various presents for the Lord Infante En Jaime.

And so I set sail from Catania on the 1st of August
1315 of the year 1315. And when I came to Trapani I had letters which told me to beware of four armed galleys which had been equipped against me, to take the Infante; for they reckoned that, if they took him, they would recover the city of Clarenza. And I, who knew this, strengthened the ship yet more and put in much more armament and men. And I assure you we were ninety-one days without either I or any of the ladies on board going on shore, and we stayed twenty-two days at the island of Saint Peter and twenty-four ships, between Catalan and Genoese, joined us there, and we all departed together from the island, for they were all going West. And we had so great a storm that seven ships were lost and we and the others were in great danger. However, it pleased God that, on All Saints Day, we landed at Salou, without the sea doing the Infante any harm, nor to me, nor did he leave my arm, night or day as long as the storm lasted. I had to hold him because the wet-nurse could not sit up, so ill was she with the sea, and the ladies the same; they could not get up nor walk.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXIX.

Recounts how I, Ramon Muntaner, delivered the Lord Infante En Jaime to my Lady the Queen, his grandmother, who was at Perpignan; I delivered him with all the solemnity with which an Infante or a son of a king should be delivered.

AND when I came to Salou the archbishop of Tarragona, called monsenyer En Pedro de Rocaberti, sent as many sumpter beasts as were wanted and the house of En Guanesch was given to us for a lodging. And then, by short journeys, we went to Barcelona, where we found the Lord King of Aragon, who received the Lord Infante very well and wished to see him and kissed him, and blessed him. And then we went on, in rain and much wind and bad weather. And I had a litter made (in which the Lord Infante and the wet nurse went), covered with waxed cloth and over it scarlet silk cloth, and twenty men carried the litter hanging from their necks by straps. And we took twenty-four days to go from Tarragona to Perpignan. And, before we got there, we met Fray Ramon Saguardia with ten riders, whom my Lady the Queen of Mallorca had sent us to accompany the Lord Infante. Neither Fray Ramon, nor four carriers the Lord King of Mallorca sent us, parted from us until we came to Perpignan. And when we came to Boulou, to cross the waters of the river,[1] all the men of Boulou issued forth and the principal men took the litter and passed the Lord Infante over the river in the litter suspended from their necks.

And that night, the consuls, with a great number of the notables of Perpignan and all the knights who were there, came to us, and many more would have come out, but the Lord King of Mallorca had gone to France. And so we entered the town of Perpignan

[1] The Tech.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

with great honour shown us and we went to the castle where my Lady the Queen, mother of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, was and my Lady the Queen, wife of the King of Mallorca. And both, when they saw us going up to the castle, descended to the chapel of the castle. And when we came to the gate of the castle, I took the Lord Infante in my arms and there, with great joy, I carried him into the presence of the Queens who were seated together. And may God give us such joy as my Lady the Queen, his grandmother, had when she saw him so beautiful and good, with his pretty, laughing face, and dressed in cloth of gold with a Catalan cloak and long fur robe and a handsome cap of the same cloth on his head. And when I came near the Queens, I knelt down and kissed the hands of both, and made the Lord Infante kiss the hand of my Lady the Queen, his grandmother. And when he had kissed her hand, she wished to take him up in her hands, but I said to her :—" My Lady, by your leave and mercy, be not displeased that, until I have relieved myself of the charge I hold, you do not have him." And my Lady the Queen laughed and said she was content. And I said to her :— " My Lady, is the Lord King's representative here ? " And she said :—" Yes, Sir, behold him here." And he stepped forward and, at that time, the King's representative was En Hugueto de Totzo. And then I asked for the bailie and the magistrate and the consuls of the town of Perpignan, and they also came ; and I asked for the public notary, and he came. And, besides, there were present many knights and all the burgesses of Perpignan. And when all were present, I summoned the ladies and wet-nurses and knights and sons of knights, and the wet-nurse of monsenyer En Ferrando and, in the presence of the Queens, I asked them three times :—" Do you acknowledge that this child I hold on my arm, is the Infante En Jaime, eldest born of the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca, and son of my Lady Isabel, his wife?" And all answered yes. And this I said three times, and each time they answered that, assuredly, he was he I said he was. And when I had said this, I told the clerk to make me a public letter of it. And then I said to my Lady the Queen, mother of the Lord Infante En Ferrando:—"My Lady, do you believe that this is the Infante En Jaime, son of the Infante En Ferrando, your son, whom he had by my Lady Isabel, his wife?" "Yes, Sir," said she. And three times thus likewise, in the presence, of all, I asked her and so likewise she answered me yes, that she knew it to be so, and that "assuredly this is my dear grandson, and as such I receive him." And of that I had a public letter made, witnessed by all the aforesaid. And I said:—"My Lady, do you declare me, in your name and in that of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, worthy and loyal and acquitted of this command in all I was bound to you and to the Lord Infante En Ferrando, your son?" And she answered:—"Yes, Sir." And thus likewise I spoke three times and each time she answered that she declared me worthy and loyal and acquitted, and that she absolved me of all I was bound to towards her and her son. And of that also a letter was made.

And when all this was done, I delivered the Lord Infante to her at the proper time and she took him and kissed him more than ten times; and then my Lady the young Queen likewise kissed him more than ten times, and then my Lady the Queen took him back and delivered him to my lady Pereyona,[1] who was near her. And so I departed from the castle and went to where I was to lodge, namely in the house of En Pedro Batle; and this was in the morning. And after dining, I went to the castle and gave the letters I was bringing

[1] Pereyona, woman of Pereyo or Perello.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

from the Lord Infante En Ferrando to my Lady the Queen, his mother, and also those I was bringing to the Lord King of Mallorca,[1] and told her all the message which had been entrusted to me. What shall I tell you? I stayed fifteen days at Perpignan and, every day, I went twice to see the Lord Infante, for my grief was so great when I parted from him, that I did not know what to do with myself; and I should have stayed there longer if it had not been that the Feast of the Nativity was approaching. And so I took leave of my Lady the Queen and of my Lady the young Queen and of the Lord Infante and of all those of the court and paid all those who had followed me and took back my Lady Agnes de Adri to her village and to her house near Bañolas. And my Lady the Queen was very pleased with me and all the others. And I went to Valencia, where my house was, and came there three days before the Nativity, in good health and cheerful, by the favour of God.

And it was not long before the Lord King of Mallorca came from France and had great pleasure in his nephew, and, at once, like a good lord, he, with my Lady the Queen, ordained his life as was suitable for the son of a king.

CHAPTER CCLXX.

How the Lord Infante En Ferrando of Mallorca sent for knights and men afoot; and how before they came to the Morea the said Infante passed from this life and all the territory was seized by monsenyer En Juan brother of King Robert.

AND much time had not gone by when the Lord Infante sent a message to the Lord King of Mallorca, to send him, through me, knights and men afoot. And my Lady

[1] Sancho I.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Queen and the Lord King of Mallorca sent to tell me to get ready and to provide a good company of horse and foot to take to him and that he would have about twenty thousand libras given me in Valencia for raising companies. And I provided myself with a company at once and helped many with money of my own. But fifteen days had not gone by, when an order came to me by a runner, not to do anything in the matter; that Arnaldo de Caza had come from the Morea in the big ship of the Lord Infante, and that he, with the said ship, would get people in Mallorca, for he would pass that way and so, in an unlucky hour, they revoked the command and I did not go. And En Arnaldo de Caza made agreement with one man and another in Mallorca and stayed so long and delayed so much that, when he came to the Morea, the Lord Infante had passed from this life, which was the greatest loss the House of Aragon had had for a long time in the death of a king's son. And I do not say to you that that house alone suffered loss, for the whole world did. He was the most accomplished knight and the bravest of any king's son in the world at that time, and the most upright and the wisest in all his acts. And his body was carried to Perpignan and it was well for my Lady the Queen, his mother, that she knew nothing about it, for God had taken her to His Holy Kingdom. And it can be said of her that she is a saint in Paradise, for there was not in the world another so devout and humble or a better Christian. And so she went to Paradise before she saw the mourning for her son. And the body of the Lord Infante was placed in the church of the Preachers at Perpignan. God keep his soul and put him amongst the saints in Paradise.

And, when he had died, it was not two months before 1316
the other prince died.[1] And then all the country was

[1] Louis of Burgundy.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

seized, and to-day monsenyer En Juan,[1] brother of King Robert, holds it. May God in His mercy bring a time when it shall return to that Lord Infante En Jaime, whose it should be by right.[2] And God grant me to see it and to enable me, a grey-haired man, to help with the small power and knowledge He has entrusted to me.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of these Lords of the House of Mallorca and shall turn to speak of the Lord King of Aragon and his sons.

CHAPTER CCLXXI.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon agreed to send the Infante En Alfonso, his son, to conquer the Kingdom of Sardinia and Corsica with the assistance given him by the Lord King of Mallorca with twenty galleys.

IT is the truth that the Lord King of Aragon, seeing his
1322 sons grow big and tall and accomplished, convoked Cortes in the city of Gerona, at which the Lord King of Mallorca and all the barons of Catalonia were present. And there it was announced that he would send his son, the Lord Infante En Alfonso, to conquer the Kingdom of Sardinia and Corsica which should be his; because it seemed to him and his people that it was a great reproach to him that he had not conquered it, as he had called himself King of Sardinia so long.[3] And there, in the end, all held it for well, and above all the Lord King of Mallorca offered to him to equip twenty galleys at his own expense and to provision them; and that he would send two hundred horsemen and men afoot. And when he had

[1] John, Count of Gravina in Apulia.

[2] The Infante Jaime succeeded his uncle Sancho I as King of Mallorca in 1325, and was dispossessed of his kingdom by his cousin and brother-in-law Pedro IV of Aragon, in 1344.

[3] Sardinia and Corsica had been bestowed on Jaime II of Aragon by Boniface VIII in 1297.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

made this offer, all the richs homens and citizens and bishops and archbishops and abbots and priors offered him support of contributions; so that the succour the Lord King found in Catalonia was marvellous. And so, also, he came to Aragon and there likewise great offers were made to him; and the same in the Kingdom of Valencia. What shall I tell you? Every man exerted himself so much that it may be said that no lord ever had such handsome aid from his subjects as he had from his. And at once, at a suitable hour, he came to Barcelona and had sixty galleys and many armed lenys made, and hired many ships and terides and ordained that they should go with the Lord Infante, and also others from Aragon and Catalonia and from the Kingdom of Valencia and from the Kingdom of Murcia. And so, likewise, the Lord King of Mallorca had twenty new galleys made and then fitted out the knights and the other companies and he went with the chivalry and had a recruiting table set up. And as soon as the galleys were finished and the men had all been enlisted and the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Alfonso and the Lord Infante En Pedro likewise had gone here and there settling the journey, all hastened to it as much as they could.

And it is the truth that everyone is bound to advise his lord for his good in all he is able, the great as well as the small; and if, peradventure, he is a man who cannot speak to the king, if he knows anything useful he must tell it to another who shall tell the king; or he must send and tell it him in writing; and then the Lord King is so wise, that if he recognizes that it is good, he will do it, if not, he will refrain; and he will remember that this man will have said it with a good intention and will have eased his conscience and will have done his duty. Wherefore I, when the journey was announced, made a sermon which I sent to the Lord King and to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the Lord Infante by En Comi, for the ordaining of the said good expedition, which admonition you shall hear now. And he carried it to Barcelona for I was not well enough to ride or go there.

CHAPTER CCLXXII.

Recounts the sermon which I, Ramon Muntaner, sent to the Lord King, about the expedition to Sardinia and Corsica, by way of advice to give to the Lord Infante En Alfonso, or at least to remind him of everything.

I.[1]

In the name of that true God who made Heaven and the thunder,
In the metre of Guy de Nanteuil[2] I shall make a fine sermon
To the honour and praise of the House of Aragon.
And in order that suitable be the salutation
Let every one of you say, if you please: the Virgin grant us
Sense and understanding to work for our good,
In this world and the next, and that to salvation
May come every count, viscount and baron
Who in this fine expedition of Sardinia, without reserve
Engages himself and his land and his property;
And follows the noble Infante En Alfonso, who is its gonfalonier,
And gives all Spain increase and glory.
From East to West and South to North
Will tremble all those who under the sceptre
Of his valiant father, King En Jaime, are not yet.
And I wish you all to know that this is the lion
Of whom the Sibyl tells us; he with the device of the pales,[3]
Will cast down the pride of many a noble manor.
Who they are I will not tell now; you well understand me.

[1] This chapter is very imperfectly preserved in all the editions of the Chronicle, and only an approximate rendering can be offered.

[2] A poem by Hugo de Villeneuve of which a MS copy of the XIVth century is in Venice, in the Biblioteca Mariana. This MS had been the property of the Venetian family of Recanati.—Bofarull.

[3] An allusion to the coat of arms of Catalonia.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

II.

And now I wish you to know my meaning ;
For all the discourse consists only
In the points which I will tell you truly.
The first is, the person who preaches to the people,
The second, the people who well hear and understand him,
The third is the moral which from the sermon results.
Then about the first, I tell you it is foolish
To send up another into the pulpit, when he knows himself
How to speak with certainty for and against his proposition
And knows how to forward his purpose.
Of the second, the people who, without murmur,
Must all listen to it very peaceably
For he knows how to turn it to their improvement.
But amongst these his preaching is worth but little,
For the Gospel says that the seed is lost
Which is cast among stones and thorns and rocks.
And the third, I tell you, should be the foundation
Of the proposition he expounds, if he tells it truthfully.
Wherefore on this I shall found my discourse and be brief
About this fine expedition which is pleasing to us all.

III.

Then, Lord Infante, as from your vassal,
Hear my reasoning, for plenty of toil
Have I seen in this world, more than any of my kind.
And therefore be pleased to consider the sea ;
From it take your succours who will make many an assault.
Put no tersols into the fleet and so, successful
Will be your feats ; no hauberk or helmet
Will resist you, if twenty galleys the admiral
Causes to be made, light before the wind,
In which arbalesters will go as to a dance.
Their arms will not fail them, rather, strong in the battle
You will find them when needed, like a ready tool ;
All that comes before them they never miss.
Have them amongst your followers, Lord ; nothing more is
needed ;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

For all are of one mind, and none quarrel among them.
And so it is the truth that the value of a crystal
Is not prized higher by any in the world than is the fine coral
Fished in Sardinia taken with the metal
They can array for you, Lord with a rope ;
They bring it before you all safe and bright.

IV.

Therefore I have begun with what concerns the sea ;
For he must hold the sea who wishes to conquer
The Kingdom of Sardinia and make it tremble ;
And then all the world will tremble. But this you cannot do
Unless you take along your followers fresh for the attack, for the hitting.
And never with fresh tersols can a man go
If he makes them act as steersmen or arbalesters, who must ward off the blows.
Neither should sailors in the prow or rowers be put to the test,
For arbalesters should shoot at their ease
So that by sea or by land nothing can oppose them.
And upon this theme I could speak at length,
And give good reasons it is not for me to tell.
Therefore Lord Infante, Jesus Christ guard you.
All your followers hold in high trust,
And honour ; and power to the admiral give,
And let no other command there,
But he, after you, and thus honour
He will earn you in all affairs you wish to undertake.
A hundred galleys or more I know you can lead
Armed lenys, sageties[1] more than could be imagined.

V.

Fifty ships, Lord, I know you will take with you,
Lenys, strong terides, and many other vessels,
For in all of them, thank God, you have your followers.
Therefore be the embarking pleasant and free,
And let them be at Port Fangós promptly.

[1] Ferryboats for crossing rivers ; also, boats with lateen sails

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Let them come on a day assigned, and the big ships
Let, my Lord, be put in the bay, and then the skiffs,
In order that the enemy, always on the watch, may do you no harm
Nor damage. This I pray you: be on your guard,
For with treacherous people I tell you you will strive.
Wherefore it is necessary, Lord, that you remember
Not in their words nor in them to trust.
And all the galleys you shall keep close to the land
And so in the bay shall apparel them
To be thus ordained; and on guard you will put
Some four armed lenys, to whom a banner you will give.
This being done, then you need never fear
That hurt can do you any man whom you do not love.
Rather in God's keeping you will embark nobly.
May He give you honour and joy and all you shall wish.

VI.

And again I implore the Royal Majesty
That into each galley be ordained
Two steersmen and two men in the prow who, without any neglect,
Feed the horses, that not one be forgotten,
But that his needs be well supplied.
For the followers in the expedition, until they are used to it,
Have much to do for themselves, before they know well
Each his duty; let this be commanded them,
And so all will go fresh and rested.
And each knight be accustomed
That where his horse goes he shall be put
With all his company, in order that they be ready
With their horses all well arrayed.
And if it were done otherwise, it would be folly,
For the passage is brief; therefore, gay and content,
He will go with all his belongings, but if he were at a distance
He would sadly think that all was badly done
And he would not be dumb who wishes to go forward.
He who leaves his horse may consider himself lost,
He may come to a place where he will be despised.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

VII.

And to increase your power you will ordain, Lord,
That the almogatenes[1] and the other chief leaders
Of the almugavars, who are the flower of the world,
Go in the galleys, and ten companies of theirs
With each ; and the others, in great bands,
Will go in the ships, wherever honour calls them.
Let victuals be ordained, according to their value,
So that all have enough, great as well as small ;
And in each vessel let there be one who ordains
All those things which make welfare.
And into each ship, put, to inspire fear,
Three arbalesters de tour, and let who wishes you ill rue it.
And catapults, mangonels I pray you do not omit
Axes, layas[2] with a thousand good workmen,
You, Lord, shall take with you ; and a hundred tapiadors,[3]
Carpenters and blacksmiths who fear not heat.
And then, with God helping, you need have no fear,
For no towns nor castles, cities, manors nor towers
But will surrender to you, if with great grief
They do not wish to die or be disgraced.

VIII.

And when this, Lord, is done and accomplished
In the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost
And His sweet Mother, whom I pray not to forget you,
And all the saints with joy and delight
Keep you in their guard and hand, as the saying is.
The good King of Mallorca will make you such a feast
That all will tell you that nothing was lacking.
And after that, Lord, let all who wish cry, long and clear,
With faith : To the island of Saint Peter !
Refresh the horses if they have grown weak,
And, in the meanwhile, the fleet will get ready,
All vessels, to pass to Sardinia, great and small.
Ah ! he that sees that day will be full of joy

[1] Captains of the almugavars.
[2] Two-pronged hoes.
[3] Builders of cob walls.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

That so many counts and viscounts and varivesors come forth
So nobly arrayed, who heartily are pleased
To serve the most high Lord Infante, who is blessed
By all who see him, and is the most gallant man
Ever born, whom none have ever seen cast down
And, in deeds of arms, I know there is none stronger.

IX.

All the knights who with you will go
Are your countrymen and valiant and strong,
All of honourable birth ; there is no deceit in them ;
And they are two thousand of which no king can boast
That he has any as good, and there will be at the same time
Ten thousand almugavars who will always follow you
And many other retainers who will not ask
That you give them nought of your own, for in their hearts they have
No other wish than to serve you, as being truly
Your subjects and this they will show
If anyone opposes your demands.
Then, Lord, when all shall be in Sardinia,
In the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost,
Proceed to go by land to Cagliari, destroying
Towns, castles and cities which do not obey you.
At the same time the fleet to the said castle goes
And, within the palisade they shall find in the port,
They put themselves in line, as I have said before.
And you shall see arbalesters attacking the walls
Who down from the air would bring a little bird as it flies.

X.

And whoever is within Cagliari
Will have his heart gladdened when lands
The valiant admiral En Carros and puts on shore
So many brave Catalans who will have come by sea.
Cagliari will say nothing to us, for all the world will tremble.
No one can show me that, since the world was made,
Any man has made such an expedition with his own men only,
Without putting in any man else, nor bringing with him

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Any but people of his country. Then, what king could
Come forward who could do anything against him ?
Ah, when they see, at Cagliari, the standard appear
Up high on the mountain, fluttering so bright
And behind it all the host with many a banner
Of many an honourable man following it !
And after marching, I know his camp he will pitch,
The illustrious Lord Infante, who will greatly rejoice,
When by surrender or by force Cagliari he will enter.
And henceforth my advice I shall cease
For it will not be needed, for no one will know better
Than each man in his counsel, and God Who will guide him.

XI.

One thing, Lord, remember if you please ;
Do not forget what I shall tell you ;
That you leave no man of the Communes neither here nor there,
Neither in castle nor in town ; and I shall not be silent about it,
For it would not be right that I should be, because their heart true
Never will be ; wherefore I will show clearly
Much of their wickedness which in my time I have seen ;
For to the virtuous King, your Father, they have given many a strong proof
And to the virtuous King Fadrique they have caused dismay.
Covertly like thieves they do everything, so wickedly,
And recovered Monaco, whereat they were most joyful ;
To all your ancestors they were traitors.
Surely God will make them pay dearly, confounding them in this world.
From their false protestations there never comes
Naught but betrayed trust, and otherwise you will never find it.
But the Sardinians descend from your people here,
Wherefore show them favour, being their light and guide,
For they will be loyal. And I wish to tell you
In Corsica to put people from near Moncayo
And from the mountains, of whom each should be proved.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

XII.

Now I wish to conclude my admonition
And I pray God, Who is Light and true Splendour
That the noble Lord Infante be in His keeping,
And counts and viscounts, barons and all the prelates
Who go with him and all the Bernardine monks ;
And that shortly, with great joy, he send
Good news to his father, the virtuous King, who much
Anxiety will have, until he knows the true facts.
Then, Lords and Ladies, who are listening to this sermon,
Pray to God that a good issue come
To the houses of all friends and intimates.
And in order that this should from God be obtained
Let all stand up and all say
Of Paternosters three for the Holy Trinity,
In honour of His Mother who was without sin,
That she entreat her dear Son, that it be granted to us
And that the name of Aragon be exalted,
And that neither Pisans nor others may treachery
Carry out or ordain, and that Saint George going by the side
Of the noble Lord Infante, be his companion.

And, assuredly, I sent this sermon to the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Alfonso, in order that they should remember what it was necessary they should do. And if so be that my advice was not adequate, at least it was to remind them of things ; and so it was good, for one advice brings another, a better one ; for everyone speaks for or against. And there, by the grace of God, all I said in that sermon was carried out, except two things, of which I was greatly displeased and am still and shall be always. The first was that, as the twenty light galleys were not made, the admiral and the host suffered much annoyance and contempt from the Pisan and Genoese galleys, which they would not have suffered if they had had twenty light galleys. And the other was that, when the Lord Infante had landed with all his chivalry and men afoot, he did not

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

go straight to Cagliari, he by land and the fleet by sea; though the fleet, in fact, did go. If all had come to Cagliari together, by sea and by land, they would have taken it at once, before taking Iglesias, and the men would all have remained well and fresh, for they would have had with them all their goods and all their victuals and wine and medecines and preserves, which they carried in the galleys, whereas, in Iglesias, they had nothing they could use. And, so, only these two things I regretted greatly; but, nevertheless, by the favour of God, all turned out well. But it might have been well and better.

CHAPTER CCLXXIII.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso departed from Port Fangós and landed at Palmas dels Sols where the Judge of Arborea and a great number of Sardinians received him as their lord; and how he sent the admiral to besiege Cagliari.

It is the truth that when the Lord King and the Lords Infantes had collected and reckoned in their kingdoms all that was needed for the journey, the Lord King, together with them, ordained that, on a day assigned, all men should come to Port Fangós by sea and by land. And on this day which was ordained, and even before, every man came there. The people were so willing to go that it was not necessary to seek them in the country, but all came whom the Lord King and the Lord Infante had ordained. And I should not say those who were ordained to go, for three times as many came. And this was well shown at the embarkation, for more than twenty thousand men of arms had to remain behind, for neither the ships nor the galleys nor the lenys nor the terides could carry them. And so, with the grace

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of God, all embarked and the Lord King and my Lady the Queen and all the Infantes came to Port Fangós. And the Lord Infante En Alfonso took leave of the Lord King, his father, and of my Lady the Queen and of the Infantes, and so likewise did my Lady the Infanta. And the Lord King accompanied them to the armed barge where they assembled and embarked; and my Lady the Queen did the same. And so, at the suitable hour, the Lord Infante and my Lady the Infanta, his wife, embarked and everyone proceeded to do the same. And on that day they had fine weather and set sail. And when they were in the waters of Mahon, the twenty galleys of Mallorca and the ships and terides and lenys joined them. And the Lord King and my Lady the Queen stayed that day on the seashore, looking at them until they had lost sight of them, and then they went to the city of Tortosa and the other people all went home.

And the Lord Infante En Alfonso had fine weather and assembled all the fleet at the island of San Pietro. And when they were all assembled they went to Palmas dels Sols and there all the chivalry and the almugavars landed. And, immediately, the Judge of Arborea[1] came there with all his power, to receive him as lord, and a great number of all the Sardinians of the island and those of the city of Sassari surrendered to him. And there they made an agreement, by the advice of the Judge, that the Lord Infante should go and besiege Iglesias. And this the Judge did because, from Iglesias, much hurt had been done to his land, greater than from Cagliari or any other place. And so the Lord Infante set up his siege before Iglesias and sent the admiral with all the fleet to besiege the castle of Cagliari, with viscount Rocaberti who was already besieging it with two hundred armed horsemen and two thousand men

[1] Sardinia was divided into four judicatures, each under a Judge who was a veritable sovereign.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

afoot, whom the Lord Infante had sent previously in ships from Barcelona. And they sat down before Cagliari and were already holding it so closely that every day they captured men out of it and had taken from them a great part of the huerta. And when the admiral arrived you may reckon that, what between him and the viscount, they pressed them hard. And there were, within, over three hundred horsemen and full two thousand men afoot.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the viscount and the admiral who agreed very well in all things, as they were cousins-german, and must turn to speak to you of the Lord Infante.

CHAPTER CCLXXIV.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso took Iglesias and went to besiege the castle of Cagliari and erected opposite the said castle of Cagliari another castle, with another town, called castle Bonaire.

WHEN the Lord Infante was besieging Iglesias he attacked it every day and shot with catapults and constrained them in such manner that they had plenty of misfortune and so much distress that, assuredly, they did not know what to do. But the Lord Infante and all his host likewise had so much sickness, that the greater part of his followers died of illnesses and he, himself, was very ill. Assuredly he would have been in great danger of dying, if it had not been for the great care of my Lady the Infanta. To God and her all must be grateful for his life.

But, however ill the Lord Infante was, for no physician or other man, would he leave the siege; rather, many times with the fever upon him he would put on his armour and order an attack. By his good endeavour and his

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

expertness in chivalry he reduced the town to such a state that it surrendered to him. So the Lord Infante and my Lady the Infanta and all the host entered the city of Iglesias and garrisoned the fort well with our people, and left there those it seemed to the Lord Infante should be left; and so he left a commander there and also one at the city of Sassari. And then he came to Cagliari and built, opposite the castle of Cagliari, a castle with a town and gave it the name of Bonaire. And he besieged Cagliari so closely that not a single man dared come out, wherefore it can clearly be seen that, if he had come there first, he would have taken Cagliari more quickly than he took Iglesias. What shall I tell you? They of Cagliari suffered great trouble and were awaiting succours which were to come from Pisa, which succour arrived a few days after the Lord Infante had entered Cagliari.

CHAPTER CCLXXV.

How count Ner came to succour Cagliari with full eight hundred German knights and four hundred Pisans and six thousand men afoot and thirty galleys; and how they fought with the Lord Infante En Alfonso, and the count fled and all the Germans and Pisans were killed and the count died a short time after from the wounds he had received.

AND the succour was this: that the count Ner[1] came as captain and brought full twelve hundred horsemen, amongst whom were eight hundred German knights, who are considered the most accomplished knights of the

[1] Villani says he was the son of Count Nieri (syncope of Raynieri or Rayner) who was then the chief lord of the Commune of Pisa, and Captain General of their household troops. In other histories and chronicles, amongst them in the Chronicle of Don Pedro IV, he is called Manfred, son of Guido. Both Count Raynieri and Count Guido were of the family of the counts of Donoratico, and it is by that name that he is mentioned by Moisé and Buchon.—Bofarull.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

world, and the others were Pisans; and he brought full six thousand men afoot with some wicked Sardinians who joined them and who were from the country towards Cabo Terra; and also of those retainers of Tuscany and Mantua with long lances, each one of whom is considered as good as a knight; and thirty-six galleys, what between Pisans and Genoese; and many terides and lenys which were carrying knights and horses. And they came to Cabo Terra and there set on shore the chivalry and all the foot-soldiers and three hundred cross-bowmen who were there.

And when they had set them on shore, all the shipping went to the island of Rosa, where there is a good harbour, and the terides were all fortified with castles and were placed in the bay ready for defence. And when this was done the galleys went towards the castle of Cagliari and the Lord Infante had thirty galleys armed, and no more; and he, in person, went on board the galleys and issued forth to fight with the Pisans and the Genoese and many terides and lenys which were there; but they were so courteous that they did not wish to await them, rather they went away as a good horse goes away from before foot-soldiers. All that day they kept at this, that, when the Lord Infante made his men row, they fled, and then returned when they liked. The Lord Infante saw that he could not alter this; he left the galleys and ordained how every part of the siege should be carried on. Within the castle there were full five hundred horsemen, and over two hundred who had entered, who had been at Iglesias. And so the force within was great; wherefore the Lord Infante thought that, on no account, would he let those who had come join those within, and he established the siege in such wise that, if any within issued out to succour those without, the besiegers could prevent it. And whilst the Lord Infante was ordaining this, the galleys of the Pisans and the Genoese came to

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

where the galleys of the Lord Infante were. And the admiral En Carrós dismantled all his galleys, except twenty, into which he mounted, thinking they would accept battle; but this they would not do. The admiral sent them a message that, if they wished to fight him, he would meet them with fifteen galleys; but that they would not do either. And then the Lord Infante and the admiral recognized that they lacked the twenty light galleys which I had said in my sermon they ought to have, for, assuredly, if they had had them, even forty Pisan or Genoese galleys had not dared to come; for, whilst those twenty had occupied them, the others would have attacked them in the rear. And so you can understand what a mistake that was. Now I shall cease to speak to you of the galleys and must turn to speak to you of the Lord Infante and his enemies.

When the Lord Infante had ordained with the admiral the matter of the sea and of the siege, and that the admiral should be commander of all, he decided who should go with him. He did not wish to have with him more than four hundred armed horses and fifty men on light horses and about two thousand men afoot, what between almugavars and retainers.

And in the night he issued forth from the siege and placed himself where count Ner had to pass to go to the castle; and all night he stayed in battle array. And at dawn they saw count Ner coming, his men formed in line, marching as well as ever you saw men march in battle array. And the Lord Infante, who saw them, likewise ordained his battle and gave the van to a nobleman of Catalonia, called En G. de Anglesola, and he, with his banner, with all the chivalry, came in close formation with all the soldiery on foot in the van where he saw the others had theirs. What shall I tell you? The hosts approached each other and count Ner, by the advice of an expert German knight called Horigo, who

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

had come out of Iglesias and knew the Lord Infante, ordained that twelve knights should be at the orders of the said German, Horigo, and should have no other object than the person of the Lord Infante. But likewise it was ordained that twelve men afoot should not leave the stirrup of the Lord Infante, and that well-known knights should guard his person and his banner, for the Lord Infante did not leave his banner. What shall I tell you? When the hosts were near each other, each proceeded to attack most vigorously; no more cruel battle could ever be seen, nor one in which one came against the other so resolutely. The Germans and our chivalry became so mingled that the twelve knights with the German, Horigo, came to where the Lord Infante was. And the Lord Infante, who knew that they were coming specially for him, gave the first of them such a blow with his lance, that he thrust it right through him, so that he cast him dead to the ground. And then he seized his mace and rushed upon another and gave him such a blow on the helmet he was wearing that his brains issued out of his ears. What shall I tell you? With his mace he cast four men dead to the ground. And then the mace broke and he seized his sword, and cleared such a space for himself that nothing could resist him. And when seven knights of the twelve saw that the other five had been killed by the hand of the Lord Infante, and saw the marvels he was performing, they agreed that they would all attack his horse and bring him to the ground. And so they did; all seven together attacked his horse and killed it and the Lord Infante fell to the ground together with the horse; and, at this same juncture, they killed the horse of his standard bearer, and the standard fell to the ground. And when the Lord Infante fell to the ground, his sword fell out of his hand in the fall. He kept hold of only half; the other half was gone; it had broken in two pieces. But he did

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

not lose his presence of mind, rather he freed himself from the horse which was lying upon him. He was very strong and the bravest knight in deeds of arms of any in the wórld. He drew the bordon he wore in a belt and, seeing his banner on the ground, bordon in hand he went to lift it up; he raised it and held it in his embrace. And upon this, one of his knights, called En Boxadors, dismounted from his horse and went and took the banner, and gave up his horse to the Lord Infante; and the Lord Infante mounted at once and made two knights take the banner. And when he had raised the banner and had mounted, he saw before him the seven knights and recognised the German, Horigo, and with the knob of the bordon fixed against his chest, he rushed towards him and gave him such a blow in the middle of the chest that he pierced him through and through, and he fell dead to the ground, so that he could never go back to Germany to tell news of this battle. What shall I tell you? When the said Horigo's companions saw him dead, they wanted to flee, but they fled towards the Lord Infante and those who were with him, in such wise that all twelve remained there, and of these twelve, seven died by the hand of the Lord Infante.

And, when these had been killed, the Lord Infante rushed on with his banner and then might you see feats of arms, for never could so great a deed be seen performed by so few men. In this attack the Lord Infante met count Ner, and hit him so hard through the first quarter of his shield with a lance he had taken from a retainer of his, that he cast him to the ground. And this was a great feat of arms. By sheer force the Germans and Pisans mounted count Ner who had more than ten wounds. And, when he found himself on horseback, he left the battle with about ten horsemen, whilst the press was great, and fled to the castle of Cagliari. And he found the chivalry of the castle of Cagliari, full five

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

hundred men, outside, awaiting what would happen they dared not go forth to the battle, because if they did, the admiral En Carrós would immediately attack them in the rear. And the admiral could not leave the siege either, and so they had all plenty to do. When they of Cagliari saw count Ner they held their cause for lost. What shall I tell you? The battle was very hard; the Germans and the Pisans suddenly drew away to seize a hill, but the Lord Infante and his men did so also, so that it seemed like a tournament, and they watched each other. Now I shall speak to you of the men afoot.

When the almugavars and the retainers saw the battle of the knights begin, about two hundred proceeded to break their lances in half and went amongst the knights to hamstring horses; and others attacked the footsoldiers so vigorously that each one threw down one with his dart, and then they threw themselves upon them in such wise that, in a few hours, they had them discomfited or dead. Thus full two thousand men were drowned in the marsh and the others were all killed, and of those who fled or hid among the bushes when they entered the island, or wherever they were found, not one was taken alive, for they were all killed.

And when the Lord Infante and his men had rested a little, they rushed in close formation upon the enemy, and the enemy did the same, except about eighty horsemen of count Ner who, not finding him while the battle was hard and cruel, fled to Cagliari; but the others fought on. And if the first assault in the battle had been vigorous, more vigorous still was that of the second, with so few people. The Lord Infante was wounded in it, in the face, by a bordon. And when he saw the blood run down his face, I need not tell you he was provoked to an angry mood; no lion ever went for those who had wounded him as he did for these men.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

What shall I tell you? He made great thrusts with his bordon. Woe to him he reached, for one blow was enough. What shall I tell you? He went about the field, now here, now there, nothing could resist him; he and all his men fought vigorously, all did well, richs homens, knights and citizens. The others were all dead and vanquished; there did not escape, what with those who entered Cagliari and those who fled to their ships, more than two hundred. And these likewise would not have escaped, if it had not been the doubt the Lord Infante had of the siege. And so the Lord Infante and his men searched the field, and, with great joy and great gain, returned to the host. And the fleet of the Pisans turned, full of grief, and fled and they came to Pisa with their bad news, which they brought themselves. And the Lord Infante sent an armed leny to Catalonia, to the Lord King, his father, and let him know all the event as it had happened, and requested him to send him twenty light galleys, because of the great insults he had had to endure from the galleys of the Pisans.

And when the Lord Infante had returned to the siege, I need not tell you whether he pressed Cagliari hard. All the Sardinians who were in the island surrendered to him. And the Judge of Arborea came there with all his power on the second day after the battle and had great joy and pleasure in the victory God had given to the Lord Infante. Nevertheless he was much displeased that he and his men had not been there, but, assuredly, it was not his fault, for when the Lord Infante had taken Iglesias, by his leave the Judge returned to his property to visit his places and, as soon as he had visited them, he assembled his forces and came to Cagliari. You may therefore understand that he remained away from the battle for two days; however, when he came to the host of the Lord Infante with all his power, the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Lord Infante and he and the admiral and the other richs homens between them pressed Cagliari so hard that those within were on the point of death. A day came when those within saw count Ner had died of the wounds he had received in the battle; and of those who had entered Cagliari, there were few who were not carrying a royal device on their bodies, namely the royal device of the fair lance cuts and fair sword cuts which the men of the Lord Infante had given them. And with such device had count Ner and the others fled from the battle.

CHAPTER CCLXXVI.

How they of Cagliari thought to enter Castle Bonaire but the Lord Infante En Alfonso discomfited them; and of the crime they of Cagliari committed against En Gilabert de Centellas and other knights; and how the Pisans resolved to make peace with the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

AND when they of Cagliari saw count Ner dead and themselves in such disaster, they, one very hot day, at noon, when they of the host of castle Bonaire and the Lord Infante and the others were sleeping or eating, put armour on their horses and apparelled, horse and foot, issued forth, without they of the siege at Bonaire knowing anything about it. The first to see them were Catalan fishermen, who saw them come down from the castle of Cagliari and began to cry:—"At them! to arms! to arms!" The Lord Infante, who had been sleeping with his épaulières on, heard the cry and put on his iron cap and seized his shield and hung it round his neck. He always had two of his horses ready saddled, and he mounted one; and the first to be at the gate of the siege

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

was he, but soon there were with him more than two thousand followers, what with almugavars and retainers and seamen; and so likewise knights attended him, some in armour and some without. The Catalans and Aragonese have that advantage over other people, that the horsemen, whenever they are engaged in a war, go about with the épaulières on and their iron caps near at hand, and they keep their horses ready saddled. And as soon as they hear a disturbance, they have nothing more to do but to take their shields and their iron caps, and they mount their horses and consider themselves as well armed as the other knights wearing hauberk or cuirass. And the men afoot all keep their lance and their dart at the door of their lodging or tent and at once run to the lance or dart when they hear anything, and as soon as they have their lance or dart they are fully armed. And so, when they heard the noise, they were at once upon the enemy, so that to say and to do was all one. They of Cagliari had expected they would be as long putting on their armour and arraying themselves as they were themselves, wherein they found they were mistaken. The Lord Infante with the chivalry came thus to meet them and it was unfortunate for the Pisans that they had come so far expecting to enter the gate of castle Bonaire. The Lord Infante attacked them so vigorously that, soon, they of the castle of Cagliari had to turn. Should I tell you more about it? The Lord Infante with the admiral, who is of the most accomplished knights of the world, and with the others proceeded to overthrow horses and to attack with lances, and when the lances were broken, you would have seen them giving, mace in hand, the most desperate blows of the world. And of the footsoldiers I need not tell you; they did nothing but transfix horsemen and men afoot with their lances. And they did so much that, of full five hundred horse who had issued forth and full three

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

thousand foot, there did not remain two hundred horsemen; for all the rest had been killed. And of men afoot not a hundred escaped, and if they had had a larger field, and had not reached the castle of Cagliari so soon, not one would have escaped. And so this fight was as good as the battle which destroyed those of the castle of Cagliari, and you may understand with what ardour they of the Lord Infante came to the fight when En Gilabert de Centellas and others entered Cagliari mingled with the enemy, hitting and stabbing, remembering nothing else, but only to attack. In consequence of which the Pisans committed a great crime, for, after they had made them prisoners, they killed them. And such crimes they and all men of the Communes are ready to commit; it displeases God, Who commiserates them.

And when the Lord Infante had driven them to the gates of the castle of Cagliari, he returned to the siege, cheerful and content. And those within were in great grief and at once sent messengers to Pisa and let them know all that had happened and bid them send them help, for, thenceforth, they did not see that they could defend themselves against the power of the Lord Infante. And when they of Pisa heard this news, they held themselves for undone and, at once, thought they were altogether lost if they did not in some manner make peace with the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante. And in this opinion, in which all agreed, they appointed messengers to whom they gave full powers to negotiate this peace.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of them and shall speak of the Lord King of Aragon.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXVII.

How the Lord King of Aragon sent the Lord Infante En Alfonso twenty light galleys; and how a messenger of the Pisans negotiated a peace with micer Barnabo Doria who made himself spokesman for the peace between the Commune of Pisa and the Lord Infante.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon had received the news which the Lord Infante sent him of the battle he had won, he had, at once, twenty light galleys built at Barcelona and at Valencia And, incontinent, he started the twenty galleys and had an enlisting table put up at Barcelona for eight galleys, and for two at Tarragona, and at Tortosa for two more, and at Valencia for eight, which eight galleys of Valencia the honourable En Jaime Escriva and I, Ramon Muntaner, were commissioned to equip. And so it was effected; within eight days the said eight galleys of Valencia were equipped and went to Barcelona. And whilst they were going to Barcelona all the others got ready, and it was ordained by the Lord King that the commander of them should be the honourable En Pedro de Belloch, an accomplished and expert knight who lives at Vallés. And the said twenty galleys departed from Barcelona and in a few days came to Cagliari. And when the Lord Infante saw them he had great joy and pleasure in them; and they of Cagliari held themselves for lost, for they saw well that, thenceforth, they could have no hope of help, neither from Pisan nor Genoese galleys, for these twenty galleys would cut them off from all the world. And, meanwhile, the messenger from Pisa had come, and arranged with micer Barnabo Doria who had made himself spokesman for the peace between the Commune of Pisa and the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXVIII.

How peace was made between the Lord Infante En Alfonso and the Pisans and with what covenants; and how they of Bonifacio and other places in Corsica did homage to the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

In the end many things were discussed about the peace, and the Lord Infante would never consent to a peace between them, if they did not surrender the castle of Cagliari to him; and, in the end, peace was concluded in this way: that the Commune of Pisa should hold the castle of Cagliari from the Lord King of Aragon, and should be his vassals, and that they should give it him, Postat, Hirat, Popagat,[1] whenever the Lord King or the Lord Infante or their procurators wish it, and so likewise to all those who come after them; and again that the Commune of Pisa renounced all claim they had to the island of Sardinia or to any place in the island. And, again that, at the castle of Cagliari, there should remain no boundaries whatever, except the huerta at the foot of it, namely, a part of the huerta in front and the other part should belong to Castle Bonaire. And again, that no trading whatever be allowed in the castle of Cagliari, except between Pisans; again, that no leny be allowed to enter the harbour, except Pisan lenys; again, that no Sardinian should be allowed to come

[1] The "right of entry into a castle in peace and war (potestas irati et paccati) is a condition frequently attached to James' grants, together with a stipulation for the service of a certain number of knights and the reservation of 'justice of blood.'"—James the First of Aragon, F. D. Swift, p. 136, note 2.

Bofarull, however, says: "Postat hirat pagat is no right, as some of the foreign translators have understood, but is the conditional clause of the surrender, found in many feudal documents, by which the acceptor promises to keep the castle for the over-lord in war (ira) as in peace (pace); therefore these words are nothing more than the transcription, more or less fanciful, of 'potestas' and of the barbarous latin words 'iratus' et 'paccatus,' which occur very frequently in feudal documents."

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

there to buy or sell anything, rather that they of the castle of Cagliari be obliged to come and buy all things at Castle Bonaire; and again, that the Pisans should be bound to support the Lord King and his men against all men who would wish to do them damage in the island of Sardinia. And the Lord Infante promised them that, like other merchants, they should trade throughout the island of Sardinia, and throughout all the other places and territories of the Lord King of Aragon, as other strangers do; and that they should pay the same dues as Catalan merchants pay at Pisa.

And when all this was signed and sworn on both sides, the banner of the Lord King of Aragon with a hundred knights of the Lord Infante entered the castle of Cagliari and was placed on the highest tower of the said castle.[1]

And so the peace was signed and sworn and the gates of the castle were kept open, and everyone could enter. And the Pisans and the Pullis[2] of Cagliari did likewise amongst the host and at the castle of Bonaire. And when this was done, the Lord Infante sent the honourable En Boxados to Pisa with the messenger from Pisa, in order that the Commune should approve and grant all that had been done; and they thus approved and granted.

[1] Two treaties of peace were made; one during the siege on the 13th of the Kalends of July 1325 (Incarnation) at the house in which the Infante was lodged, between the Infante and the ambassadors of the Communes; and the other between the Communes, the Infante and the King at Barcelona on the 7th of the Kalends of May 1326: "Secundum morem Barchinone Dominice vero Incarnationis anno 1327 indiccione nona Secundum morem civitatis Pisse." In the first treaty, which is the one mentioned in the text, Bene, Syndic of the Communes, cedes, in their name, to the Infante Castra et fortalicia de Aqua freda de Terranova Villapetrese et omnia alia fortalicia que hodie tenentur en dicta insula Sardinie pro Comune Pise et absolvit omnes homines dicte insule ab omni fidelitate et sacramento quibus tenentur ipsi Comuni et mandabit eis quod deinceps obediant dicto Domino Infanti et succesoribus suis perpetuo tanquam eorum Domino et sibi homagium faciant et fidelitatis juramentum.—Bofaruli.

[2] Either the inhabitants of the suburb called La Pula, or natives of Apulia inhabiting the City.—Bofarull.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And when they of Corsica knew this, they of Bonifacio and of the other places in Corsica came to the Lord Infante and did homage to him. And so the Lord Infante was lord of all Sardinia and Corsica. If you consider it well, it was much better for him that the Commune of Pisa should become his feudary and the Pisans his vassals, than if he had possessed the castle of Cagliari. And besides, castle Bonaire was peopled in such manner that, before five months had gone by, it was walled and full of new houses, and there were in it, of Catalans only, over sixty thousand men of arms. Wherefore, henceforth, castle Bonaire will always be superior to the castle of Cagliari, should the Pisans want to rebel.

CHAPTER CCLXXIX.

How the Lord Infante En Alfonso returned to Catalonia and left the noble En Felipe de Saluça as procurator-general and the noble En Berenguer Carros as commander of Castle Bonaire and Pedro de Lebia and Agustin de Costa as treasurers of the island.

AND when this was done the Lord Infante, at the advice of the Judge of Arborea, departed from the villages and towns and left there, as procurator-general, the noble En Felipe de Saluça, to administer his affairs with the advice of the Judge. And he left, as commander of the castle of Bonaire and all that district, the noble En Berenguer Carros, son of the admiral, and he left En Semanat as commander of Sassari, and then did the same in each of the other places. And he left, as treasurers of the island, the honourable En Pedro de Lebia and Agustin de Costa, a citizen of Mallorca. And, when he had ordained and settled every place, as well

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of Sardinia as of Corsica, he left the noble En Felipe de Saluça with about three hundred horsemen of the followers in our pay and likewise, of those afoot, there remained about a thousand in the pay of the Lord King. And all this done, he took leave of the Judge and of the noble En Felipe de Saluça and of the noble En Berenguer Carros and of the others and embarked with my Lady the Infanta, with all the host and all the fleet, and returned to Catalonia, in good health and cheerful, with great honour. And he landed at Barcelona where he found the Lord King and my Lady the Queen and the Lord Infante En Juan, archbishop of Toledo, his brother, and the Lord Infante En Pedro and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer and the Lord Infante En Felipe, son of the Lord King of Mallorca, and all the chiefs of Catalonia who had assembled to ordain succours to be sent to the Lord Infante in Sardinia. And when the Lord Infante and my Lady the Infanta had landed there, on the sea-shore, the Lord King and all the Infantes and my Lady the Queen came there and received them there with great honours. What shall I tell you? At Barcelona and throughout Catalonia and Aragon and the Kingdom of Valencia and the Kingdom of Murcia and in Mallorca and Roussillon the feast was very great which all the people made on the arrival of the Lord Infante and my Lady the Infanta. And there the Lord King and the Lord Infante bestowed many gifts and favours on all those who had come with the Lord Infante and all returned amongst their friends, cheerful and content.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXX.

How the Lord King En Sancho of Mallorca passed from this life and left as heir his nephew, the Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, and how he was buried at Perpignan in the church of Saint John.

IT was not long after this that the Lord King of Mallorca fell ill. And he had gone, for the hot weather, to Cerdagne, to a place in which he delighted much, called Formigueres,
1325 and there he passed from this life, which was a great loss, for never was a lord born in whom there was more truth and justice than in him. And it can be said of him what it would be difficult to say of any other, that, at no time, was there in him any rancour or anger against his neighbour, and this is the truth. And he made his will and left the kingdom and all his territory and all his treasure to his nephew, the Lord Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando. And if the said Infante should die without male children of lawful wedlock, all should go to the other son the Lord Infante had, by the second wife whom he married after he had taken Clarenza, the niece of the King of Cyprus, whom he sent for and married, who was and is still of the most beautiful ladies of the world, and of the best and wisest; and he took her, like the other, a child and a maiden; she was not more than fifteen years old. He did not live with her more than a year, but, in that year, he had a son by her, whom the lady keeps in Cyprus. And when the Lord Infante had passed from this life, she returned to Cyprus with two armed galleys. And so the Lord King of Mallorca entailed the kingdom on that Infante, if the other Infante should die, which God forbid; rather, may God give him life and honour as long as he lives, as to one who is the wisest child for his years born within the last five hundred years. And

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

further, the said Lord King En Sancho of Mallorca made a clause, that, if both should die without male children born in lawful wedlock, the kingdom and all the territory should return to the Lord King of Aragon. And so, when he had died, they brought him from Formigueres to Perpignan, where he had bequeathed his body to the cathedral called Saint John's. And there the funeral was made very splendidly, as was due to such a lord as he was. And as soon as he was buried, they set the Lord Infante En Jaime upon the said royal throne and, from that day onwards, he took the title and was called King of Mallorca and count of Roussillon and Conflans and Lord of Montpellier; wherefore, henceforth, when I shall speak of him, I shall call him King of Mallorca, to whom may God give life and health for His service and preserve him to his peoples. Amen.

Now I shall cease to speak of him and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Sicily.

CHAPTER CCLXXXI.

How the Lord King of Aragon surrendered Reggio and the other castles which the Lord King of Sicily had in Calabria to the Holy Apostolic Father to hold in trust; and how the Apostolic Father shortly after surrendered them to King Robert whereat the said Lord King of Sicily was greatly displeased.

It is the truth that the Lord King of Sicily had the city of Reggio in Calabria and the castle of Santa Agata and the castle of Gaylano and the castle of Mota and other places. And it was ordained in the treaty of peace which the Lord King of Aragon negotiated between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert, that that should be done about these castles which the Lord King of Aragon should think well. The said castles and the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

city of Reggio were put into the hands of the Lord King of Aragon; he sent knights of his to hold them for him, but, a short time after, he amended this and wished that this city of Reggio and those castles and places which the Lord King of Sicily had in Calabria should be delivered to the Holy Father and, by him, to whoever he wished, but the Holy Father to hold them in trust in such manner that, if ever King Robert fought against the King of Sicily, he was bound to return those castles and that city to the Lord King of Sicily, in order that he should make use of them. And again, there were other covenants which I need not recount. And when all this was done and the Pope held the castles, much time did not go by before the Holy Father, like a virtuous lord, thinking in good faith that no evil could arise on any side, had the city of Reggio and the other places delivered to King Robert. And when King Robert had the said places he had great pleasure thereat, and the Lord King of Sicily, when he knew it, was greatly displeased; but nevertheless he had to suffer it, and especially as there was peace between them and they remained long at peace, and King Robert ruled the said places well.

CHAPTER CCLXXXII.

How the galleys of King Robert broke the tunny nets of Sicily, wherefore war broke out again between the Lord King of Sicily and King Robert; and how the said King Robert sent his son the Duke to Sicily with a great force but he had to return to Calabria without having gained anything.

AFTERWARDS, as the devil works all evil, war broke out again between these two lords. Whose the guilt was, it is not for me to decide; for concerning such lords, one should speak nought but all the good he knows;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and so I do not wish to say, nor ought to say, on whose side was the fault, but no more than that war began again when the galleys of King Robert again broke the tunny nets of Sicily and took lenys and merchant barges which belonged to Sicily; and then those of Sicily did the same to those of King Robert. The Lord King of Sicily sent En Blasco de Alagon and En Berenguer Senesterra and other richs homens and knights to Calabria and they raided a great part of Calabria and took Terranova by assault and sacked it and other places; and then they returned to Sicily, cheerful and content, with great gain. And so behold war established again.

And when things were thus, King Robert made great preparations for passing into Sicily and the Lord King En Fadrique prepared himself very well, for he knew how to defend himself, and he garrisoned the cities of Messina and Palermo and Trapani and all the coast places very well. And he also had all the inhabitants of manors inland put into the towns and castles which were strong and well defended. And so the island was well prepared for defence. And the Lord King ordained Catalan and Aragonese chivalry, who were not to separate from the appointed richs homens and knights. And also, it was likewise ordained that they were not to separate from the Lord King En Pedro, his son, and that all of them should be prepared to succour and aid wherever it was necessary. And so likewise he ordained that micer Simon de Vallguarnera, a knight of Peralada who had served him for a long time, should go about all the island with a hundred horsemen and two hundred almugavars, and should go to whatever place King Robert should come to with his force.

And when this was done and ordained, before long King Robert sent his son, the Duke[1], with all his forces,

[1] Charles, Duke of Calabria.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to be head and chief in Sicily. And he landed before Palermo, at the Admiral's bridge, and there were a hundred and twenty-four armed galleys and six great ships and many terides and many lenys and barges; and there were altogether three thousand armed horse and innumerable men afoot. And when they were on shore and had been plundering for three days, they approached the
1325 city, and this was in the month of June of the year 1325. And, within, were the count of Claramunt and Don Blasco de Alagon and other richs homens and knights, and En Simon de Vallguarnera who, as soon as he saw them land at Palermo, came into the city with the hundred horsemen and two hundred almugavars who were with him. And if ever you have seen a city well ordained for defence, Palermo was that. Those within ordained that no man should appear on the wall when the enemy erected their ladders and cranes and other engines they had made for the attack, but that, when the ladders and the other engines were put up and the men were on them, suddenly the trumpets and nakers should sound and every man should attack the enemy with stones, balisters de tour and balisters with crossfoot lever and with pitch and liquid tar and fire; and so it was fulfilled in this way: on the third day after landing they approached the wall and put up their ladders and their engines. And when the men were on them, as you have heard before, they of the city threw themselves upon them in such manner that, on that day, there died the admiral of the twenty-five armed galleys which were there from the city of Genoa, and there died with him more than a thousand Genoese, and so, likewise, there died, of the other persons, over two thousand; they had a lesson which will always be remembered. And after this disastrous day, they remained three days without going near the wall of the city, and on the fourth day they came, prepared to offer battle.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And if they had had an unsuccessful fight on the first day, this one was much worse, for there likewise they lost many people.

And so the Duke saw that he could do nothing; he departed thence displeased and went, by sea and by land, to Mazzara. And before he reached it, micer Simon de Vallguarnera had entered it with his company, and he at once issued out to fight them. What shall I tell you? They also tried to attack Mazzara and there as well they took great damage. And then they departed from Mazzara and went to Sciacca; and there likewise, micer Simon de Vallguarnera had entered with his company before they reached it, and there likewise they took great damage. What shall I tell you? Departing from Sciacca, they came to Caltabellota and to Cattolica and Girgenti and then to Alicata and to Naro and Terranova and Caltagirone and to Scicli and to Modica and to Syracuse and to Noto and to Bucheri and to Forla and to Palazzolo and to Xoma and to Nola and to Ragusa and to Agosta and to Lemi and to Catania. And, at each of these places micer Simon de Vallguarnera was before him with his company, doing much damage to his host. And then he helped to defend the places, so that he followed him in such manner, that no man could leave the host to get grass nor anything else without being either killed or taken prisoner. Thus he did him great damage. He had to leave Catania and he went to embark in his fleet to the left of Catania and, on leaving there, he went along the coast and landed sometimes, but never went near the city of Messina. And then he reviewed his company and found that he had lost full half his people, some by sickness, some in deeds of arms. And so also, knowing that the Lord King of Sicily, his uncle, was in the plain of Milazzo, he prepared to go and fight him. And he thought that the Lord King Fadrique would come against

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

him with a great force of sound and rested men and that they were all of one mind and will, but that he was with worn-out men, who had had great disappointments and who were of various nations and various minds, wherefore the battle would not be safe for him. And so he embarked and passed into Calabria, to the city of Reggio, greatly displeased. And so he should be, for, in all Sicily, he had not been able to take one estate nor manor nor town; rather he pondered on the great damage he had taken.

And so, lords, you who shall hear this book, consider the treasure and the men who were destroyed in this expedition and what fruit it has borne for the good of Christians. Because, if it had pleased God and the rulers of the Holy Catholic Faith, it would have been much better that this should be spent to the honour of the Holy Catholic faith against Granada, than where it was spent and wasted. And believe that all will come to the same end who pass into Sicily, namely those intending to take the island from the Lord King of Sicily and his family, who render the Holy Roman Church all they should render unto it.

Now I shall cease to speak to you of these affairs of Sicily and will turn to speak of the great deceit and great wickedness which is in the Communes, of which I have already told you part; but he who would put down all their crimes in writing would not have enough with all the paper made in the town of Játiva. But in order that the crimes of the Communes be manifest throughout the world, I wish to recount to you what the Genoese did to the Lord King Fadrique; and also the crime they committed against the Lord King of Aragon; and likewise I will tell you of the Commune of Pisa. And therefore all the kings of the world would do very wisely to beware of trusting the men of the Communes in anything, for if they do, they will always find themselves betrayed.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXXIII.

Of the great crimes the Commune of Genoa committed against the Lord King of Sicily and always commits against the House of Aragon.

It is the truth that the Lord King of Sicily, as one who is entirely of the Ghibelline party, must help the Houses of Doria and Spinola and the other great Houses which left Genoa and went to Savona, with money and chivalry and galleys and victuals. Thus God and he have supported them in the city of Savona against the Guelph party, which remained in the city of Genoa; so it is certain that it is God and His aid and that of the Lord King of Sicily which has upheld them. And when the Duke, son of King Robert, passed into Sicily, those aforesaid, of Savona, promised to help the Lord King of Sicily with their galleys and the said Lord King counted much on them. But if he had remembered well how often they had failed the Lord King En Jaime, his brother, when he was King of Sicily, and how often they had failed himself, he would have expected nothing of them. But it is so with lords, that, when God grants them a long life, they often change their counsellors, through death or otherwise, and young counsellors bring any lord into great danger. For although it may be that they are wiser than the former ones had been, they cannot know things as well as those who are old, who have seen and heard. With only half the learning, an old man will know how to give better advice than the young in all matters of war, because he will have seen many more deeds of arms and heard more than a young man. And so, from the things of the past, a man can foresee the things of the present and the future. Wherefore I can assure you that, if the good count En G. Galceran were alive, or Don Blasco de Alagon, or En Hugueto de Ampurias, count de Esquilace, or many other Catalans

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and Aragonese who have passed from this life, or again if micer Mateo de Termens and micer Vinciguerra de Palozi and others were alive, the Lord King of Sicily would not have lost as much as he did in helping the Genoese, for they would have reminded him of former times. And as he has been deceived now, he and all kings who trust in the Communes will always be deceived. And it is well that I should record for you the treachery which the Genoese committed against the Lord King of Sicily now, in this expedition of the Duke to Sicily.

It is the truth that the Lord King of Sicily sent to Savona for succour of galleys, and sent money there; and they offered to help him with twenty-five galleys, and he remained in expectation that it would be done. But the Genoese acted in such manner that all the summer went by. And the Duke came out of Sicily and had passed from near Messina to Calabria, as you have heard, before the galleys were equipped. And when they knew that the Duke was out of Sicily and had passed into Calabria, then they left Savona and came towards Trapani, which is two hundred miles distant from where the Duke was. And so you can understand whether they would meet him, or what the help was the Lord King of Sicily had from the Genoese, or how well the money served him he had sent for the equipping of the galleys. And this mock and defection were not enough; rather, they reflected that they could also do an ill-turn to the said Lord King of Sicily with the twenty-five galleys which should have served him. They agreed with the Commune of Pisa that twenty-two galleys they had taken from Savona should serve the Commune of Pisa against the Lord King of Aragon; and the Commune of Pisa gave them a thousand florins a month in order that they should go with a fleet from Pisa and put victuals and succour of men into the castle of Cagliari. And again, they ordained in the covenants that Gaspar Doria, who was

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

admiral of the twenty-two galleys, should be admiral of Pisa; and that all should receive land in Sardinia; and thus the covenant between them and the Commune of Pisa was made. And so this is truly the service they did the Lord King of Sicily, making covenants with the Pisans against the King of Aragon who is his elder brother. And it does not seem that such deeds, so dishonourable before God and before the world, could bear any good fruit; rather, Our Lord the true God, Who is truth and justice, judges everyone according to his merits. Wherefore the House of Aragon and its descendants have always progressed and will progress in truth and justice and good faith; therefore God exalts and increases them, and gives them victory in all things, and confounds and casts down those who oppose them with deceit and cunning.

Now I wish to recount to you the end of this disloyal league made between the Commune of Pisa and the Genoese of Savona; how it ended and how the justice of Our Lord the True God worked against them and always will work against those who walk in wickedness and deceit.

CHAPTER CCLXXXIV.

How two light galleys of the Pisans entered within the palisade of the castle of Cagliari with victuals; and how the admiral En Francisco Carros took them with the whole of the slave crews; and how this becoming known to the Pisans, they arranged to go and succour the said castle of Cagliari.

It is the truth that when the league was made between them it was with the same intention as the league made between the rat and the frog, who meant to deceive each other, as you will find in the fables of Æsop; and because both had wicked intentions, the hawk came and carried

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

them both off. And thus it happened to those who made the league, each with treachery and with the wicked intention of deceiving and betraying the other. And the power of the House of Aragon, which is the eagle, came across them and has devoured and destroyed them all, and always will, please God.

You must know that, when the fleet was ordained in Pisa to go and succour the castle of Cagliari, there were twenty-three Genoese galleys and twenty-five Pisan and six vessels and five ferry boats and one ship and many barges, also of Pisa, so that, altogether, there were full sixty sail which left Pisa. And when the noble En Francisco Carros, the admiral of the Lord King of Aragon, knew that this fleet was coming against him
1325 and was coming to succour the castle of Cagliari which the said admiral was besieging, he thought that, on no account, should the said succour of men, who were bringing victuals to put into the castle, enter it. And he ordained all his dispositions like one who is of the best knights of the world and of the wisest, and he thought about former things and of the coming events, as you shall hear now.

I fully believe that you know already that two months had not passed since all this, when two light galleys of the Pisans came to the palisade in the night, without the admiral En Carros perceiving it, and entered within the palisade; and they were light rowing galleys and brought victuals which they put into the castle of Cagliari. And in the morning, when the admiral saw the galleys within the palisade, he was much displeased; however, by the help of God and his cleverness, all turned out well and to his great profit and joy. He at once besieged the two galleys, so that they could not come out of the said palisade without falling into his hands. And he held them so closely besieged that the slave crews of the said galleys eat more than they had brought. And when he saw them in this situation, one night he fell upon

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

their rear by sea and by land, and surprised them in such manner that he took the two galleys with the slave crews and all. And they were thus served by the Catalans; they massacred them all and not more than thirty escaped alive. After it was daylight they found these alive and did not kill them. After a man is taken prisoner it is not right to kill him. But iron fetters were made for them and they were set to work at the wall and ditch the admiral was having made at the said place, Bonaire. In a short time it was made one of the most beautiful cities one could have seen made in ten times the space of time. I want you to know that, at that time, it was found that there were there over six thousand good men, all Catalans, with their wives, and it was not three years since the admiral had begun to build it, when he was besieging the castle of Cagliari and the Lord Infante was besieging Iglesias. Wherefore the Pisans may know that the city of Bonaire could always, alone, besiege the castle of Cagliari. And in order that you should understand what sort of place for trade Bonaire is, I wish you to know that, when the admiral heard that the fleet had departed from Pisa and that there were full sixty sail, as you have heard before, he reviewed the force which was in the city of Bonaire and found that there were fourteen great ships, of which twelve were Catalan and one of the King of France which had come from Cyprus, and the other was Genoese and had come from the city of Genoa and the admiral had captured it; and also, there were thirty-six Catalan single-deck lenys and, besides, the admiral had twenty-two galleys and five vessels which were there, and eight, what with armed lenys and small barques he had had made to go on the lake. And all this shipping he had put in line before the palisade of Cagliari, because of what he had seen the two galleys do. And he apparelled them thus in order that no one should be able to enter within the palisade.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the city of Bonaire and the admiral and must turn to speak to you of the Genoese and the Pisans.

CHAPTER CCLXXXV.

How the Judge of Arborea captured eighty Pisans and sent them to the admiral who likewise had taken a hundred and fifty prisoners; and how on Christmas day, between galleys and lenys, fifty vessels arrived before Cagliari to succour it, of which the admiral En Carros took seven and the others were defeated and had to flee.

WHEN that fleet had departed from Pisa and came to the mouth of the Busnavre, the Genoese lost a galley which ran ashore, of which galley about eighty men escaped alive. And the Judge of Arborea who knew this sent a company to where the galley was stranded and they took all the eighty men and sent them, with a rope round their necks, to the admiral at Bonaire who, at once, had strong fetters made for them and had them set to work at the wall and ditch of Bonaire. And so likewise, at that time, a Genoese galley of Savona, which came from Flanders, was driven by a storm to the island of San Pietro and broke up and about a hundred and fifty men escaped. And the admiral heard this at Bonaire and sent to the island and took all the hundred and fifty men, and did with them what he had done with the others. What shall I tell you? On Christmas day of
1325 the year 1325 the twenty-two Genoese galleys and the twenty-five Pisan and six, between armed lenys and ferry boats arrived before Cagliari. The other shipping they had left at Bonifacio and they had come separately, for they expected to enter the palisade of Cagliari and to be able to put in the victuals they were bringing.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

But the admiral had ordained the entrance in such manner that nothing could enter without passing through his hands. So, on Christmas day, they came before the line of ships and of the other shipping of the Catalans and they tried stratagems all that day. And on Saint Stephen's day they tried to attack at one angle of the shipping, but they took great damage there and could do nothing. And next day, which was Saint John's day, they turned to the other angle and likewise could do nothing, rather there also they took great damage. And on Innocents' day, they went to Cabo Terra and took in water and then again returned to attack an angle of the ships. And all these attempts they made with ten light galleys, in order that the admiral should be drawn out of line with his galleys, and when he had broken the line and had come against the said ten galleys (which they did not fear much, for it was in their power to flee by rowing) the other galleys would row hard and enter within the palisade with the victuals. And thus they expected to put succours into Cagliari; but the admiral knew all they wanted to do, wherefore he would not move from his post.

And so on Christmas day, which fell on a Wednesday, and on Thursday and Friday and Saturday, they went on in this way. And on the following Sunday, the admiral made everyone dine in the morning, and commanded that every man who was in his galleys (of which there were eighteen, without the boats) should put on armour. And he had it cried throughout the galleys that, if they fought, the battle should be royal, that each man should keep what he gained, except the prisoners and the galleys, which would belong to the Lord King; that he was absolutely resolved, if he saw a good opportunity, to meet the enemy in battle that day. And so he remained prepared to fight. And when this was done and ordained, the Genoese and Pisan galleys came thus ordained for

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

battle: they put, in the first line, seven galleys, five Genoese and two Pisan, all seven fastened together, under En Gaspar Doria, who was their admiral; and then all the others followed astern. And the seven approached so close to the galleys of the admiral En Carros, with prows foremost, that they came within a dart's throw. And when the admiral saw these seven galleys so near, he sent an order from mouth to mouth to his galleys, that, without any noise and secretly, they should detach the cables of their anchors, because if they shipped their anchors, the enemy would go away at once, for they could go faster with twenty oars than the galleys of the admiral with a hundred and fifty. And so, very quietly, each let go the cable into the sea, neither the Genoese nor the Pisans perceived it; and at once, they began to row and, before those seven galleys could turn, the admiral was in their rear, and proceeded to attack in such manner that they killed over eleven hundred men whom they found on deck and, altogether, full four hundred Genoese and two hundred Pisans below. And so the admiral had all the seven galleys with all the people, dead or prisoners. And the rest of the Genoese and Pisan galleys turned their heads, which were towards the seven galleys, and proceeded to go away. And En Gaspar Doria, like the braggart he was, when the battle was at its height, proceeded to flee in a barge he had astern, and mounted into a galley which was astern of him and belonged to a brother of his. And when the said seven galleys were taken, the admiral pursued the others; but it was in vain—he could not overtake them. And so he returned, cheerful and content, amongst his men and everyone had gained so much that all became rich, and the admiral took away from no man anything he had gained.

Dec. 29th 1325

And when the Genoese were at a distance, they sent a galley with a message to the admiral, and sent to beg

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

him to be pleased to allow their messenger to come and review the prisoners, in order that they might know who were killed and who had escaped. And the admiral was content, and so he saw them all and there had escaped alive four hundred and eleven Genoese and two hundred Pisans who had gone below, as I have told you before. And when he put them all down in writing, they wanted to give the admiral, as ransom for the Genoese, all the victuals and arms they were bringing and all the other things they were carrying in the galleys which had escaped. But the admiral told them that he would not give up to them the meanest amongst them all; rather should they help to make the ditch and wall of Bonaire, and so they went away full of grief.

And see what fruit they got out of the wicked preparations they had made and of the treacherous league they had made with the Pisans. One thought to deceive the other, and the admiral of the Lord King of Aragon came across them and devoured them and scattered them all.

CHAPTER CCLXXXVI.

How the galleys of the Pisans and Genoese which had been scattered and delivered out of the hands of the admiral En Carros fought the ship of the noble En Ramon de Peralta in such wise that after losing three hundred Genoese they had, full of grief, to leave the said ship; and how the Pisans endeavoured to break all the covenants they had with the Lord Infante.

AND four days after this had happened and the galleys of the Genoese and Pisans were returning full of grief, they met a Catalan ship in which the noble En Ramon de Peralta was with sixty knights whom the Lord King of Aragon was sending to Sardinia; and another ship in which were sixty knights who were likewise of En Ramon

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

de Peralta; and it was full ten miles ahead of the other. And so it was their fate to encounter the Genoese who made sixteen attacks on it, but could do nothing against them, and the galleys lost more than three hundred men whom the Catalans killed, and many wounded, so that they parted from the ship in such wise that they will never hear it mentioned without grief. And you can all recognize that it was the work of God, for the admiral En Carros did not lose more than three men in all these attacks, and En Ramon de Peralta, in his ship, only lost one wild knight. Wherefore all should endeavour to act loyally; God will be with him who acts loyally and him who acts with disloyalty God will confound and bring to destruction. For everyone can see evident miracles daily, for God takes vengeance in this world. And this you can recognize now manifestly by the affairs of the Pisans, for the Lord Infante En Alfonso made peace with them in the manner you have heard before; in no way did the Lord Infante and his men ever fail them in anything they had promised. And in this mind he concluded peace and in the same mind departed from Sardinia and returned to Catalonia, thinking that thenceforth, as he was at peace with the Pisans, he need not tarry there. But the wicked Pisans made the peace which they concluded with the evil intention that the Lord Infante should return to Catalonia; for, when he had left, they thought to confound very soon the Catalans who had remained. And this was seen; they soon showed it, for they, at once, had many victuals put into the castle of Cagliari and had many soldiers, horse and foot, sent there, and they garrisoned the said castle of Cagliari.

And when they had done all this, they prepared to break all the covenants they had with the Lord Infante and all the treaty of peace. What should I tell you about it? They never met a Catalan alone that they did not, at once, cut his throat, so that in a short time,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

before the Catalans perceived it, they had killed and thrown into a well full seventy, who were found when the Catalans perceived what they were doing. And so, likewise, they proceeded to equip barges and with these, if any barge issued from the castle of Bonaire, they went towards it and took it and sent it to the bottom. And so you may know what trust can be put in them; no faith nor truth whatever are to be found in them. Wherefore see how Our Lord the true God is going to destroy them for their evil works. They, themselves, have cut the rods with which they will be beaten, and they have brought back the war to their own hurt. You have seen and have heard already how they fared so far and shall see again what will happen. For, when they had fought that rich hom, En Ramon de Peralta, they went away sorrowfully, and the said rich hom landed, cheerful and content, at the castle of Bonaire with both the ships, and he landed the chivalry and the footsoldiers he was bringing, and they were well received by the admiral and by all those of Bonaire, and a great feast was made for them and great honour shown them.

A short time after, the admiral and En Ramon de Peralta made an agreement that the chivalry and the footsoldiers should go by land and the fleet by sea to assault Stampace, which is the town of Cagliari, and is well walled by itself, and well peopled, for all the polins[1] were at Stampace with their wives and children, for only soldiers had remained in the castle of Cagliari.

[1] *See* note p. 675.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXXVII.

How the followers of the admiral En Carros and of the noble En Ramon de Peralta prepared to enter Stampace and took it by assault, and so fought with those of Stampace that they left alive neither man nor woman nor child and how the said place was deservedly punished for its sins.

AND as they had ordained, so they did. At dawn of day they surrounded the walls of Stampace and scaled them so vigorously that they were regardless of the danger there might be for them, whilst the seamen went towards La Pola.[1] And the battle was very hard, for those within defended themselves very resolutely and they had prepared the place well, so that nothing was wanting that was necessary for the defence. What should I tell you about it and what more should I say about it? The seamen invaded the wall by assault and prepared to enter. And when they of Stampace saw they were invaded, they all went to the part where the horsemen were, and the horsemen approached the wall and also invaded it. What shall I tell you? The banners of the admiral En Carros and of the noble En Ramon de Peralta prepared to enter Stampace and then might you see a cruel battle; they of Stampace and a great number of those of the castle who had come down, made great efforts, because of their wives and children, whom they saw being killed. But Our Lord the true God, Who wished to punish them for their crimes, sent defeat down upon them, not one remained alive, nor one of their wives and children. There died likewise the commander and the warden of the castle and a great number of soldiers. At that juncture the Catalans thought they would enter the castle, but those who were within saw how their people had been killed,

[1] ? Cabo di Pula.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and the great destruction, and shut the gates and walled them up with stones and mortar.

And the Catalans, when they had killed everybody, proceeded to raid the goods which were in the town of Stampace; and the goods and chattels there were innumerable, so that they gained so much, that those who were there in person will be rich for ever. And when they had done this they returned, on the following day, and saw the walls and houses being demolished and everything levelled to the ground; and the said nobles ordained that the men should take all the stone and the wood they wanted, and bring all to the city and castle of Bonaire. All, immediately, proceeded to load barges and carts, and to carry all to Bonaire; and they built and erected good houses. And they ordained the church of the Minorite friars, which was very rich, to be taken down and moved to Bonaire, in honour of monsenyer Saint Francis. There the convent of the Minorite friars was moved also; thenceforth there were to be no Minorite friars in it, but Catalans, and they should form a Province by themselves, and likewise all the orders in Sardinia and Corsica should be filled with Catalans.

And so, Lords, you who shall hear this book, penetrate your hearts with the power of God, for you see clearly what vengeance Our Lord, the true God, took within a year of those wicked people who, by treachery and disloyalty, brought back the war upon the Lord King of Aragon who had treated them with kindness and compassion. And, again, God has taken vengeance upon that place, Stampace, which was inhabited by the most wicked people in the world and the most sinful; for there is no sin the heart of man can imagine which was not committed in Stampace, so that the stench of it went up before God. And if you say: "En Muntaner, what are those sins you are speaking of?" I could

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

tell you that there was pride and arrogance and the sin of lewdness in all ways, in such wise that God sent the destruction He sent upon Sodom and Gomorrha, for by fire He burnt and consumed it all. And besides, usury was practised publicly, and they had an account with everyone, and the sin of gluttony was worse there than in any other place in the world. Also this place always provided Barbary with iron and steel and all kinds of wood and victuals, which did great injury to all Christendom. And besides, every pirate and robber was welcome there, whoever he may have injured; and, of all sorts of gambling it was the chief place and, besides, so much evil was done there it would be impossible to write it all. Wherefore see what vengeance Our Lord the true God (blessed be He) took in a few hours. Therefore he is foolish who has no fear nor dread of God, for Our Lord suffers much, but there it was meet that His justice also should work upon the wicked, for, if it did not, the righteous could not last in the world.

And henceforth I must cease to speak to you of the castle of Cagliari, which is being besieged, or of those within who are walled in, or so, likewise, of Stampace which is laid low and is all sacked and burnt, and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord Infante En Alfonso and of the Lord King of Mallorca.

CHAPTER CCLXXXVIII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Mallorca had the high and pious monsenyer En Felipe of Mallorca, his uncle, given him as guardian, who negotiated and obtained that the said Lord King of Mallorca should have to wife my Lady Costanza, daughter of the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

IT is the truth, as you have heard before, that, when the Lord King En Sancho of Mallorca had passed from this

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

life, the Lord Infante En Jaime, son of the Lord Infante En Ferrando, was seated on the royal throne and, from that hour onwards, was called King of Mallorca, and is still and will be many years, if it be God's pleasure. And it was ordained by the richs homens and knights and prelates and citizens and townsmen that the very high and pious monsenyer En Felipe of Mallorca, his uncle, should be appointed as guardian of the said Lord King of Mallorca. And it was done as had been ordained. And after monsenyer En Felipe became guardian, he negotiated and brought to good issue that the said Lord King of Mallorca should have to wife the daughter of the Lord Infante En Alfonso, son of the very high Lord King En Jaime of Aragon. The Pope gave a dispensation for this marriage; and it was made in great concord and love and with the consent of the Houses of Aragon and Mallorca; wherefore all their subjects had and have and always will have great joy and pleasure and profit in it. God in His mercy give them health and a happy life. The said Lord King of Mallorca, when this marriage treaty was signed, was only eleven years and a few months old. And the Infanta, who is called my Lady Costanza, was not more than five years and a few months old. God grant them His favour in such manner that the marriage be completed and that they have sons, pleasing to God and an honour and advantage to them and their peoples. And this marriage treaty was signed by both parties in the year of the Incarnation of Our Lord Jesus Christ 1325. 1325

Now I shall cease to speak to you of the Lord King of Mallorca and of monsenyer En Felipe who governs the country for the Lord King, his nephew, and must turn to speak to you of the Lord King of Aragon and of the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCLXXXIX.

How the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Alfonso sent such succours to Bonaire that they of Cagliari held themselves for lost and the Pisans had to treat of peace with the said Lord King and to surrender the castle of Cagliari to him.

WHEN the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante En Alfonso saw the Pisans wickedly and iniquitously trying as much as they could to obtain succours from many sides in order to raise the siege of Cagliari, they proceeded to have galleys and terides built and ordained that knights and footsoldiers be sent to Sardinia every day. Also, when the marriage of the Lord King of Mallorca was settled and signed, he had six galleys and two ships equipped at Mallorca which, with a great succour of many men, he sent to the castle of Bonaire, in aid of the Lord King of Aragon; and so, likewise, many ships and lenys and terides of Catalonia went there, which all went full of expert men, so that, in a few days, the Lord King of Aragon and the Lord Infante had sent so much chivalry and so many people and so many terides and galleys that those who were within the castle of Cagliari held themselves for dead men, and sent to tell the Commune of Pisa to succour them; for, if they did not, they could not hold out. But the Pisans, knowing the great force the Lord King had sent there, held all their affair for lost and thought that thenceforth they could not preserve the said castle of Cagliari, rather they would rejoice if the Lord King of Aragon let them live in peace in the city of Pisa. And so they sent to the Lord King of Aragon messengers with full powers who came to Barcelona where they found the Lord King and there, very humbly, they entreated him and the Lord Infante to be pleased to forgive them what they had done against

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

them and told them that they surrendered to them the castle of Cagliari and all they possessed in Sardinia.

And the Lord King and the Lord Infante, moved by compassion (because they and their ancestors have been and are full of pity and charity and compassion), forgave them and concluded a peace with them in such manner, that they, incontinent, surrendered freely the castle of Cagliari and all they possessed in Sardinia; and the Lord King granted them leave to trade throughout Sardinia and in all his territories in safety and security; they, however, paying the bridge tolls and the taxes on merchandize and the other taxes which are ordained and shall be ordained by the Lord King. And again, they might have consuls and representatives in the cities of the Lord King, as the Catalans have, and will have, in the city of Pisa.

And the said peace thus concluded, the Pisans, very joyous at having found mercy from the Lord King and the Lord Infante, went to surrender the castle of Cagliari to the Lord King of Aragon and to the knights the Lord King appointed to represent him; and also, the said Pisans had to surrender to him all the other places held for them in Sardinia.

CHAPTER CCXC.

How God always punishes a man who breaks the peace; and how the Pisans surrendered the castle of Cagliari to the Lord King of Aragon and, for him, to the Judge of Arborea; and how they went out by the seaward gate and how the royal standard and pennons were set up on the castle of San Pancracio.

AND so you can understand how they have been destroyed for their deceit. If they had not broken the first treaty of peace they concluded with the Lord

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

King, they might still have the castle of Cagliari and the other places; but they, as you have heard already, cut the rods with which they have been beaten. And you may be sure that he who breaks the peace, trespasses against the commandment of God Who left us peace and desires peace. And so let everyone be careful what he promises at the signing of peace for, assuredly he should keep it as he will have sworn and promised it and should on no account turn back on it; and if he does, it will not be to his advantage, rather God will be against him in all his undertakings. What shall I tell you? The messengers of Pisa and the other knights chosen by the Lord King went so long that they came to the castle of Cagliari and they sent a messenger to the Judge of Arborea, who was procurator-general for Sardinia for the Lord King of Aragon. And he came at once to the castle of Bonaire and, likewise, there came there En Felipe Boyl who was commander in the war for the said Lord King, and Emboxados who was in the place of the admiral. And the messengers of Pisa spoke with those of the castle of Cagliari and, on Monday, on the ninth day of June, in the year of
1326 the Incarnation of Our Lord Jesus Christ 1326, they surrendered the said castle of Cagliari to the said Lord King of Aragon, and for him, to the Judge of Arborea and to the said noble En Berenguer Carros and to the said En Felipe Boyl and to the said Emboxados, who entered the castle of Cagliari with full four hundred armed horse and full twelve thousand retainers, all Catalans. And they entered by the gate of San Pancracio and the Pisans went out by the seaward gate and embarked in four galleys and in a ship, which the said officers of the Lord King had apparelled for them, and which brought them to Pisa.

And when the said officers had entered within, the noble En Berenguer Carros and the Company of the Lord

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

King set up a large royal standard of the said Lord King on the castle of San Pancracio and then, on each of the towers, small royal pennons. And by the favour of God, when banner and pennons were set up on the towers, there was no sign of wind at all; but as soon as they were planted the wind came from the South-West, the finest wind of the world, which spread out all the banners and pennons, and it was the most beautiful sight there ever was for those who love the House of Aragon, and for their opponents, it was the worst. And here the Te Deum was cried and there were so many people, Catalans within, and many Sardinians, and they of Bonaire without, who all said the responses to the Te Deum together, that it seemed as if Heaven and Earth were crumbling.

And so the officers of the Lord King garrisoned the castle with very good men, horse and foot, in such manner that, henceforth, God will be served there, and all will find there truth and justice, in such manner that the House of Aragon and Catalonia will always, with the help of God, derive honour therefrom. And so the Catalans, with the help of God, can reckon that they will be masters of the sea, on the understanding, however, that the Lord King and the Lords Infantes his sons, and all their subjects, acknowledge that this comes to them by the favour of God, and that they do not pride themselves upon it and do not think that this honour and many others God will grant them, come to them through their valour and power, but that only the power and favour of God have done this. And if such is the mind of the said Lords and their subjects, count upon it that all their deeds will go from good to better; there is nothing else in the world but the power of God (blessed be He and His mother, Our Lady Saint Mary) Who has granted them this favour.

And whilst this great feast was being made in Cagliari

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and in Bonaire by the Catalans, the Pisans, sorrowful and afflicted, embarked and went to Pisa as soon as they had surrendered the castle and the other places in Sardinia which were held for the Pisans. And God in His mercy give us greater joy than they had in Pisa when they saw these, their people, enter. However, they comforted themselves in as much as they had obtained peace with the Lord King of Aragon, for all held themselves for dead men if they had not obtained peace. And thenceforth they and the other Communes will do wisely in not undertaking a war against the said Lord King. And so Pisa recovered all the prisoners who were in prison at Bonaire, and the Genoese those of Savona. And so you can see to what end that compact came which the Pisans and they of Savona had made through their wicked deeds, and also what those can hope for from God who do not walk in truth and justice; for you see how these were confounded and cast down for their evil doings.

And so Our Lord the true God, because of the loyalty and justice which are found in the House of Aragon, granted it this favour, and grants and will grant it others like it. Amongst other favours God granted to the Lord King of Aragon En Jaime, he granted him this of having, by my Lady Queen Blanca. who was the daughter of King Charles (as I have told you before) and who was a very virtuous and good lady, five sons and five daughters, all of whom he saw settled and endowed in his lifetime.

And I must tell you in what manner and how the eldest son, who was called the Infante En Jaime,[1] was

[1] The Infante Jaime had been accepted and sworn fealty to as heir and had sworn at the Cortes at Saragossa to keep up the rights, customs and usages of Aragon. His disorderly life, his injustice and violence as Procurator-General earned him the hatred of his future subjects. He long refused to marry his betrothed, Leonor of Castile, and suddenly announced that he wished to become a monk, cynically declaring however, that this resolution was in no way inspired by religious motives. He was induced to consent to the Church celebration of his marriage, in order that Aragon should not lose the towns and fortified places

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Procurator-General of all the dominions of the Lord King, his father and as long as he administered the said office exercised strict justice, as well towards the great as towards the small. But after holding this office for a short time, he renounced all the dominions and all the world and, for the glory of Our Lord the true God, he took the habit of the order of the knights of Montesa and lived and will live if it please God, whilst he has life, for the service of God in the said order. Wherefore, henceforth, we need speak of him no more. He has given up the dominion he might have had in this world in order to possess the Kingdom of God. May He in His mercy grant it him. Amen.

And the next son, who was called the Lord Infante En Alfonso, who is he of whom I have spoken to you before, had, after the Lord Infante En Jaime had renounced the inheritance of his father, the title of eldest-born, and the oath was taken to him, as lord and king, after the Lord King his father, of all the dominions and territories of the Lord King his father; and he conquered Sardinia, as you have heard before, and has maintained, and will always maintain, the way of truth and justice, as one of the most gracious lords of the world and, personally, the most accomplished knight there ever was in the Kingdom of Aragon. Although there may have been many good knights, yet it is so in this blessed House that, by the grace of God, it ever goes from good to better, and will do so from now onwards, if it please God.

---

which formed the Infanta's dowry, but he left his bride at the altar to which he had been brought almost by force and disappeared for a time. At the Cortes at Tarragona he renounced his claim to the throne and soon after entered the Order of St. John of Jerusalem. His life thereafter was as scandalous as before. (*See* Lafuente: 'Historia de España.')

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHAPTER CCXCI.

How the Lady Infanta, wife of the Lord Infante En Alfonso, passed from this life after he had had by her the Infante En Pedro and the Infante En Jaime and a daughter; and goes on to tell who those five sons of the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon and my Lady Queen Blanca are.

And this Lord Infante En Alfonso had to wife one of the noblest ladies of Spain who was not a king's daughter, and the richest; namely, the daughter of the very noble En Gombado de Entenza and through her he had the county of Urgel and all the barony of Antillon and all the barony of her father, En Gombaldo. And each of these baronies is a great possession. And so he was very well married, to a very high-born and very rich lady. And she was one of the most learned ladies of the world; a big book might be made about her learning; and she was a very good Christian and did much good in her lifetime for the glory of God. And by this lady, the Lord Infante, who survived her, had two very gracious sons of which the eldest was called En Pedro and the younger En Jaime; and he had a daughter who is Queen of Mallorca, whom, when she was very young (five years old) they gave to wife to the Lord King En Jaime of Mallorca. And all this she saw done in her lifetime. And then, as it pleased God, the said Lady Infanta, wife of the Lord Infante En Alfonso, passed from this life in the city of Saragossa, on the last Tuesday in October
1327 of the year 1327 and she was buried next day, which was the feast of the Apostles Saint Simon and Saint Jude, in the church of the Minorite friars of Saragossa. God in His mercy keep her soul as He keeps the soul of a blessed and virtuous lady. She received Holy Communion and the Last Unction and confessed many times, as one who was very Catholic and pleasing to God and the world, and so God wanted her in His Kingdom still a young

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

girl; and great mourning and weeping was made for her in the said city of Saragossa. And so she ended her days in the service of God, as it pleased Him to ordain.

The other son of the said Lord King En Jaime of Aragon is called the Infante En Juan, and he is Archbishop of Toledo, and one of the best Christians of the world, so that God worked miracles through him in his lifetime; for he is one of the most gifted prelates of the world, as well in preaching as in all sciences and all the other good gifts a virtuous, accomplished and honest lord should possess. God keep him in His mercy.

And the fourth son is called the Lord Infante En Pedro and is a very gifted and wise Lord, and very prudent, amongst the most prudent princes of the world, and accomplished, though so young, in all learning. And the Lord King, his father, endowed him and did so much, that he made him count of Ampurias and Ribagorza, and each of these counties is noble and important; and, also, he is to inherit a very noble castle and a very noble place in the Kingdom of Valencia. And so it can be said that he is as well endowed as any king's son who is not a king.

And the fifth son of the said Lord King En Jaime of Aragon is called En Ramon Berenguer, who is, like his brothers, very wise and gifted; no man of his age could be found in the world more full of all talents and all goodness; and the Lord King, his father, endowed him and made him count of Pradés and lord of the barony of En G. de Entenza and also of a very good place he gave him in the Kingdom of Murcia. And so it can be said that he, likewise, is very nobly and honourably endowed and that he can lead the life suitable for a king's son. And so the said Lord King saw his sons very well endowed in his lifetime.

And his daughters he endowed thus: he gave the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

eldest to the Lord Infante En Pedro of Castile, who was the son of King En Sancho of Castile; and his other daughter he gave, afterwards, to the noble Don Juan, son of the Infante En Manuel of Castile; and his other daughter he gave to the Duke of Austria, who is one of the greatest barons of Germany; and the fourth he put into the order of Sixena, which is the most honourable women's order there is in Spain, and, of that order, the Infanta is prioress, as one who is a very virtuous lady; and his fifth daughter he has ordained to give to wife to the son of the prince of Taranto.

CHAPTER CCXCII.

How the Lord King En Jaime of Aragon after having confessed many times and received the sacraments of the Church passed from this life and was buried at Santas Creus; and how the Kingdoms of Aragon and Valencia came to the Lord Infante En Alfonso.

AND so the Lord King En Jaime saw, in his lifetime, all his sons good and handsome and wise before God and the world. And when he had seen all this and God had granted him this favour, he was seized with an illness of such a nature and so severe, that he suffered much anguish, wherefore he, as a virtuous lord, and good and gracious, and full of the Holy Catholic Faith, confessed and received the Sacrament many times and received Extreme Unction and all the Sacraments of Holy Church. And when he had received them all in his right mind and good memory, he folded his hands and embraced the crucifix and put his spirit in the hands of Our Lord Jesus Christ, on Monday, the second of November of the year
1327 1327, at the hour the lights are lit. Our Lord the true God and His blessed Mother, Our Lady Saint Mary,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

with all the Celestial Court, received his soul and placed it amongst the faithful in glory. And so the said Lord King En Jaime of Aragon died at Barcelona, on the aforesaid day, and left his body to the monastery of Santas Creus, where the body of the blessed King En Pedro, his father, lies. And so it was carried with great solemnity and with great weeping and great cries and with great grief of all his subjects to the said monastery of Santas Creus and was buried, and his sons and some of his daughters were there, and prelates and a great number of the best men of his dominions. God, in His mercy, keep henceforth his sons and all his peoples under His guard and protection. He is in a good place and he was born for the good of his soul and of all his subjects. He had a good beginning and a good middle life and made a yet better end; and see what favour God showed him for the faith and goodness and truth which were in him. Wherefore everyone should endeavour to do well, for God sees it.

And so, henceforth, the Lord King En Alfonso, his son, King of Aragon and Valencia and of Sardinia and count of Barcelona and Urgel, must make good endeavour and do much good, for he has had so bright a mirror in his father. And he has had such a beginning that his acts should go from good to better, and will do so, if it please God; and he should be, as he is bound to be, a father and ruler to his brothers; and should remember that there are no sons of kings and queens in the world born of better parents than they are, and that they have all issued from the same womb. And so, likewise, may he, in his mercy, be minded to support the Lord King Fadrique, his uncle, and his sons, who are his own cousins-german on both sides; and in no wise to let anything the King of Sicily is ruling be taken away from him. For whilst it pleases God and him, this House will be strong and secure to the glory of God and his own, and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

to that of all his race and to the great advantage of all his subjects. He can reckon that he is King of Aragon and of Valencia and of Sardinia and of Corsica and of Mallorca and of Sicily; of all he is head and chief and they are at his orders. If he wishes it the Kingdom of Mallorca is at his orders, as much as the Kingdom of Aragon, and so likewise the Kingdom of Sicily. If he pleases he can have and hold these Kingdoms for his own House. He and the Lord King of Mallorca and the Lord King of Sicily being of one mind and supporting each other, as it should be, can count upon it that they will be superior to all the kings and princes of the world, Christian as well as Saracen, and to all the Communes. But if the contrary should happen, which God forbid, and there should be differences between them, you may reckon upon it they would destroy each other. Wherefore it is needful that the Lord King En Alfonso fix his mind on this, that all strength and truth is in God and in him who is head and chief of all. May it please him to remember the saying of the Catalans, that not everyone is a man's friend who smiles in his face. And so, let him rule the Houses of Mallorca and Sicily who bear his scutcheon, under which they must live and die; and maintain them against all men on earth, and let no wicked people put other thoughts in his heart; and let him remember the proverb of the rushes which it is meet such lords should remember. God in His mercy, give him courage and good will and give him full measure of His favour. Amen.

And if anyone asks me:—"En Muntaner, what proverb is that of the rushes?" it means this: if you tie all the rushes tightly with a rope and want to tear them out all together, I tell you that ten men, however well they pull, cannot tear them out in any way they may try; but if you take off the rope, a boy of eight can pull out the bush, rush by rush, so that not one remains.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And so it would be with those three kings; if there were any differences or discord between them (which God forbid) you can reckon upon it that they have such neighbours that they will destroy first one and then the other. Wherefore it is necessary that they should beware of such a thing; for whilst all three are of one mind and support each other, they need fear no other power in the world; rather, as I have told you before, they will always be superior to their enemies.

CHAPTER CCXCIII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon with all his brothers and his richs homens came to the town of Montblanch, where he held a council to decide to which part of his territories he should go; and so came to Barcelona and there took the oath and swore to keep the usages and privileges of all Catalans and they made oath to him as their chief and lord.

Now I shall speak to you again of the Lord King En Alfonso, by the grace of God King of Aragon and of Valencia and of Sardinia and Corsica and count of Barcelona. After the said Lord King, his father (to whom God grant His holy glory) was buried and all ceremonies due to him had been performed, the said Lord King En Alfonso, with all his brothers and all the prelates and richs homens and knights and citizens, came to the town of Montblanch and at that place held his council as to what part he should go to, whether to Aragon or to the Kingdom of Valencia, or whether he should return to Barcelona; for he wished to do his duty to each of these provinces, as his ancestors had done. And there it was finally decided that he should go to Barcelona to receive the homage of prelates and richs homens and knights and citizens and burgesses

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and of all his adherents in Catalonia, and that there a parliament and conference should be held with all the Catalans. And so the Lord King, at a suitable hour, went to Barcelona with all the prelates and richs homens and knights and citizens and townsmen, and then he sent to summon his adherents who were not present to come to him. And meanwhile, he went to visit places in such manner that, at the blessed feast of the Nativity, he came to Barcelona, which feast was held with few diversions and little cheer, by reason of the death of the Lord King, his father. And the feast over, he did all he had to do at Barcelona and, fully and very graciously, he swore to uphold the usages and privileges and exemptions of all Catalans and they took the oath of fidelity to him as lord, as he who was the heir of the very high Lord King En Jaime, his father (to whom God grant His holy glory).

CHAPTER CCXCIV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso of Aragon ordained that prelates and richs homens and knights of his dominions should come to Saragossa on Easter-day, because he wished to be dubbed a knight and to be crowned with the sacred crown of the Kingdom.

AND all this done, he thought that, as the holy apostles and disciples of Our Lord God Jesus Christ had been left disconsolate, so his subjects were in great grief through the death of the Lord King, his father, and that, like Jesus Christ, he should, on the next Easter-day, which
1328 was Sunday the 3rd of April of the year 1328, comfort and cheer himself and his brothers and all his subjects. And he ordained that, on the aforesaid Easter-day, prelates and richs homens and knights and messengers

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and citizens and burgesses of the principal towns of the dominions should come to Saragossa; and on that holy day he would be dubbed a knight and would be crowned with the blessed and fortunate crown, with the greatest ceremony and feast with which a king had ever been crowned in Spain, or in any other provinces that I know. And of this he had letters made which he sent to prelates and richs homens and knights and burgesses throughout all his dominions.

CHAPTER CCXCV.

How the Lord King En Alfonso departed from Barcelona and came to the city of Lérida and visited a great part of those territories; and how the Kings of Tlemcen and of Granada sent him great presents and jewels; and how all the nobles began to apparel themselves to go to Saragossa to the coronation.

And all this done, he departed from Barcelona and went to the city of Lérida and visited a great part of those territories and every man was apparelling himself to go to that glad feast of his coronation. And I will not tell you that only the barons of his territories apparelled themselves; rather, there came, from Sardinia, the son of the Judge of Arborea and two nephews of the said Judge of Arborea; and there came, together with them, in three armed galleys, the honourable Emboxados, admiral of the said Lord King of Aragon and Governor of Sardinia, and many other honourable men; and, also, there came messengers, with great presents and jewels from the King of Tlemcen, and messengers, likewise, with great jewels and presents, of the King of Granada, and there came many franklins of Castile, and many more would have come if it had not been for the war of the King of Castile with the noble En

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Juan Manuel, son of the Infante En Manuel of Castile. And also there came many franklins of Navarre and Gascony and of Provence and of many other parts, so that the congregation of people who assembled in the city of Saragossa on the day of the said holy feast of Easter was so great that it was estimated that there were altogether more than thirty thousand men on horseback. And so the Lord King En Alfonso came to Saragossa in the week of Palm Sunday and then, afterwards, there came the Lord Archbishop of Toledo, his brother, and afterwards came the Lord Infante En Pedro his brother, count of Ribagorza and Ampurias, with more than eight hundred horsemen; and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer, his brother, count of Pradés, with full five hundred horsemen and then came the noble Don Jaime de Ejérica with full five hundred horsemen; and his brother, Don Pedro de Ejérica with full two hundred horsemen, and then the noble En Ramon Folch, viscount Cardona, likewise with much chivalry, and then the noble A. Roger, count of Pallars, with a great company of horse and foot, and then the noble En Lope de Luna, with great chivalry and then En Dalmau, viscount of Castellnou, likewise with a very good company of knights and of other very good followers, and then the noble En Oton de Moncada, with a very good company of accomplished knights, and then the noble En G. de Anglesola, with a great company and then the noble En Berenguer de Anglesola, and then En Ramon de Cardona, and then the noble En G. de Cervelló, and then the noble En Eximeno Cornel and the noble En Pedro Cornel and the noble En Ramon Cornel, and the noble En Pedro de Luna and the noble En Juan Ximeno Daroca, and the noble En Felipe de Castro and the noble En Amoros de Ribelles and the noble En G. de Erill and the noble viscount de Vilamur and the noble En Ponce de Caramany and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

the noble En Gilabert de Cruilles and the noble En Alfonso Ferrandez de Ixer, and the noble En Pedro Ferrandez de Vergar and the noble En Beltran de Castellet, and the noble En Pedro de Almenara and the noble En Gombau de Trameset and the noble En Artalillo de Foses and the noble En Eximeno Perez de Arenos and the noble En Sandorta de Arenos and the noble En Ferran de Abeylla and the noble En Jofre, viscount de Rocaberti and the noble En Bernardo de Cabrera, viscount de Monsoriu. And all came very richly apparelled with good retinues on horseback and on foot. But a message came to them that the countess of Ampurias, aunt of the said noble En Bernardo de Cabrera, had died, and so he had to remain behind; but there were many of his company. And so, likewise, there came the noble En Pedro de Aregail and many other nobles of Aragon and Catalonia and of the Kingdom of Valencia, and of the Kingdom of Murcia and of the other provinces, all with much chivalry which it would be a mighty affair to enumerate and write down. And also there came, with much chivalry, the Master of Calatrava, the Master of the order of Montesa and the Comendador of Montalban, and the noble Frey Sancho de Aragon, the castellan of Amposta, of the order of chivalry of the Hospital of Saint John. And there came likewise the aforesaid Archbishop of Toledo and the Lord Archbishop of Saragossa, and the Archbishop of Arborea aforesaid, and the Lord Bishop of Valencia and the Bishop of Lérida and the Bishop of Osca and the Bishop of Tarazona and many other bishops, abbots and priors.

And so likewise we six were there, who were sent by the city of Valencia, and we went there with a great company. Every day we fed, of our own beasts, fifty-two; and we had full a hundred and twelve persons there and brought trumpeters and a kettledrum player,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and a player on the añafil[1] and on the dulcimer, all of whom we clothed in the royal livery, with royal pennons, and all well mounted. And we all six brought our sons and our nephews with jousting harness, and kept open house from the day we left Valencia until we were back, for everyone who wished to dine with us. And at the Court, we gave garments of cloth of gold and others to juglars, and we brought a hundred and fifty wax tapers from Valencia, each weighing twelve pounds, and we had them all coloured green, with the royal coat of arms.

And so likewise there were six notables from the city of Barcelona, very well arrayed and well ordained and with very fine wax tapers; and so likewise there were four from the city of Tortosa and also some from the other cities and important towns of all the provinces of the said Lord King, for all endeavoured to come with great splendour. What shall I tell you about it? Never had there been so great a feast in any part of Spain, made by such important people.

CHAPTER CCXCVI.

Of the nobles the Lord King En Alfonso dubbed knights at his coronation and of those made by the Infante En Pedro and the Infante En Ramon Berenguer and also of the many new knights made at the same time.

AND as I have named to you some of the prelates and richs homens and other important people who assembled at the said feast, it is right that I should name to you also the nobles whom the Lord King made new knights on that glorious day, and the nobles the Lord Infante En

---

[1] A Moorish musical instrument.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Pedro likewise made knights, and also the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer. And the noble En Ramon Folch and all these nobles also made many new knights, as was ordained in the way you will hear further on.

First the Lord King dubbed knight on that day the noble Don Jaime de Ejérica, and the said noble made twenty knights. And then the said Lord King dubbed the noble son of the Judge of Arborea a knight, and it was ordained that, as soon as he was in Sardinia, he should make twenty new knights, ten Catalan and ten Aragonese, whom he should endow in Sardinia, for he could not do it at this Court as he had not time to apparel them; but it meant the same thing as, when he has received them in his house, he will make them knights and endow them in Sardinia. And then the Lord King made the noble En Ramon Folch, viscount Cardona, a knight and the said noble at once dubbed three nobles knights; namely, En Ramon de Cardona, his brother, and the noble En Amoros de Ribelles and the noble En Pedro de Regal; and each of these nobles made ten knights. And then the Lord King dubbed the noble En Lope de Luna knight and the said noble at once made twenty knights. And then the Lord King dubbed the noble A. Roger, count of Pallars, knight, and the said noble made at once twenty knights. And then the Lord King made the noble En Alfonso Fernandez, lord of Ixer, a knight, and the said noble made at once fifteen knights. And then the Lord King made the noble En G. de Anglesola a knight, and the said knight made at once ten knights. And then the Lord King dubbed the noble Don Juan Ximeno Daroca, knight, and the said noble at once made ten knights. And then the Lord King made the noble En Berenguer de Anglesola a knight and the said noble made at once ten knights. And then the Lord King made the noble En Pedro Cornel a knight, and the said noble made at once ten knights. And then the Lord King made the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

noble En Guillerm de Cervelló a knight, and the said noble made at once ten knights. And then the Lord King made the noble En Oton de Moncada a knight, and the said noble made at once ten knights.

And when the Lord King had dubbed these richs homens knights, the Lord Infante En Pedro dubbed the noble En Dalmau, viscount Castellnou, knight, and the said viscount made at once ten knights. And then the Lord Infante En Pedro made the noble En G. de Eril a knight, and the said noble made at once ten knights. And then the Lord Infante En Pedro made the noble viscount Vilamur a knight, and the said noble made at once ten knights. And then the said Lord Infante En Pedro made the noble En Gilabert de Cruilles a knight and the said noble made at once six knights. And then the Infante En Ramon Berenguer rose and made three richs homens new knights and each of these dubbed, at once, some ten, some eight, knights. And the said nobles whom the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer made knights, were the first he ever made. What shall I tell you? After these lords and richs homens had made these new knights, many other richs homens of Catalonia and Aragon made many knights. I tell you that I counted two hundred and fifty-six new knights, besides the nobles. And, assuredly there were many more, for no man could keep count of them so great was the crowd of people. And all these new knights were clothed in cloth of gold, trimmed with miniver, and these garments they gave to juglars; and then they put on other garments of scarlet silk-cloth and all had cloaks trimmed with miniver or ermine, and short coats and gowns of scarlet silk-cloth or coats of mail; and of the horses and housing and bridles I need not tell you; for nowhere could a man ever see such beautiful harness. And it was ordained that every rich hom on leaving the church should ride with his new knights.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

And so they went to the Aljaferia, which is a palace of the Lord King, and no one rode by their side, but each noble, riding on a valuable horse, placed himself at the head of the new knights he had made. He who would see good horses, handsome and well arrayed, here he could see them. And sons of knights carried before them, on horseback, each the sword of his lord, or of his brother, or of his relation who was a new knight; and, behind, came the other sons of knights, carrying their arms on horseback, and so no one else dared ride with them; rather, each went thus with trumpets and kettledrums and flutes and cymbals and many other instruments. Indeed, I tell you that there were over three hundred pairs of trumpets; and there were other juglars, wild knights and others, more than a thousand, so that the shouts and the noise were such that it seemed as if heaven and earth were crumbling. And, in this order, with great rejoicing, all went from San Salvador of Saragossa to the Aljaferia. And so also, besides this there were over three hundred bornadors[1] and full a hundred knights and sons of knights and burgesses throwing at targets. And, besides, there were full a hundred horsemen from the Kingdoms of Valencia and Murcia showing their horsemanship. And besides there was, behind the Aljaferia, a walled-in field, where you could see bulls killed[2]; each parish brought its bull decorated with the royal devices, and they brought him amidst the sounding of trumpets and great cheer,

[1] From "borne" the end of the lance used in jousts. The site of the jousts and tourneys in Barcelona is still called "Born."

[2] Bofarull says that this is perhaps one of the earliest mentions of bullfights, especially of bullfights in the old dominions of the crown of Aragon. In the Libro de Cántigas written by order of Alfonso X of Castile, is found an illustration depicting what is bull-baiting, rather than a bullfight. The spectators, men, women and children, are on the roof of a house, and the bull in the street below. Sharp-pointed bolts have been shot at him from above, and one is sticking in his forehead; two short shafts ending in what looks like a bunch of sharp points stick in his shoulder and flank, and several wounds are depicted besides. One man, from his safe elevation, flourishes a cloth; a rope or chain is also used for irritating the animal.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

and all brought their huntsmen who killed the bulls. And besides you would see, in the streets, women and damsels and many very notable people dance. What shall I tell you? The rejoicing was so great that no one was minded to do anything but look on here and there, and all was so well arranged that no man made any disturbance with another.

And this feast lasted from Easter Eve until the Friday after Easter, in the most beautiful weather of the world and the greatest peace there ever was amongst people. No one can say that there was a bad word spoken by one person to another, from the greatest to the meanest, from the day we assembled at Saragossa until the day we departed; rather, they assembled in great concord and in great concord dwelt there and, in great concord and love, separated. And all had good lodgings, so well had the notables of Saragossa ordained it. And everyone dined with the Lord King on Easter Eve and on Easter Day and on the Monday, as often as everyone pleased, for, as long as the Court lasted, the door was not shut. But when the three days were over, the Lord Infante En Pedro and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer each made a great banquet. On Tuesday the Lord Infante En Pedro invited the Lord King and all the richs homens and prelates and knights and citizens and all men who wished to dine with him. And on that day, the Lord Infante En Pedro held a very splendid court and made many gifts to richs homens and knights and citizens and all other manner of people. And on the following Wednesday, the Lord Archbishop of Toledo did the same at the house of the order of the Minorite friars of Saragossa, where he lodged. And on Thursday, the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer did the same. What shall I tell you? Thus the Court was maintained in all things with great cheer until Thursday at vesper-time, in fine, clear weather and, on Friday, there came, by the grace of God, a good

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

rain over all Aragon and Catalonia and the Kingdoms of Valencia and Murcia and lasted until the following Sunday and all that day. And so the land, which needed it much, had a full measure of the favour of God, as well in having a good lord, as in a good peace which the Lord King had at that time with all the peoples of the world, which cannot be said of any king in the world; and, also, he lived in great joy and peace with all his followers and, besides, the land had a sufficiency of good rain. And so, may it please Our Lord to give him life and health and to preserve him to his subjects, as he is the most gracious lord and the wisest and the most accomplished knight there is in the world, and the most catholic, and of the best Christians of the world.

And there were his two gracious sons, namely the Lord Infante En Pedro, the eldest, to whom oath of fidelity has been taken as Lord King of Aragon, after the Lord King his father, and the Lord Infante En Jaime, who is count of Urgel. And both these gracious Infantes, his sons, girded on the swords of a great number of the richs homens who were dubbed knights and bestowed many gifts and favours on them. And so all the Court was blessed in all ways by God and Our Lady Saint Mary, and all His blessed saints. Amen.

CHAPTER CCXCVII.

How the Lord King En Alfonso dubbed himself knight at Saragossa and in what manner; and of the ceremony with which he received the sacred Crown of the Kingdom.

Now, as I have spoken to you of the Court, how it assembled by the grace of God, I want to tell you in what manner the Lord King dubbed himself knight and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

received the sacred Crown; and in what manner he went to keep watch in the church of Saint Salvador in Saragossa; and what was the manner of the ceremony of the blessed order of chivalry he bestowed on himself, and of the ceremony of the coronation; and in what manner he issued from the church; and in what manner he entered his palace of Aljaferia.

And I want you all to know that, from the church of San Salvador, which is the church of the see of Saragossa, to the Aljaferia it is over two great miles and I wish to tell you this because I want all those who will read this book to know in what manner the Lord King dubbed himself knight and in what manner he placed the crown on his head, with what ceremony of blessings and masses and a fine orison; and in what manner his horse was led by the bridle until he was back in his palace; for it is good for all, of whatever condition they be, to know these things.

It is the truth that, at vesper-time on Good Friday, the Lord King sent to tell everyone that, on Saturday morning, Easter Eve, when it was time to sing the Alleluia, all should quit the mourning they were wearing for the Lord King, his father, and that every man should trim his beard and begin the feast. And he invited all men, without distinction, as I have told you before, for three days. And so, on Saturday morning, at the time of the Alleluia and as the bells were ringing, every man was apparelled as the Lord King had commanded for beginning the feast. So we who were for the city of Valencia, left our lodging (which was within the city near the said church of San Salvador), riding at the head of our bornadors and trumpeters and players of kettledrums and of the dulcimer and the drum and other instruments, all six of us, two by two, very richly dressed and arrayed and our squires riding also. And so we began our feast going through the centre of the town to the Aljaferia. And,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

when we had started everyone else started too. You would have heard suddenly the greatest noise of the world, of trumpets and all the other instruments. And thus we rode and made this feast until the hour of dinner, and then, when we had dined at the Aljaferia, we all returned to our lodging with the same ceremony. And when the bells were rung for vespers, everyone prepared to light the tapers, each in the place ordained for him and from the Aljaferia to San Salvador you could not tell where there were most tapers. They were not moved from the place assigned for them; in every place it had been written on the wall how many there should be, and so all were placed in proper order.

And when the bells were ringing madly, the Lord King issued from the Aljaferia to go to San Salvador, ordained as you shall hear. First of all came, on horseback, all the sons of knights who were carrying the swords of the noble knights; and then came the swords of the nobles who were to be new knights; and after the swords of the said nobles came the sword of the Lord King, carried by the noble En Ramon Cornel; and after the sword of the Lord King came two carriages of the Lord King with two wax tapers; in each wax taper there were over ten quintals of wax. They were lighted, though they were hardly wanted, for the other lights were so numerous that one could see as well as if it were bright daylight.

And behind the two wax candles, came the Lord King, riding on his horse, with the most beautiful harness ever made by the hands of masters, and the sword was carried before him, as I have told you already, the richest and most beautifully ornamented that Emperor or King ever carried; and behind the said Lord King came his arms, which a noble was carrying, and two other nobles were on each side of the arms, so the arms were carried along, by him who carried them, between

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

two nobles. And so, also, did the noble En Ramon Cornel go, carrying the sword between two nobles.

And behind the arms of the Lord King came all the nobles he was to make new knights, two by two; and behind them came the nobles the Lord Infante En Pedro was to make knights, and then came those nobles whom En Ramon Berenguer was to make knights, and then those whom En Ramon Folch was to make knights, and after the richs homens came the others who were to be new knights, two by two. And after them, when they had all gone past, there came likewise all the arms, all arranged two by two, and all the arms of the noblemen and their swords were carried by knights, and those of the other knights were carried by sons of knights. And so, all in order, riding their horses, dressed in rich cloth of gold and with very beautiful harness, two by two, as I have told you already, they came behind the Lord King. No other man dared to ride there except the Lord Infante En Pedro and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer, who went about ordaining everything, so that no man should go out of the order assigned.

And so, by the grace of God, amidst a great noise of trumpets and kettle-drums and dulcimers and cymbals and drums and other instruments, and with wild knights shouting all together "Aragon!" and the names of the Houses to which the richs homens belonged, the Lord King came to the church of San Salvador; and it was long past midnight when he and his retinue came to the church. And there all kept watch together, saying orisons, and rejoicing and singing in praise of Our Lord Jesus Christ. And thus they spent all that holy night, and very devoutly heard matins, at which were present all the archbishops and bishops and abbots and priors who said all the prayers with great devoutness. And when it was full daylight, the Lord Archbishop

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of Saragossa put on vestments for saying mass, and the Lord King placed the crown and the sword on the high altar with his own hands at the proper hour, and put on a surplice, as if he were going to say mass, and then put over the surplice the royal dalmatic, the richest Emperor or King ever put on; and, at every garment he put on, the archbishop said the orison which is ordained to be said by the canonical law. And then the Lord King put the stole over his neck and round his shoulders, as it is directed to be put, and this stole was so rich, with so many pearls and precious stones, that it would be difficult to say how much it was worth; and then he put on the maniple, also very rich and valuable. And, when all this was done, the archbishop of Saragossa said mass with great solemnity. And when mass was begun and the epistle had been read, the Lord King ordered his spurs to be put on, the right spur by his brother the Lord Infante En Pedro, and the left by the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer. And when this was done, the Lord King went to the altar and took the sword and, holding it, threw himself down in prayer before the altar and the Lord Archbishop said a very fine orison over him. And when it was finished, and the Lord King had said the prayer, he kissed the cross of the sword and girded it on himself, and then, when he had girded it on, he drew it from the scabbard and brandished it three times. And the first time he brandished it, he defied all the enemies of the Holy Catholic faith; and the second time, he engaged to defend orphans, wards and widows; and the third time, he promised to maintain justice all his life, towards the greatest as well as towards the least, and towards the stranger as well as towards his friends. And when he had done this, he returned the sword to its scabbard and when the Gospel had been sung, he offered himself and his sword to God, to hold him in His keeping and

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

give him victory over all his enemies. And the Lord Archbishop anointed him with chrism on the shoulder and on the right arm, and thus he heard mass. And when mass had been said, the Lord King ungirded his sword himself and put it back on the altar, near the crown.

And after the Archbishop of Saragossa had said this mass, the Lord Infante En Juan, Archbishop of Toledo, brother of the said Lord King, put on his vestments. And when he had put them on and had begun mass, the Lord King himself took the crown from the altar and placed it on his own head; and when he had done this, the Lord Archbishop of Toledo and the Lord Infante En Pedro and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer adjusted it for him. And when the Lord King placed the crown on his head the said Lords Archbishops and Bishops and Abbots and Priors and the Lords Infantes with them, cried in a loud voice: *Te Deum laudamus*. And as they were singing this, the Lord King took the gold sceptre in his right hand and put it in his left and then took the orb in his right; and, at each thing taken up, the Lord Archbishop said a great orison.

And when all this was done and the Gospel had been sung, the Lord King again, with a low obeisance, offered himself and his sacred crown to God, and knelt down very humbly before the altar, and the Lord Archbishop finished saying mass. And, when it had been said and the Lord King had fully received the grace of God, and his chivalry and his sacred royal sovereignty, and was anointed and consecrated King and Lord of the Kingdoms of Aragon and Sardinia and of Valencia and Corsica, and of the county of Barcelona, he went to seat himself before the altar of San Salvador, on the royal throne, and he placed the sceptre and orb on the altar, and sent for all the nobles I have named to you already and dubbed them all knights in the order you

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

have heard before. And as each rich hom was made a knight, he went to the chapel which was assigned to him, and there he made his new knights. And the Lord Infante went thus likewise to his chapel which was assigned to him, and dubbed the four richs homens knights, and the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer and the noble En Ramon Folch did the same. And these richs homens whom they made knights, also went each to the chapel assigned to him and made the knights he was to make; and when all the richs homens had made their knights, they went with them to the Aljaferia, as I have told you before. And when all this was done, the Lord King took the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left and thus, with the crown on his head and with the orb and sceptre, he issued out of the church and mounted his horse, and they carried his sword before him and his arms behind him, in the order you have heard already that they had done at night, when he went to watch in the church.

And if you wish to know what the crown was like, I tell you that it was of gold and all covered with precious stones, such as rubies and ballas rubies and sapphires and turquoises and emeralds, and pearls as big as pigeons eggs and, in front, it had a fine carbuncle; and it was a handsbreadth in height, and it had sixteen fleurons, and everyone, merchants and lapidaries, estimated it to be worth fifty thousand libras of Barcelona. And the sceptre was of gold and was full three palms long, and on the top of the sceptre there was a ruby, the most beautiful ever seen, full as big as a hen's egg. And the orb was of gold and had on the top a gold flower with precious stones, and on the flower a cross very richly adorned with precious stones.

And the horse was the best arrayed there ever was. And so he mounted his horse, dressed in his dalmatic, with the stole and the maniple, and with the crown on

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

his head and the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left. And, fastened to the horse's bit, were two pairs of reins, one pair was part of the bridle fastened to the neck of the horse, and this was held by the Lord Infante En Pedro on the right, and on the left by the Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer and by many nobles of Catalonia and Aragon. And the other reins which were of white silk and were full fifty palms long, were held by richs homens and knights and citizens on foot and, behind them, we six from Valencia and six from Barcelona and six from Saragossa and six from Tortosa and of the other cities held the reins. So that the whole length of reins was held up by men on foot and no other man rode near them, except he who was carrying the sword in front of all the holders of the reins and, besides him, he who carried the arms; and each of these was accompanied by two nobles, as you have heard already. And behind the arms of the Lord King came, on horseback, most beautifully arrayed, the richs homens whom the Lord King had made new knights. And thus, with this joyfulness, showing his royal majesty, anointed and consecrated and blessed of God and of all, amidst great rejoicing, as you have heard before, he came to the Aljaferia. And assuredly, before he got there the hour of nones[1] had long gone by.

And so, his horse being thus led, he entered the royal palace and dismounted, with the crown on his head and the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left, and thus went up to his chamber. And after a long while, he issued from the chamber with another crown on his head, a smaller one, as the other was very heavy; but yet this one was not so small that it was not half a palm high, and was so rich and beautiful that it was estimated at over twenty-five thousand libras. And I wish you to

[1] 9 p.m.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

know that when the Lord King was on his horse and left San Salvador, what he was wearing and the harness on the horse was estimated at a hundred and fifty thousand libras of Barcelona. And so, as I have told you already, the Lord King, with the smaller crown on his head, and holding the orb and sceptre, came to sit down and dine. And on the right hand side of the table, a stool of gold had been apparelled for him, on which he placed the orb and, on the left, another stool of gold on which he placed the sceptre. And there sat at his table (which was eighteen palms long), on his right, his brother the Lord Infante, and his brother Monsenyer En Juan, Archbishop of Toledo, at some distance from him. And on the other side, further from him, sat the Lord Archbishop of Saragossa, and the Archbishop of Arborea sat beyond the Archbishop of Saragossa. And at another table sat the bishops, and at another the abbots and priors. And then, on the other side, on the right, sat all the richs homens who had been dubbed knights that day, and beyond them all the new knights who had been dubbed knights that day. And the Lord King sat so much higher than all others that all could see him. And after that, we citizens were ordained to sit, all in good order, so that each had the place due to him; and they ordained noble servitors and knights and sons of knights to attend on each of us, according to the ceremony and honour due to each. And all were very splendidly attended to and provided for, and it was marvellous how many people were present; no one who has not been there could imagine it.

And as I have told you in general how all were attended upon, I must turn to tell you how the Lord King, in particular, was attended upon. It is a fact that the Lord Infante En Pedro wished to be major-domo on this festal Easter Day, and he ordained the matter as you have heard. He himself and the Lord Infante En Ramon

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Berenguer presented the finger-bowl to the said Lord King. And it was ordained that the said Lord Infante En Ramon Berenguer should serve the cup to the Lord King, and then twelve nobles should serve, together with him, at the table of the Lord King. And the Lord Infante En Pedro, with two nobles—all three hand in hand and he in the middle—came first singing a new dance he had composed; and all those who were bringing the dishes responded. And when he came to the table of the Lord King he took the bowl and tasted the contents and set it before the said Lord King, and then set down the carving board. And when he had thus placed the first dish before the Lord King, and had finished the dance, he took off the cloak and tunic of cloth of gold trimmed with ermine and many pearls which he was wearing, and gave them to a juglar, and, at once, other very rich garments were ready for him, which he put on. And he kept the same order with all the dishes served; at each dish which he carried, he sang a new dance he, himself, had composed, and gave away the garments he was wearing, all very splendid. And there were full ten dishes served. And every time when he had set a dish before the Lord King and had tasted it, the nobles and knights and the other servitors placed upon the tables so many dishes that no one could have made any improvement upon it.

CHAPTER CCXCVIII.

How after he had received the crown of the Kingdom a very rich seat was erected for the Lord King En Alfonso on which he sat with his richs homens and knights; and how the juglars En Romaset and En Comi sang there.

And when the Lord King and all dined in the royal palace, a very rich and splendid seat was erected for the

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Lord King and for the Archbishops to sit in the same order in which they had sat at table. And the Lord King, with the crown on his head as he had sat at the table, and with the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left, rose from the table and came to sit on the aforementioned seat in the palace. And around him, at his feet, sat nobles and knights and we citizens. And when all were seated, En Romaset, the juglar, sang in a loud voice a new serventesch before the Lord King, which the Lord Infante En Pedro had composed in honour of the said Lord King; and the theme of the serventesch was this: that the Lord Infante told him in it what the meaning is of the crown, the orb and the sceptre, and how according to their meaning, the Lord King should act. And in order that you should know, I will tell you briefly; but if you wish to know it more exactly, refer to the said serventesch and there you will find it told more clearly.

The meaning of the crown is this; that the crown is round, and as in a round thing there is no beginning nor end, it signifies Our Lord, the True, Almighty God, Who has no beginning and will have no end; and because it signifies God Almighty it has been placed on the King's head, and not in the middle of his body, nor at his feet, but on his head, where the understanding is; and therefore he should remember God Almighty and be resolved to gain, with this crown he has taken, the crown of Heavenly glory, which is an everlasting Kingdom. And the sceptre signifies justice, which he should practise in all things; as the sceptre is long and strong, and like a rod which beats and punishes, so does justice punish, to prevent the wicked from doing evil and to improve the condition of the good. And the orb signifies that, as he holds it in his hand, so should he hold his dominions in his hand and power and, as God has entrusted them to him, he should defend and rule and govern them with truth and justice and mercy, and should not consent that

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

any man, either for himself or for another, should do them any injury.

And so the Lord King understood the serventesch very well, and the moral it carried and, if it pleases God, he will put it into execution in such manner that everyone will be content. God grant him this favour.

And then, when En Romaset had said the aforementioned serventesch, En Comi said a new song the Lord Infante En Pedro had composed; and because En Comi sings better than any other Catalan, he gave it to him to sing. And when he had sung it, he was silent and En Novellet, a juglar, rose and spoke seven hundred rhymed verses which the Lord Infante En Pedro had newly composed; and the theme and the moral were all about the rule the Lord King should exercise over the ordaining of his court and all his officials, as well in his court as in all his provinces. And all this the Lord King heard favourably, as the wisest lord there is in the world and, therefore, it if be God's pleasure, he will thus carry it out.

And when all this had been sung and said, it was vesper time, and so, regally, with the crown on his head and the orb in his right hand and the sceptre in his left, he went up to his chamber to rest, for well he needed it; and we all went to our inns. And all the city was given up to rejoicing, as I have told you before. And thenceforth it may be said that so regal and generous a court has never been held, nor one so joyous and with such great ceremonies. May Our Lord the true God let him reign many years in His service and for the good of his soul, and to the profit and exaltation of all his dominions and of all Christendom. Amen.

And so you can understand how the said Lord King has wished to resemble Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who comforted, by His Resurrection, in this blessed feast of Easter, the Virgin, Our Lady Saint Mary, and His holy blessed Apostles and Evangelists, and His other Disciples,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

who before were all sad and sorrowful at His Passion. And thus the subjects of the said Lord King of Aragon were all sad at the death of the good King En Jaime, his father, and he, on this holy and blessed Easter day, has cheered and comforted them all in such manner, that, if it pleases God, we shall live cheerful and content as long as we are in this world. Amen.

THE END.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

APPENDIX I.

SOVEREIGNS OF THE PERIOD.

KINGS OF ARAGON.

Pedro II	1196—1213.
Jaime I	1213—1276.
Pedro III...	1276—1285.
Alfonso III	1285—1291.
Jaime II	1291—1327.
Alfonso IV	1327—1336.

KINGS OF MALLORCA.

Jaime I	1276—1311.
Sancho I	1311—1325.
Jaime II	1325—1344.

KINGS OF CASTILE.

Fernando III	1217—1252.
Alfonso X	1252—1284.
Sancho IV	1284—1295.
Fernando IV	1295—1312.
Alfonso XI	1312—1350.

KINGS OF ENGLAND.

Henry III	1216—1272.
Edward I...	1272—1307.
Edward II	1307—1327.
Edward III	1327—1377.

KINGS OF FRANCE.

Philippe Auguste	1180—1223.
Louis VIII	1223—1226.
Louis IX	1226—1270.
Philippe III	1270—1285.
Philippe IV	1285—1314.
Louis X	1314—1316.
Jean	1316.
Philippe V	1316—1322.
Charles IV	1322—1328.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY.

SOVEREIGNS OF THE PERIOD—*continued.*

KINGS OF NAPLES AND SICILY.

Frederick I (II of Germany)	1209—1250.
Conrad	1250—1254.
Conradin	1254—1268.
Manfred	1258—1266.
Charles I	1266—1282.

KINGS OF NAPLES.

Charles I	1266—1285.
Charles II	1285—1309.
Robert I	1309—1343.

KINGS OF SICILY.

Pedro I (III of Aragon)	1282—1285.
Jaime I (II of Aragon)	1285—1296.
Fadrique I	1296—1336.

POPES.

Honorius III	1216—1227.
Gregory IX	1227—1241.
Celestino IV	1241—1243.
Innocent IV	1243—1254.
Alexander IV	1254—1261.
Urban IV	1261—1264.
Clement IV	1265—1268.
Interregnum.	
Gregory X	1271—1276.
Innocent V (5 months and 2 days) ...	1276.
Adrian V (37 days)	1276.
John XXI (8 months and 8 days) ...	1276.
Nicholas III	1277—1280.
Martin IV	1281—1285.
Honorius IV	1285—1287.
Nicholas IV	1288—1292.
Interregnum.	
Celestino V (5 months)	1294.
Boniface VIII	1294—1303.
Benedict XI	1303—1304.
Clement V	1305—1314.
John XXII	1316—1334.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

SOVEREIGNS OF THE PERIOD—*continued*.

HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE.

Frederick II	1212—1250.
Conrad IV	1250—1254.
William of Holland	1254—1256.
Richard of Cornwall	1257—1272.
Alfonso X of Castile (elected 1257, did not reign).	
Rudolph of Hapsburg	1272—1291.
Adolph of Nassau	1291—1298.
Albert of Austria	1298—1308.
Henry of Luxemburg	1308—1314.
Louis of Bavaria	1314—1347.

APPENDIX II.

ARAGON.

CHILDREN OF JAIME I.

(1) By Leonor of Castile :

Alfonso, died before his father.

(2) By Violante of Hungary :

Pedro III.

Jaime II, King of Mallorca.

Fernando, died before his father.

Sancho, Archbishop of Toledo, killed in battle in 1275.

Violante, m. Alfonso X of Castile.

Constanza, m. Manuel, brother of Alfonso X.

Sancha, a nun.

Maria, a nun.

Isabel, m. Philip III of France.

CHILDREN OF PEDRO III AND COSTANZA.

Alfonso III, died unmarried.

Jaime II.

Fadrique I of Sicily, m. Eleanor, daughter of Charles II of Naples.

Pedro (died at the siege of Mayorga, between Valladolid and Leon, 1296), m. Guillerma de Moncada, daughter of Gaston VII of Bearn.

Isabel, m. King Dionis of Portugal.

Violante, m. King Robert of Naples as his 1st wife.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHILDREN OF JAIME II: by BLANCA (daughter of Charles II of Naples).

Jaime, renounced the succession.
Alfonso IV.
Juan, Archbishop of Toledo, and afterwards of Taragona.
Pedro.
Ramon Berenguer.
Maria, m. Pedro of Castile, son of Sancho IV.
Constanza, m. Juan, brother of Sancho IV of Castile.
Isabel, m. Duke Frederick of Austria.
Blanca, Prioress of Sixena.
Violante, m. (1st) Philip of Taranto, Despot of Romania; (2nd) Don Lope de Luna.

CHILDREN OF ALFONSO IV AND MARIA DE ENTENZA.

Pedro IV.
Jaime.
Isabel, m. Jaime II of Mallorca.

CASTILE.

CHILDREN OF ALFONSO X AND VIOLANTE OF ARAGON.

Fernando de la Cerda, died before his father.
Sancho IV.
Pedro, m. Maria, daughter of Jaime II of Aragon.
Juan Manuel, m. Constanza, daughter of Jaime II of Aragon.
Jaime.
Berenguela.
Beatrix.
Violante.
Isabel.
Leonor.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

CHILDREN OF JAIME I OF MALLORCA AND ESCLARAMUNDA (daughter of the Count de Foix).

Jaime, renounced the succession.
Sancho I.
Ferrando, m. Isabel, daughter of Marguerite, Lady of Akova.
Felipe.
A daughter, m. Juan, son of Don Manuel of Castile.
A daughter, m. King Robert of Sicily as his 2nd wife.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

INDEX.

Acre, lxii, 468–9.
Adri, Agnes de, 642.
Adramyti, Cape, gate of Troy, 511.
Adrianople, lxvii, lxviii, 512–3.
Agde, 380–1.
Ahones, Ferran de, lxvi; promises to accompany Roger de Flor to Constantinople, 482; embarks, 485; Admiral of the Empire, 489; marriage of, 489; guards the Greek islands against the Turks, 493; goes to Ani, 498 *F* 500; brings reinforcements to Roger de Flor, 501; 510; assassination of, 516.
Akova, barony of, 257 note; left to Margaret, daughter of Prince Louis of the Morea, 528 *et seq.*
Alagon, Blasco de, fights and defeats the Knights of Death at Gagliano, 456–7; further victories of, 459; at the battle of Mazzaro, 461–2; friendship of, with Roger de Flor, 471; goes to the relief of Messina, 473; enters Messina, 474; raids Calabria, 681; in Palermo, 682.
Alamany, Ramon, Justicia of Sicily, ix; orders of, for the evacuation of Sicily and Calabria, 444; departure of, from Sicily, 444; compensation for losses given to, 445.
Alameric II, viscount of Narbonne, entertains Alfonso X and Queen Violante of Castile, 61.
Alans, in Lantzaura, 533; mode of life of, 534; considered the best cavalry in the East, 534; defeat of, 535.
Alcalá, battle of, 36 note.
Alcira, *see* Algeciras de Alhadra.
Alcoy, 23; 28; 66.
Alef, lxxiii, Chief of the Misconas 597; refuses to submit to Muntaner, 605; victory of, 606; defeat of, 607; submission of, to Conrado de Lansa, 610; cunning of, 610–1.
Alençon, count of, brother of Philip III of France, at Catona, 145; 152; attack on, and death of 155–6.
Alet, Corberan de, agrees to go to Constantinople, 483; embarks, 485; victory of, over the Turks, 498; death of, 498.
Aleynep, Chief of the Sicilians, 106; goes to Palermo with Queen Costanza, 237; at the Cortes, 241 *et seq.*; votes for the execution of the Duke of Salerno, 287.
Alfonso III of Aragon, xlviii; li; lvii; 31; 213; 238; at the Pass of Panisars, 300; at Peralada, 307; attacks the camp of Philip III, 309; leaves Peralada, 314; in command at Gerona, 322; at Barcelona, 357; takes leave of his dying father, 364; at Salou, 364; lands and sets up his camp in Mallorca, 364; receives the news of the death of his father, 371; Mallorca surrenders to, 376; in Ibiza, 377; at Barcelona, 377; attends the obsequies of his father, 382; 385; orders of, for the invasion of Castile, 386; hostile plans of, against Sancho IV, 387–8; challenge of, sent to Sancho, 388; coronation of, at Valencia, 390; kidnaps the Infantes de la Cerda, 390; invades Castile, 390–1; returns to Aragon, 392; assembles his forces at Peralada,

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

397; at the tournament at Figueras, 398; at Barcelona, 398; is entreated for peace, 398; interview of, with Edward I, 403; betrothal of, 404; releases Charles II from captivity, 405; return of, to Aragon, 406; plans of, for the conquest of Minorca, 410; challenges the almojarife, 410; summons Luria to Barcelona, 410; sets sail for Mallorca, 410; fleet of, dispersed by a storm, 413; rejoined by his galleys, 414; victory of, over the Saracens, 415; besieges the castle of Mahon, 415; treatment of the almojarife and the inhabitants by, 415–6; settlement of Minorca by, 416; in Mallorca and Ibiza, 416; assists the Infantes de la Cerda with money, 417; submits the treaty of peace with Charles II to the Cortes, 418; concludes peace, 419–20; illness of, 421; testament of, 421; death of, 421–2, 422 note.

Alfonso IV of Aragon, lxxiv to lxxvi; sets sail for the conquest of Sardinia, 661; at Palmas dels Sols, 661; besieges Iglesias; illness of, 662; takes Iglesias, 663; besieges Cagliari, 663; builds Castle Bonaire, 663; 664; defeats Count Ner, 666 *et seq.*; repulses an attack on Bonaire, 671–2; signs a peace, 674–5; submission of Corsica to, 676; garrisons Bonaire, 676; returns to Catalonia 677; concludes a peace with the rebel Pisans in Cagliari, 700–1; wife and children of, 706; succeeds his father, 709; dominions of, 710; holds a council at Montblanch, 711; at Barcelona, 712; 713; coronation of, 714, 719 *et seq.*

Alfonso X of Castile, xlii, 29 note; visit of, to Jaime I, 33 *et seq*; in Valencia, 58; journey of, to the Council of Lyons, 59 *et seq*; disappointment of, at the Council, 64; return of, to Castile, 63–4; wife and sons of, 99; death of, 111.

Alfonso, Infante, son of Jaime I of Aragon, 17, 17 note.

Alfonso, Infante, son of Jaime II *see* Alfonso IV.

Alfonso, Infante, son of Pedro III, *see* Alfonso III.

Alfonso Federico, son of Fadrique I of Sicily, lxxi; Chief of the Grand Company, 581–2; marriage of, 582.

Algeciras de Alhadra, 23; 588.

Alicante, 451.

Almeria, fight at the esperonte of, 590 *et seq.*

Almohades, *see* Moabs.

Almojarife, title of, 119 note.

Almostansir, 74–5 note; *see* Mostanzar.

Almugavars, origin and description of, 27 note; outfit of, 139; despised in Messina, 141; bold sortie of, 141; 142 *et seq.*; claim an opportunity for loot, 153; at Catona, 155–6; in Calabria, 169; in Luria's fleet, 187; escort Queen Costanza, 243; at the Pass of Manzana, 305 *et seq.*; burn Peralada, 314–5; their cry of "awake the iron," 457, 461, 502; at the battle of Gagliano, 457–8; their charity, 482.

Almyros, 562.

Amalfi, pirates of, 373; 402.

Ampurias, A. Roger, Count of, 117; escorts Queen Costanza, 232–3; at Perpignan, 244; defends the Passes of Bañolas and Manzana, 300; at Castellon, 305; 310; 313; Rosas surrendered to, 357; 392; in Sicily 422–3; with Jaime II to Barcelona, 425.

Ampurias, Countess of, 715.

Ampurias, Ugueto de, Count de Squilace, 461; 470; 477.

Ampurias, Pedro, Count of, *see* Pedro, Infante, son of Jaime II.

Andronicus II, *see* Palaeologus.

Anglesola, Berenguer de, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714.

Anglesola, Galceran de, in Mallorca, 416; in the fight with Count Ner, 665; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714.

Anglesola, Guillermo de, 309; defends Peralada, 313; at the Siege of Almeria, 591.

Anglesola, Ramon de, death of at the siege of Leon, 454–5.

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Anguera, Berenguer A. de, severely wounded in a tournament, 433.
Ani, lxvi ; 498 *et seq.*
Anjou, Charles of, *see* Charles I of Naples and Sicily.
Apros, battle of, 525–6.
Aragon, the House of, 53–4.
Arborea, the Judge of, accepts the Infante Alfonso as Lord of Sicily, 661 ; advises the siege of Iglesias, 661 ; at Cagliari, 669–690 ; 702 ; 703 ; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 713.
Arenos, Ferran Ximeno de, lxix ; with Roger de Flor, 485 ; in Gallipoli, 527 ; 528 ; besieges Maditos, 528–9 ; sides with Entenza against Rocafort, 546 ; in Gallipoli, 547–8 ; the order of the march of, to Salonica, 553 ; flees to a castle of Andronicus II 554 ; becomes a vassal of the Emperor, 556 ; prosperity of, 557 note ; 558.
Arenos, Ximeno Pérez de, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 715.
Arenos, Sandorta de, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 715.
Aria, Count, 629 note.
Aria, the son of Count, marriage of, to the Princess Margaret of Morea, 629–30 ; takes possession of Akova (Matagrifon) 630 ; birth of the daughter of, 632 ; death of, 632.
Aros, Martin Pérez de, 462.
Aros, Pedro de, agrees to go to Constantinople with Luria, 483 ; embarks, 485 ; in command at Ani, 501.
Aros, Pérez de, 462.
Aros, Sancho de, agrees to go to Constantinople with Luria, 483.
Arta, 581 ; 584 ; 626.
Arta, Despot of, 575 ; 631.
Artaqui, (Cyzicus) lxv ; lxvi ; description of, 489–90 ; climate of, 492.
Artois, Count of, xlvii ; liii ; 207 ; 294 ; 296 ; 401.
Artreda, Eximeno de, defends Ull, 270 ; his life spared, 270 ; escape of, from Narbonne, 270.
Asen (Azan) John, King of the Bulgars, lxv, lxvi ; 482 note. *See* Lantzaura.
Astarach, Count of, 309.
Atar, Lord of Malaga, 32.
Athens, Duchy of, the Grand Company established in the, 580.
Athens, French Dukes of, 583–4 ; 627.
Aur, meaning of the word, 50 note ; 135 ; 146 ; 190 ; 254.
Availles, A. d', offers to lead an expedition to Sicily, 259–60 ; deserted by his galleys, 261 ; surrenders, 262 *et seq.*
Ayasaluk, *see* Ephesus.
Aymenart, Count, 304, 304 note.

Barcelona, 72 ; 114 ; 289 ; 299 ; 322 ; 336 ; 358 ; 398 ; 407 ; 426 ; 439 ; 510 ; 645 ; 712.
Barquet, 76–7 ; 604 ; joins Muntaner, 605.
Baux, Counts of, 632.
Bearn, Gaston de, wealth of 443 ; marriage of the daughter of, 443.
Beatrice of Provence ; inherits Provence, 82 ; marriage of, to Charles of Anjou, 82 ; in Paris, 82 ; crowned Queen of Sicily, 86 ; in Paris, 86.
Beatrice, wife of Count Amadeo of Savoy, 31 note.
Beaumarchais, Eustache de, xlvii ; invades Aragon, 270, 270 note ; returns to Navarre, 271.
Bella, Donna, mother of Roger de Luria xxxvii ; in Catalonia, 47 ; 257 ; 396.
Ben Athamar, King of Granada, 36 note.
Benatia, 76–7.
Benatia, Jacob, 604 ; at the Sound of Jerba, 606 *et seq.* ; 619–20.
Benevento, xli ; battle of, 87.
Ben Margan, 76–7.
Ben Margan, Selim, at the Sound of Jerba, 606 *et seq.* ; 619–20.
Bensimomen, House of, 595–6 ; 599 ; 604–5.
Beni-Merines, 36 note.
Besalú, 321 ; 337.
Béziers, 378 *et seq.*
Blanca, daughter of Charles II, lx ; 439 ; crowned Queen of Aragon, 440 ; marriage of, 441 ; Muntaner's praise of, 441 ; children of, 441, 441 note ; 443.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Blanca, daughter of Count Bonifazio de Lanza, xxxvii.
Blanche, daughter of Louis IX, marriage of, 99; goes secretly to Aragon, 101 note.
Boaps, xxxviii; xxxix; King of Tunis, 76; 77; King of Bougie, 107; rebellion of, 107; death of, 107; testament of, 107.
Boca Daner, 448, 448 note; 504; distance of, from Tenedos, 511–2; 528; 552.
Bocanegra, Antonio, at the battle of Gallipoli, 541; death of, 541.
Bofarull, Antonio, notes, pp. 22, 25, 27, 50 59, 92, 152, 157, 169, 180, 181, 184, 193, 225, 229, 247, 290, 351, 620, 629, 652, 663, 674, 675, 719.
Bonaire, Castle, built by the Infante Alfonso and Carros, 663, 674, *et seq.*; trade of, 689; 697.
Bona Paraula, 278, 278 note; 327; 521.
Boniface VIII, negotiates peace between Jaime II and Charles II, 436; 447; 459; 464–5.
Bonifazio de Verona (dalle Carceri), 568; life of, spared in the battle of Kephissos, 577–8; family of, 584; in the Morea, 585; chosen to knight the Duke of Athens, 586; marriage of, 586; procurator of the Duchy of Athens, 587.
Bordeaux, combat at, of Pedro III and Charles of Anjou, 180, 180 note; the lists at, 205.
Bordon, 331; 395; 667 *et seq.*
Bosecri, xxxix; xl; King of Bougie, 107; at Constantine, 120; 199.
Boxadors, at the battle of Cagliari, 667; sent to Pisa, 675; 702; governor of Sardinia, 713; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 713.
Brienne, Count, 260; one of the Knights of Death, 457; killed in the battle of Gagliano, 458.
Brienne, Walter de, Duke of Athens, lxx, lxxi; 575–6; refuses to pay the Grand Company, 576; killed in the battle of Kephissos, 576–7.
Brindisi, 395; prosperity and importance of, 467.
Buceyt, Amar Ben, joins Muntaner in Jerba, 605.
Buchon, notes of, pp. 225, 229, 340, 488, 543, 620, 663.
Bugron, xl; Lord of Constantine; offer of, to become a vassal of Pedro III, 107–8; discloses his plans, 119; betrayed and killed, 120.
Bullfights, 719–20, 719 note.
Burgundy, Duke of, in Greece, 625 *et seq.*; descendants of, 628.
Burgundy, Louis of, *see* Louis, Prince of Morea.
Busach, xxxviii; xxix; 76 *et seq*; rebellion of Boaps against, 107.

Caesar privileges of the, 507; title of, 508, 508 note.
Cagliari, siege of, 661 *et seq.*; battle of, 666 *et seq.*; 674; 689 *et seq.*; 694; 700 *et seq.*
Calabria, Charles Duke of, son of Robert I, 681; in command in Sicily, 682; at Palermo, 682; defeat of, 683; return of, to Calabria, 684.
Calatagiro, Juan de, 237.
Calatayud, festivities at, 429–30; round table held at, by Roger de Luria, 432–3.
Calbet, Ramon, sells by auction the captured inhabitants of Minorca, 416.
Caldes, Guillem Peris de, 514.
Caldes, Juan Peris de, 514.
Capmany, 229 note.
Carbons, faction of the, suppressed by Jaime II, 431.
Cardona, Ramon de, 714.
Cardona, Ramon Folch, Viscount, 232; at Peralada, 307; in a sortie, 309–10; prepares the defence of Gerona, 313; in command in Gerona, 320; 342; 349; 714.
Carrós, Berenguer de, admiral, 619; at Pantanella, 620; returns to Trapani, 621; 677.
Carrós, Berenguer de, son of Francisco de, at Bonaire, 676; at the surrender of Cagliari, 702–3.
Carròs, Francisco de, admiral, at Cagliari, 665; 668; captures Pisan galleys, 689–90; blockades Cagliari, 691; defeats Gaspar Doria, 692–3.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Cartalla, Guillermo Galceran, *see* Catanzaro.
Caserta, Count de la, desertion of King Manfred by, 87.
Castellar, Jaime de, lxxiii; in Jerba, 596; defeat and death of, 597.
Castellauli, Maymo de, at Tarascon, 420.
Castellnou, Count, 313; at Gerona, 322.
Castellnou, Dalmau de, lxxiv; leaves Peralada, 313; in Sicily, 617; 623; 714.
Castellnou, Gesbert de, xl; sent to Rome, 123 *et seq.*; in Rome, 132–3; return of, to Collo, 133; at the tournament at Figueras, 398.
Catalan Company, *see* Grand Company.
Catalans, the, expert crossbowmen, 73; 330.
Catalonia, description of, 72–3.
Catanzaro, Guillermo Galceran Cartalla, Count of, in Gerona, 322; prowess of, 322; alcaide of Barbary, 322; 456; at the battle of Gagliano, 457–8; 459; at the battle of Mazzara, 461; goes to the relief of Messina, 473; at Callatabellota, 477.
Catania, 617; 633 *et seq.*; 469; 643–4.
Catona, distance from Messina, 144; attack on, 155 *et seq.*
Caza, Arnaldo de, 649.
Cerda, Infante Alfonso de la, liii; liv; lviii; commands the van at the invasion of Castile, 390; sworn King of Castile, 391; 426;—*see* Cerda, Infantes Alfonso and Fernando de la.
Cerda, Infante Fernando de la, xlii; marriage of, 99; death of, 99; nickname of, 99 note.
Cerda, Infantes Alfonso and Fernando de la, lvii; lix; taken to Játiva, 390; at war with Sancho IV, 418; renounce their claim to Castile, 428.
Charles I of Naples and Sicily, xli to xlv; xlvii; in Paris, 83; in Rome 84 *et seq.*; in Paris, 86; at war with King Manfred, 86; at the battle of Benevento, 87; sentences Conradin to death, 88; 94–5; 103–4; rebellion of the Sicilians against, 106; besieges Messina, 106; 139; raises the siege of Messina, 142; lands at Catona, 144; at Reggio, 145; size of the fleet of, 148; defeated at Nicotera, 148; 152; 156 *et seq.*; challenges Pedro III to a combat at Bordeaux, 159 *et seq.*; 164–5; in Rome, 166, 168; appeal of, to the Pope and the Consistory, 176, *et seq.*; in Paris, 179–80, 184; orders of, to Admiral Cornut, 185–6; at Bordeaux, 205; preparations of, for the combat, 206; adherents of, in Italy, 206–7; wisdom, and experience of, 207; at Bordeaux, 220–1; at Toulouse, 221–2; in Rome with Charles of Valois, 247; prepares to attack Sicily, 249; defeat of the fleet of, at the battle of the Counts, 255; plots of, against Pedro III, 294; at Naples, 294; losses of, in Calabria, 294; cruelty of, to prisoners, 294–5; death of, 295; sons of, 295.
Charles II of Naples, xlii; xlv to xlvii; liv; lv; lix; lxi; lxiv; lxxii; at Toulouse, 95; with James I of Mallorca, 96; complains of Pedro III's hostile attitude, 103; at the battle of Naples, 279 *et seq.*; a prisoner in Castle Matagrifon, 284; 285 note; sentenced to death, 288; a prisoner in Barcelona, 289; released from captivity, 405; Muntaner's praise of, 405–6; the grave of Mary Magdalen revealed to, in a dream, 406; 407; obtains aid for the relief of Gaeta, 408; return of, to Naples, 409; endeavours to conclude peace, 436; cedes Anjou to Charles of Valois, 437; concludes peace, 439; takes his daughter to Peralada for her betrothal to Jaime II, 440; 442; orders of, to his son for the war in Sicily, 459–60; 464.
Charles Martel, son of Charles II, lv; at Gaeta, 408; death of, 445; 445 note.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Charles, Prince, *see* Charles II.
Charles of Valois, *see* Valois.
Chépoi, Thibaut de, in command of Venetian galleys, 563; the Infante Ferrando and Muntaner prisoners of, 564; sends Ferrando to the Duke of Athens, 564; sends Muntaner back to the Grand Company, 565; elected commander of the Grand Company, 566; authority of, disregarded by Rocafort, 567; reproves Rocafort, 573; leaves the Company, 574; hands over Rocafort to King Robert, 574.
Ciurano, 407.
Clarenza, 394; 571; 583; 640–1.
Clemencia, daughter of Charles Martel, 435.
Clement IV, receives Charles of Anjou with great honours, 84; bestows Manfred's dominions on him, 85.
Collo, 107; 120 *et seq.*; 197.
Comi, juglar, brings Muntaner's advice to the King, 652; sings at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 732.
Comminge, Roger de, 309.
Conquest, Book of the, 25, 25 note.
Conrad, Emperor, xli.
Conradin, xli; 81; in Italy, 87; defeated and beheaded, 88, 88 note.
Constance, daughter of Manfred of Hohenstanfen, *see* Costanza, wife of Pedro III.
Constance, mother of Frederick II, xl; 80 note.
Constantinople, 483; 486 *et seq.*; 494; 505; 526.
Corfu, raided by Vilaragut, 267; raided again, 291–2; pillaged by Luria, 395.
Cornut, G., xliv; xlvii; in command of the fleet of Charles of Anjou, 185–6; at Malta, 186; defeated and killed in battle by Luria, 191 *et. seq.*
Corsica, lx; lxxv; bestowed on Jaime II by the Pope, 438, 676.
Cortada, 115; 146–7; victory of, in the battle of Nicotera, 148; return of, to Sicily, 150.
Cortes, constitution, privileges and powers of the, 22 note; held at Valencia, 45; at Saragossa, 65; 223; 226; 268; at Barcelona, 228; 274; 418; 420; 438–9; at Palermo, 240; at Messina, 244; 400; at Gerona, 650.
Cortsavi, A. de, leaves Peralada, 313; at Gerona, 322.
Costa, Agustin de, Treasurer of Sardinia, 676.
Costanza, daughter of Manfred, xxxvi; xliii; xlvi; lii; lviii; marriage of, to Pedro III, 31; children of, 31; 47; 65; 92; 228; joins Pedro at Barcelona, 230; takes leave of Pedro and two of her sons, 231; embarks at Barcelona, 232–3; lands at Palermo, 236; convokes Parliament, 239–40; appoints the Infante Jaime her representative, 242; at Messina, 243–4; summons Jaime's Council to her presence, 257; mercy shown to the prisoners from Italy by, 258; meeting of, with her sister 283–4; releases prisoners taken in the battle of Naples, 284; honours bestowed on Luria by, 396; 424; takes leave of her son Jaime, 425; 435; released from Interdict, 447; in Rome, 447; at Barcelona, 447; death of, 447.
Cristopol, Jorge de, offers to raid Gallipoli, 530; arrival of, before Gallipoli, 531; repulse of, 531.
Cristopol, the Neapolis of the Acts of the Apostles, 543 note; 552; 558.
Cross-bowmen, dexterity of enlisted, 192.
Cruilles, Gilabert de, at Bordeaux, 202 *et seq.*; arrival of, outside Bordeaux, 215; takes Pedro's message to the Seneschal, 216; in the lists, 216; return of, with the Seneschal, 220; at Saragossa, 226; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 715.
Cyprus, niece of the King of, second wife of the Infante Ferrando, 678.
Cyzicus, *see* Artaqui.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Desclot, Bernard, xxxvi; 31 note; 349 note.
Desfar, Riambaldo, 570–1.
Deslaur, at the battle of Kephissos, 578; captain of the Grand Company, 578; obtains by marriage the castle of Salona, 578.
Desvilar, P., 229.
Devic, historian, 41 note.
Doria, Barnabo, 673.
Doria, Gaspard, admiral of Pisa, 687; at Cagliari, 688; defeat and fight of, 692.
Doria, Ticino, lends money to Roger de Flor, 469.
Ducange, 59 note, 105 note.

Edward I, xxxix; liv; lvii; lx; 81; 203; warns Pedro III of Philip III's treachery, 204; 211; proposal of, for the marriage of his daughter to Alfonso III, 399; at Oloron, 403; negotiation of, for the release from captivity of Charles II, 405; accompanies Alfonso to the frontier of Aragon, 406–7; negotiations of, for peace between Alfonso and Charles, 418.
Elche, 453–4.
Eleanor, daughter of Charles II, lxiv; marriage of, 478–9, 479 note; crowned Queen of Sicily, 479.
Eleanor, daughter of Edward I; liv; lv; betrothal of, to Alfonso III, 404; 406.
Eleanor, daughter of Fernando III of Castile, wife of Jaime I of Aragon, 17, 17 note.
Emboxados, *see* Boxadors.
En, 8 note.
Enrique, Infante of Castile, 587.
Entenza, Berenguer de, lii; lxiv; lxvii to lxix; raids of, 291, 395; at the battle of Mazzaro, 461; friendship of, with Roger de Flor, 471; at Calatabellota, 477; agrees to go to Constantinople, 482; 485; in Romania, 506; at Constantinople, 506; Chief in Gallipoli, 512; losses of, in an attack by Alans, 513; besieged in Gallipoli, 514; Eregli sacked by, 515; challenge of, to Andronicus II, 516; taken prisoner by Genoese, 517–8; ransomed, 544; in Rome, 544; refused succour, 545; return of, to Gallipoli, 545; dissensions of, with Rocafort, 545; besieges Megarix, 546; raises the siege, 547; order of the march of, to Salonica, 553; death of, 554–5.
Entenza, Gombaldo de, 706.
Entenza, Maria de, wife of Alfonso IV, 706; baronies of, 706; children of, 706; death of, 706–7.
Entenza, Nangarina (Saurina) de, second wife of Roger de Luria, 48; mother of Carlet de Luria, 596; poverty of, 598.
Enzio, son of the Emperor Frederick II, 81.
Ephesus, miracle at, 499–500; the relics of St. John the Evangelist at, 561.
Eregli, the miracle in the Bay of, 517; sacked by Entenza, 517.
Esclaramunda, daughter of the Count de Foix, marriage of, to Jaime I of Mallorca, 31; children of, 32; her reception of her grandson Jaime, 646–7; death of, 649.
Escriva, Guillem, kills the Count de Nevers, 339; death of, 339; 342.
Escriva, Jaime, equips galleys for the siege of Cagliari, 673.
Esperonte, fight at the, of Almeria, 590–1; 590 note.
Estanyol, Berenguer, lxxi; commander of the Grand Company, 580–1; death of, 581.
Examile, castle of, 504.
Fadrique I of Sicily, lii; lviii; lix; lxi; lxiii; lxiv; lxx to lxxv; 31; embarks for Sicily, 230–1; 242; 372; representative of Pedro III in Sicily, 424; 435; Sicily seized for, 444; acclaimed King, 446; coronation of, 446–7; 460; at the battle of Mazzaro, 461 *et seq.*; re-victuals Messina, 474; reasons of, for not attacking Charles of Valois, 477–8; treaty of peace with Charles II; marriage of, 479; 481; assists the Grand Company, 483–4; impoverished by war, 485;

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

sends Ferrando to Romania, 546; receives the news of Ferrando's captivity, 571; appoints his infant son Manfred Chief of the Grand Company, 580; acquires Jerba and the Kerkennas, 598; requests Muntaner to go to Jerba, 601 *et seq.*; refuses to allow Alef to be received to mercy, 609; bestows the islands on Muntaner, 613; renewal of the war with Robert I, 616; successes of, in Calabria, 616; bestows Catania on Ferrando, 617; prepares to attack Robert at Trapani, 622 *et seq.*; grants a truce, 624; displeasure of the followers of, 624; the truce broken, 681; support given by, to the Ghibelline Houses at Savona, 685.

Felipe, Infante, son of Sancho IV of Castile, 439.

Felipe, Infante, son of Sancho I of Mallorca, 677.

Fernando III of Castile, 81.

Fernando IV of Castile, lxxii; succeeds Sancho IV, 439; defies Jaime II, 449; concludes peace with Jaime, 587; alliance of, and Jaime, 588; besieges Algeciras de Alhadra, 589; raises the siege, 590.

Ferrando, Infante, son of Jaime I of Mallorca, lxx; lxxiv; 32; in Gallipoli, 546; in Greece with the Grand Company, 547 *et seq.*; march of, to Salonica, 553; overtakes Rocafort, 553, 555; leaves the Grand Company, 557; in Thasos, 557; leaves Thasos, 562; sacks and burns Almyros, 563; devastates Spoll, 563; in Negroponte, 563; taken prisoner by Chépoi, 564; captivity of, in the Castle of St. Omer, 564; visit of Muntaner to, 568–9; sent to Charles II, 571; honourable captivity of, at Naples, 571–2; released from captivity, 572; at the siege of Almería, 589; at the esperonte of Almeria, 590 *et seq.*; in Rousillon, 593; in Sicily, 616; at Mont Saint Julian, 618; 623; 632; marriage of, 633; at Catania, 633; at Messina, 635; return of, to the deathbed of his wife, 635; gives his infant son into the care of Muntaner, 637 *et seq.*; claim of, to Akova, 640; takes Clarenza, 640; sworn Lord of Akova, 640; takes Bellver, 641; orders the public reading of the testament of Louis of Burgundy, 641; death of, 649; the second wife of, 678; son of, by his second marriage, 678.

Figuera, Domingo de la, horse merchant, 208; orders of Pedro III to, for the journey to Bordeaux, 209–210; ride of, to Bordeaux, 213–4; warnings sent to, 219; 226 *et seq.*

Figueras, tournament at, 398.

Finar, Roso de, killed in Constantinople, 487.

Flor, Jacobo de, 467.

Flor, Roger de, lxii to lxviii; parents of, 466–7; with Vassayll, 468; receives the mantle of the Templars, 468; captain of the Falcon, 468; at Acre, 468; accused of peculation, 469; property of, seized, 469; escape of, to Genoa, 469; owner of the "Oliveta," 469; offer of service of, to Duke Robert, 469; gracious reception of, by Fadrique, 469; capture of many ships of Charles II by, 470–1; feeds and pays Fadrique's followers, 470; gives a large sum of money to Fadrique, 470–1; large company of followers of, 471; vice-admiral of Sicily and member of the King's Council, 471; castles in Sicily and revenues of Malta bestowed on, 471–2; raids of, 471–2; return of, to Sicily, 472; liberality of, towards Fadrique, 472; seamanship of, 475; re-victuals Messina, 475; at Calatabellota, 477; 480–1; conditions of, to Andronicus II, 482; title of Grand Duke bestowed on, 483–4; fleet of, 484; embarks with the Grand Company, 485–6; lands at Monemvasia, 486; marriage of, 486–7; stops a fight of his followers and Genoese of Pera, 487–8; attacks the Turks at Boca Daner, 488; lands at Artaqui, 490; victory

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of, over the Turks, 490–1; campaign stopped by wintry weather, 492; billeting of the followers of, 492–3; spends the winter in Artaqui, 493–4; pays the debts of his followers, 495–6; in Anatolia, 496; victory of, over the Turks at Philadelphia, 496–7; at Tyre, 497; 498; at Ephesus, 500; at Ani, 501; on the frontier of Armenia, 501; victory at the Iron Gate, 502; takes the Grand Company to Gallipoli, 505; refuses the debased coins of Andronicus II, 506; gives up the title of Grand Duke and is made Caesar, 506–7; Anatolia granted to, 508–9; pays the Grand Company in debased coin, 509; warned against going to Adrianople, 509–10; sends his wife to Constantinople, 510; at Adrianople, 512; murder of, 513.

Fogliari, 559–60.

Foix, Count de, 31; marriages of the daughters of, 62; at the siege of Peralada, 309, 353.

Formigueras, battle of, 345.

Forster, *see* Gayangos.

Fosbrook, I. D. 213 note, 539 note, 554 note.

Frederick II, Emperor xl; xli; lxii; 80–1.

Gaeta, liii; lv; 400; siege of, 402, 408.

Gagliano, battle of, 457–8.

Galceran, Count, *see* Catanzaro.

Gallipoli, lxvii to lxix; description of, 504–5, 510–1; 514; 524; 526; Grand Company's depot at, 530; 531–2; battle of, 539 *et seq.*; valour of the women of, 540; devastation of, by the Grand Company, 552.

Garridells, faction of the, suppressed by Jaime II, 431.

Gayangos, notes, pp. 20, 27, 28, 50, 60, 71, 183, 200, 565.

Genoa, Commune of, 536–7; 542.

Genoa, Roger de Flor at, 469.

Genoese, the, at Constantinople, 486; hostility of, towards the Grand Company, 486; attack the Grand Company, 487; displeasure of, at Roger de Flor's victory, 491; method of shooting of, 538; murder the Turks returning from Gallipoli, 579; at Cagliari, 690 *et seq.*

Gerona, xlviii to l; 60; siege of, 319 *et seq.*

Gervinus, xxxiv.

Ghibellines, the, at Savona, 685; promises of, to Fadrique I, 685; failure of, to keep their promises, 686; covenant of, with the Commune of Pisa, 686.

Gibbon, xxxiv.

Gircon, Chief of the Alans, lxviii; summoned to Adrianople, 513; murders Roger de Flor, 513; killed in battle, 534.

Goletta, 196.

Grailly, Jean de, liv, 398, 398 note; negotiates a marriage between Alfonso III and a daughter of Edward I, 399–403; at Oloron, 404–5.

Granada, the Saracens of, invade Aragon, 66; trust of the King of, in Pedro III, 113–4; 588; rebellion of the Moors of, 590; the King of, asks for a truce, 592.

Grand Company, the, lxiv to lxxi; embarks for Constantinople, 485; numbers of, 485–6; fights with the Genoese of Pera, 487; charity of, 492; 494; besieged in Gallipoli, 515; victory of, over the Alans, 521 *et seq.*; leaves Gallipoli, 524; meets and defeats Michael Palaeologus, 525; conquest of Romania by, 526; avenges the murder of its messengers, 527; division of, into three companies, 530; seal of, 533; departure of, from Gallipoli, 533–4; victory of, over the Alans, 534; ravages of, in Romania, 543; devastation of Gallipoli by, 552; march of, to Kassandra, 558; welcome of, to Muntaner, 565; parley of, with Chépoi, 566; swears fealty to Charles of Valois, 566; elects Chépoi chief, 566; hands over Rocafort to Chépoi, 573–4; elects four chiefs, 574; in the Duchy of Athens, 575–6; becomes ruler of the Duchy, 578; asks Fadrique I for a chief, 580;

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

welcomes Alfonso Federico as chief, 582; end of Muntaner's account of, 582.
Gras, 323–4; governor of Cadaqués, 327; 329; 332.
Grasse, La, monastery of, 303.
Grau, 200, 200 note.
Greeks, the, of Constantinople, 488 *et seq.*; arrogance and lack of charity of, 491–2; oppressed by the Turks in Anatolia, 543; 560.
Gregory X, invites Jaime I to the Council of Lyons, 55; 58; welcome of Jaime by, 63; at the Council, 63, 63 note.
Guadix, the son of the King of, 590.

Habibas, battle of, 50 *et seq.*
Henry VI, Emperor, xl.
Honorius IV, li; liii; 374–5.
Horigo, German knight, at the battle of Cagliari, 665 *et seq.*
Horses, cutting off the tails of, 69, 69 note; intelligence of the Spanish, 152, 152 note.
Huerta, 5 note.

Ibiza, 21; 200; surrender of, to Alfonso III, 377; 416.
Iglesias, 661–2.
Illa, Jordan la, 309.
Iosa, Xivert de, standard bearer, challenges the followers of Duke Robert, 474.
Iron Gate, battle of the, 501–2.
Isabel, daughter of Margaret, Princess of Akova, at Messina, 332; the barony of Akova settled on, 633; marriage of, 633; birth of the son of, 634–5; death of, 635; testament of, 635.
Isabel, daughter of Pedro III, wife of Dionis of Portugal, 31.
Isabella, daughter of Prince Louis of Burgundy; marriages of, 629–30; death of, 630; testament of, 631.
Ischia, 277; 281; 402.
Ixer, Alfonso Ferrandez de, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714.
Ixer, Pedro Ferrandez de, at the battle of Pica Baralla, 130.

Jaime I of Aragon, xxxvi to xxxviii; 8; birth of, 10, 16; first marriage of, 17, 17 note; second marriage of, 17; children of, 17; 18 *et seq.*; conquests of, in Valencia, 23 *et seq.*; choice of a wife for the Infante Pedro, 30; entertains the King and Queen of Castile, 33; swears to conquer Murcia, 34; disposes of the captures made in Murcia, 37; adopts Pedro's advice about the conquest of Murcia, 38–9; gives Pedro full power in Valencia, 39; at Montpellier, 40; takes Murcia, 43; conquest of Valencia and Murcia by, 44 note; generosity of, to his sons-in-law, 45; powers given by, to the Infantes Pedro and Jaime, 45–6; invited to attend the Council of Lyons, 55; entertains the King and Queen of Castile, 57; at Valencia, 58; reception of, at Lyons, 63; wishes of, granted at the Council, 63; return of, to Aragon, 63–4; farewell visits of, to his dominions, 64; decision of, to attack the King of Granada, 65; wishes Pedro to be sworn King, 65; diversions of, in Valencia, 66; illness of, 66; is carried in a litter to fight the Saracens, 67; on the battle-field, 68; return of, to Játiva, 68; carried to Valencia, 69; death of, 69–70; testament of, 69.
Jaime II of Aragon, I of Sicily, son of Pedro III; xlv; lii; liii; lv; lviii to lxi; lxxii; lxxiv to lxxvi; 31; embarks for Sicily, 230; great qualities of, 231; assembles his council at Messina, 257; takes Agosta, 260 *et seq.*; takes Soterrera and Cefalú, 265; sends Luria to take Ischia, 277; General Council assembled by, at Messina, 286–7; refuses to sanction the execution of the Duke of Salerno, 288; sends him to Barcelona, 289; conquests of, in Calabria, 290; the conquered places bestowed on his followers by, 291; coronation of, at Palermo, 372; further conquests of, in Calabria, 376; gifts of, to Luria, 396; at the Cortes in Messina,

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

401; at the siege of Gaeta, 408–9; succeeds Alfonso III as King of Aragon, 423; convokes a Council at Messina, 423–4; at Palermo, 425; arrival of, at Barcelona, 425–6; coronation of, 426; interview of, with Alfonso de la Cerda, 426; 427; interview with Sancho IV, 429–30; peace and order established by, 431; sends Luria to Sicily, 434; treaty of peace of, with Charles II and Philip IV, 436 *et seq.*; marriage of, 441, 441 note; children of, 441 note; 448; returns the Balearic Islands to Jaime I of Mallorca, 449; sends the Infante Pedro to invade Castile, 450; invades Murcia, 450 *et seq.*; 455; treaty of peace of, with Fernando IV of Castile, 587–8; at war with the King of Granada, 588; at the siege of Almería, 590 *et seq.*; decides to conquer Sardinia and Corsica, 650–1; assembles the forces for the conquest of Sardinia, 660–1; sends reinforcements, 673; negotiates peace between Fadrique I and Robert I, 679; makes over to the Pope the strong places of Calabria, 680; sends forces against the Pisans at Cagliari, 700; sued for peace by the Pisans, 700–1; daughters of, 707–8; illness and death of, 708–9.

Jaime I of Mallorca, xlii; xlvii; 1; marriage of, 31; children of, 32; marriages of the daughters of, 32; 41 note; procurator of Mallorca and other territories, 46; coronation of, 74; accusations of, against Philip III, 94; remonstrates with Pedro III about his behaviour to the Prince of Taranto, 95; entertains the Prince at Perpignan, 96; deceived by Philip III, 96; gives up Montpellier to Philip, 97; offers assistance to Pedro, 109; 228; escorts Queen Costanza on her departure for Sicily, 232 *et seq.*; 244; at Gerona, 275–6; meets Cardinal Panberto at Montpellier, 296; compliance of, with the wishes of Philip III, 297; gives up Elne to Philip, 302; meeting of, and Philip IV, 355; entertains him at Perpignan, 356; consent of, to a simulated siege of Mallorca, 359; sends secret orders to Mallorca, 362; meeting of, and Charles II, 406; at Perpignan, 442; death of, 614.

Jaime II of Mallorca, lxxvi; birth of, 634–5; taken to Perpignan by Muntaner, 644 *et seq.*; brought up by Sancho I, 648; 650 note; heir of Sancho I, 678–9; marriage of, 699.

Jaime, Infante, son of the Infante Ferrando, *see* Jaime II of Mallorca.

Jaime, Infante, son of Jaime I of Aragon, *see* Jaime I of Mallorca.

Jaime, Infante, son of Jaime II of Aragon, 704–5; 705 note.

Jaime, Infante, eldest son of Jaime I of Mallorca, 32; renounces the succession, 442.

Jaime Pedro, illegitimate son of Pedro III, xliii; lxxii; admiral, 114; 118; 146; appointed to accompany Pedro to Bordeaux, 170; procurator of Murcia, 454.

Jerba, xlvi; lxxii to lxxiv; ravaged by Luria, 292; surrenders to Luria, 293; castle of, built by Luria, 293; description of, 293; factions in, 594; returned to the King by Muntaner, 636.

Jinetes, 36, 36 note.

Joan, Queen of Navarre, wife of Philip IV of France, 270 note.

John XXII, 680.

John, Count of Gravina, Prince of Akova, 650, 650 note.

John, illegitimate son of Michael VIII, Palaeologus, rebels against his father, 626; 627 note; defeated and killed, 627.

Juan, Infante, son of Jaime II of Aragon, Archbishop of Toledo, 677; 707; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714–5, 726, 729.

Juan, Infante, son of Alfonso X, at Soria, 429.

Juglars, 234, 234 note; 474; 585; Comi and Romaset, juglars at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 732.

Kephissos, lxxi; battle of, 577.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Kerkennas, 601–2; 613; 636.
King of the Hat, *see* Charles of Valois.
Knights of Death, the, arrival of, in Sicily, 456; killed in the battle of Gagliano, 457.

Lafuente, notes pp. 36; 44; 74, 75; 239.
Lahieni, in Jerba, 594.
Lancia, Galvano, 47 note.
Lansa (Lancia, Lanza, Llanza), Conrado de, xxxvi to xxxix; xlv; lxiv; lxxiii; accompanies Costanza to Catalonia, 47; descent of, 47 note; goes to Africa, 49; at the battle of Habibas, 50 *et seq.*; 75; in command of an expedition to Tunis, 77 *et seq.*; 88; besieges Malta, 225; in Sicily, 239; goes to Mallorca, 360; parleys with the governor of Mallorca, 364; at Calatabellota, 477.
Lansa, Conrado de, of Castle Menart, guardian of Rogero de Luria, 596; 598; in Jerba, 609–10; in battle with the Moors, 612; return of, to Sicily, 612.
Lansa, Manfredo, goes to Malta with Luria, 224, 224 note; in command at Malta, 225; takes the Castle of Malta, 243.
Lanz, K., xxxiv, notes 31; 225; 229; 381.
Lantzaura, the Emperor of, 482, 482 note; death of, 503; brother of, rebels against Andronicus II, 503; *see* Asen.
Lantzaura, the Empire of, the Catalans march to, 534.
Lanza, Count Bonifazio de, xxxvii, xli.
Lebia, Pedro de, procurator of Minorca, 416; treasurer of Sardinia, 676.
Leny, meaning of, 50 note.
Leon, lxxii; siege of, 450.
Lestanayre, the ships of Romania built at, 532.
Lestandart, commander of the French at Brindisi, 395.
Lipari, island of, xlv; surrenders to Luria, 225.
Lloret, castellan of Ibiza, 377.
Lodève, Guillaume de, at Rosas, 323; 328; attacks Pedro III's galleys, 329; defeated and taken prisoner, 331–2.
Lomafer, 77.
Louis IX, 81; 86.
Louis of Burgundy, Prince of the Morea, 628; testament of, 628; death of, 649; 649 note.
Louis, son of Charles II, renounces his rights, 442.
Luria, Amigutxo de, guardian of Carlet de Luria's son, 598.
Luria, Carlet de, in Jerba, 595; return of, to Calabria, 596; death of, 596.
Luria, Juan de, 383; 385.
Luria, Roger de, xxxvi; xxxvii; xliii to lxvi; xlix to liii; lv to lix; lxx; accompanies Costanza to Catalonia, 47; castles of, 47; marriage of, 47; son of, 48; marriages of the daughters of, 48; death of the wife of, 48; second marriage of, 48; 173–4; raids of, 187; captures French galleys, 188; at Scicli, 189–90; at Malta, 190–1; defeats Cornut, 193; the city of Malta surrenders to, 194; raises the siege of the citadel, 195; takes Gozo, 195; return of, to Sicily, 195; renewal of the siege of Malta by, 224; goes to Trapani, 225; takes Lipari, 225; 253; at the battle of the Counts, 254–5; 256–7; goes to Agosta, 261 *et seq.*; expedition of, to Ischia, 277–8; battle of Naples, 278 *et seq.*; Ischia surrenders to, 281; takes Procida and Capri, 282; at Messina, 282–3; 287–8; raids Jerba and Romania, 292; takes Monemvasia, 292; the castle of Jerba built by, 293; at Formigueras, 345; victory of, over the French, 345; *et seq.*; takes Rosas, 347; goes to the Pass of Panisars, 348; attacks Philip IV, 353; at Barcelona, 358; in Mallorca, 364; sacks Serignan, 378; ravages the country round Serignan and Beziers, 380–1; bought off by the Jews of Castle Tolmetta, 394; victory of, at Matagrifon, 394; at the battle of Brindisi, 395; return

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

of, to Messina, 396; 400; in Calabria, 401; besieges Gaeta, 402–8; in Mallorca, 410; fleet of, dispersed by a storm, 417; at Messina, 417; 425; Round Table set up by, at Calatayud, 432 *et seq.*; encounter of, in the lists with Anguera, 433; 434–5; at Palermo, 446.

Luria, Roger (Francisco) de, son of Carlet de, 596.

Luria, Rogero de, son of Roger de, lxxii; 48; inherits Jerba, 594; return of, to Sicily, 595; marriage of, 595; death of, 595.

Maditos, castle of, 528; 547.

Maguelonne, Bishop of, xlii; 97.

Mahon, 416.

Mahon, almojarife of, supplies Pedro III with victuals, 119; warns the Saracens of Pedro's approach, 119.

Mahon, battle of, 414–5.

Mallol, Berenguer, *see* Marquet and Mallol.

Mallorca, city of, siege of the, 20 *et seq.*; coronation of Jaime I at, 74; surrenders to Alfonso III, 376; 416; 613–4.

Mallorca, island of, li; lvi; conquest of, 19 *et seq.*; custom observed in, 70; importance of, 359; 371; severe winter in, 410; restored to Jaime I, 449.

Malta, xliv; xlv; battle of, 192–3; surrender of the city of, to Luria, 194–5; castle of, besieged by Manfredo de Lansa, 224; surrender of the castle of, to Lansa, 243–4.

Manfred, King of Sicily, xli; xliii; extent of the dominions of, 30; 81; war of, against Charles of Anjou, 86; defeated and killed at Benevento, 87.

Manfred Roger, Infante, son of Fadrique I, lxxi; 580; 580 note.

Marche, Count de la, 625 *et seq.*

Marcho, 531.

Margaret of Provence, wife of Louis IX, 82; 82 note.

Margaret, Princess of Akova, marriage of, 629–30; claim of, to the Principality of Morea, 632; at Messina, 632; marries her daughter to Ferrando, 633; in the Morea, 633; death of, 635.

Maria, daughter of John Asen, lxv; Roger de Flor claims the hand of, 482, 482 note; betrothed to Roger de Flor, 483; marriage of, 486–7; warns Roger against Michael Palaeologus, 509; birth of the son of, 510.

Maria of Montpellier, 8; 10 *et seq.*

Maria, wife of Charles II, at the siege of Trapani, 622, 622 note; signs a truce, 624; return of, to Naples, 624.

Mariana, 32 note.

Marmara, quarries of the island of, 515.

Marquet, Ramon, and Mallol, Berenguer, xlix; 115; 175; take Pedro III to Collo, 196–7; orders of Pedro to, 229–30; 233; 238; orders to, for building galleys, 262; 323–4; at Cape Creus, 327–8; at the battle of Rosas, 330 *et seq.*; at Barcelona, 335; join Luria, 346; at San Felice, 346; at Barcelona, 358; at Salou, 361.

Marquet, Ramon, plans of, against the French, 323–4.

Martin IV, xliii; xlvii; 112; refuses aid to Pedro III, 132; supports the claims of Charles of Anjou, 178–9; 178 note; proclaims a crusade against Pedro III, 179; 245, 245 note; crowns Charles of Valois King of Aragon, 248; discourtesy of, to Pedro's messengers, 249 *et seq.*

Matagrifon, barony of, 571; *see* Akova.

Matagrifon, castle of, near Messina, xlvi; lxiii; 257, 257 note; Charles II a prisoner in, 284; 474.

Mazzara, battle of, 461 *et seq.*

Mediona, Asberto de, 360; at the siege of Almería, 591.

Mediona, Gesbert de, procurator of Mallorca, 377.

Megarix, castle of, besieged by Entenza, 546–7.

Melech, Chief of the Turcopoles, 513.

Messina, xliii; lviii; lxiii; lxiv; siege of, by Charles of Anjou, 106; the Ladies' wall at, 140 *et seq.*; 140 note;

Digitized by Google

Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

return of Pedro III's victorious fleet to, 149–50; 256; 282 *et seq.*; the people of, demand the death of the Duke of Salerno, 287; prosperity of, 291; 396; 400; 423–4; Roger de Flor at, 469; siege of, by Duke Robert, 474 *et seq.*; marriage of Fadrique I at, 479; marriage of the Infante Ferrando at, 633.

Minorca, island of, 416, *see* Mahon.

Miquell, *see* Palaeologus, Michael.

Miraboaps, *see* Boaps.

Mirabusac, *see* Busach.

Miramamolin, 74, 74 note.

Mirepoix, seneschal, at Peralada, 309.

Misconas the, lxxii; lxiii; in Jerba, 594–5; rebellion of, 595; defeat of, 596; renewed rebellion of, 596; take Pelegri Pati prisoner, 599; besiege the castle of Jerba, 599; refuse to submit to Muntaner, 605; leave Jerba, 608.

Misi, Juan de, Lord of a third of Negroponte, 564.

Moabs (Moabias, Moabits) lxxii; lxxiii; 77 note; stir up rebellion, 121; at Collo, 122; in Jerba, 594–5; rebellion of the, 595; forgiven by Muntaner, 605.

Moisé, I, notes pp. 169; 340; 663.

Moncada, G. Ramon de, at the battle of Mazzara, 461.

Moncada, Guillerma de, daughter of Gaston de Bearn, marriage of, 443, 444.

Moncada, Guillermo de, lix; 431.

Moncada, Oton de, 714.

Moncada, historian, notes pp. lxxxii; 27; 557; 563.

Monells, Oton de, gives the infant son of Ferrando into the care of Muntaner, 639, 642.

Monemvasia, taken by Luria, 292; 484, 486.

Monferrat, Marquis of, 536, 536 note; taken to Genoa, 542.

Monfort, Count, killed in the battle of the Counts, 255; 260.

Monstrelet, 241 note.

Montalba, 600–1.

Montblanch, 711.

Montesa, 28–9.

Montoliú, Borde de, 597.

Montoliú, Simon de, lxxxiii; commander in Jerba, 596; in Calabria, 597; refused assistance by the Pope, 598; 600–1; 603.

Montpellier, xlii; Pedro II at, 10; stratagem of the notables of, 10 *et seq.*; Alfonso X at, 62; encroachments of Philip III at, 94; surrendered to Philip, 97.

Morea, the, depopulated, 394; conquest of, by Princes of Burgundy, 583–4; 625 *et seq.*; bequeathed to the eldest daughter of Louis of Burgundy, 628.

Muntagnol, troubadour, 92 note.

Muntaner, Juan, 8; Alfonso X at the house of, 61.

Muntaner, Juan, 560; in Jerba, 613.

Muntaner, Ramon, lxix; lxxiii; lxxiv; lxxvi to xc; 1–2; dream of, 5; 61; advice of, about the increase of the fleet, 89–90; at Perpignan, 96; opinion of, of Charles of Anjou, 158 *et seq.*; 291; loss of the property of, at Peralada, 315; praise of Charles II, 405–6; at Messina, 473; 482; at Ephesus, 500; in Gallipoli, 514; endeavour of, to ransom Entenza, 518; measures of, in Gallipoli, 519 *et seq.*; in command at Gallipoli, 527; 528; repulses the attack of G. de Cristopol, 331; powers of, 532–3; refuses to accept Spinola's challenge, 537; preparations of, for the defence of Gallipoli, 528–9; wounded in battle, 539; endeavours of, to reconcile Entenza and Rocafort, 545; 546–7; marches with the Infante Ferrando, 548; takes the women and children of the Grand Company to Cristopol, 552; burns the castle of Gallipoli and other places, 552; meets Ferrando in Thasos, 557; at Cristopol, 557; returns to Thasos, 558; provides Ticino Zaccaria with men and ships, 560; 561; 562; leaves Thasos with Ferrando, 562; at Almyros, in Spoll and Negroponte, 563;

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

galleys of, sacked by Venetians, 564; taken prisoner, 564; loss of the treasure of, 564, 564 note; sent back to the Company, 565–6; return of, to Negroponte, 567; visits Ferrando in his prison at St. Omer, 568; measures of, for the safety of Ferrando, 569; sent to Messina by Ferrando, 570–1; a prisoner in the house of Bonifazio de Verona, 582; in Sicily, 600; preparations of, for his marriage, 600–1; at Montalba, 601 *et seq.*; in Jerba, 603 *et seq.*; challenges Alef, 605; defeats Alef, 606 *et seq.*; leaves Jerba, 613; in Mallorca, 613–4; marriage of, 614; at Mahon, 614–5; at Trapani and Montalba, 615; three years in Jerba, 615; preparations of, against attack by Carròs, 619 *et seq.*; joins Ferrando at Catania, 634; gives up Jerba, 636; at Messina, 637; preparation of, for the journey to Perpignan with the infant son of Ferrando, 639 *et seq.*; journey of, to Perpignan, 644–5; delivers the Infante to his grandmother, 646–7; grief of, at parting with the Infante, 648; advice in verse of, for the conquest of Sardinia, 651 *et seq.*; equips galleys for Cagliari, 673; opinion of, of the Communes of Italy, 684; at the coronation of Alfonso X, 715–6; 722–3.

Murcia, lxxii; 34–5; conquest of, by Jaime I, 43; division of the town of, between Christians and Saracens, 43–4, 44 note; Catalans in, 44; given up to Alfonso X, 45; 454.

Naples, xli; xliv to xlvii; lii; liii; lv; lxx; battle of, 279–80; tolls imposed on, 281–2; 374; alarm at, 402; captivity of the Infante Ferrando at, 571.

Navarrese Company, in Greece, lxxi.

Negroponte, 563–4.

Ner (Nieri) Count, 663 note; brings succour to Cagliari, 663 *et seq.*; death of, 670.

Nevers, Count of; death of, 339; 341.

Nicholas III, xli, note.

Nicholas IV; liv; lv; lvii; 399; 418.

Nicotera, battle of, 418.

Nona, castle, besieged by Rocafort, 547.

Novellet, juglar, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 732.

Oloron, liv; meeting of the Kings of Aragon, England and France at, 403; 406.

Oriflamme, the, 297, 297 note; 352 *et seq.*

Orihuela, 454.

Ortiz, Garcia, procurator of Valencia, 66; death of, 67.

Otranto, 294; 376.

Palaeologus, Andronicus II, lxv; lxvii; 481; accepts the conditions of Roger de Flor, 483–4; 487; 491; 503; attempt of, to pay the Grand Company in debased coin, 505–6; bestows Anatolia on Roger de Flor, 508–9; order of, to murder Ahones, 516; order of, to murder the Catalan messengers, 516–7; desertion of the soldiers of, 544.

Palaeologus, Michael, 95, 95 note; 483; reluctance of, to fight the Turks, 489; treachery of, towards Roger de Flor, 512–3; sends Alans and Turcopoles to sack Gallipoli, 513 defeat of, 525; escape of, 526,

Palasin, Garcia Gomis, 564–5.

Palerm Abat, 340, 340 note.

Palermo, lii; lxi; lxxvi; the Sicilian Vespers at, 105 *et seq.*; charters of, delivered to Pedro III, 137; coronation of Pedro III at, 140; reception of Queen Costanza at, 237 *et seq.*; coronation of Jaime I of Sicily at, 372; coronation of Fadrique I at, 446–7; 618; defence of, against the Duke of Calabria, 682.

Digitized by Google Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Pallars, A. Roger de, 116–7; erects the fort of Pica Baralla, 121; at the battle of Pica Baralla, 130–1; at Peralada, 307; 309–10; in command at Peralada, 313; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714.
Palma, La, 20 note; *see* Mallorca.
Palmas dels Sols, 661.
Panberto, Cardinal Legate, xlvii; at Toulouse, 221–2; urges Philip III to declare war on Pedro III 248; at Montpellier, 296; arranges for the surrender of Castellon, 318–9; 334; cowardice of, 352 *et seq.*; death of, 356–7.
Panido, 515; 517; sacked by the Grand Company, 527.
Pantanella, 620–1.
Pati, Pelegrin, lxxiii; in Jerba, 598–9; 604.
Patras, sacked by Luria, 394; built by the French, 627.
Pears, E., 508 note.
Pedro II of Aragon, marriage of, 10 *et seq.*; death of, 17 note.
Pedro III of Aragon, xxxvi; xxxix to xlv; xlvii to lii; victories of, over the Saracens in Valencia, 26 *et seq.*; marriage of, 31; children of, 31; incursion of, into Murcia, 36–7; 38–9; governor of Valencia, 41; harries Murcia, 42; procurator of Aragon, Valencia and Catalonia, 45; 47; claims the tribute due from Tlemcen and Tunis, 49; 53; sworn King, 65; victory of, over the Saracens of Granada, 67–8; coronation of, 72; peace and security in the dominions of, 73–4; measures of, for securing the tribute from Tlemcen and Tunis, 74 *et seq.*; 88; care of, for his fleet, 89; decision of, to avenge King Manfred, 91; visit of, to Philip III, 93; 94; at Toulouse, 95; kidnaps the Infantes de la Cerda, 99 *et seq.*; grants a truce for five years to the King of Granada, 102; taxes imposed by, for the war against Charles of Anjou, 102; relations of, with Bugron, 108–9; preparations of, for war, 108 *et seq.*; embarks at Port Fangos, 118; at Mahon, 119; at Collo, 120 *et seq.*; appeal of the Sicilians to, 128–9; refusal of the Pope to aid in the conquest of Barbary by, 133–4; embarks for Sicily, 135; lands at Trapani, 136; at Palermo, 137; bids Charles of Anjou leave Sicily, 138–9; coronation of, at Palermo, 140; at Messina, 143; orders of, for the pursuit of the fleet of Charles, 146–7; witnesses the return of his victorious galleys, 149 *et seq.*; 153–4; challenged by Charles to a combat at Bordeaux, 160 *et seq.*; refuses to grant an armistice, 166; releases the Christian prisoners, 167; successes of, in Calabria, 168–9; takes leave of the General Council, 171 *et seq.*; orders of, to the fleet, 173–4; embarks on his way to Bordeaux, 175; crusade proclaimed against, 179; 181 note; at Goleta, 196; at Collo, 197 *et seq.*; in Cabrera and Ibiza, 200; arrival of, at Cullera, 200; preparations of, for the combat at Bordeaux, 201–2; truth of the story of the presence of, at Bordeaux, 202–3 note; warned by Edward I of the treachery of Philip III, 204; at Saragossa, 204; at Jaca, 205; orders of, for his secret journey to Bordeaux, 208 *et seq.*; 211; again warned against Philip, 212; disguise of, 213; ride of, to Bordeaux, 213 *et seq.*; at Bordeaux, 215 *et seq.*; departure of, from Bordeaux, 219; return of, to his dominions, 219, 222; amusement of, at Philip's apprehensions, 226; rewards his knights, 226, 228–9; convokes Cortes at Barcelona, 228–9; orders of, for the Queen's journey to Sicily, 229–30; 234; thanksgiving of, for the Queen's safe arrival, 238; letter of, to the Sicilians, 241; interview of, with Sancho IV, 245–6; refusal of the Pope to revoke the ex-communication of, 250

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

et seq.; at the Cortes at Saragossa, 268–9; marches against Beaumarchais, 271; orders of, for the building of ten galleys, 272–3; the Cortes at Barcelona grant the demands of, 275; interview of, with Jaime I of Mallorca, 275–6; orders of, for the disposal of the prisoners in Sicily, 285; retaliation of, for the cruelties of Charles I, 295; forsaken by his friends, 299; preparations for defence against the French, 300; outposts of, driven back, 305; at Peralada, 307; 310; 312; leaves Peralada, 314; at Castellon, 316 *et seq.*; at Gerona, 318; at Besalú, 321; at Barcelona, 322; 324 *et seq.*; present at the return of his galleys, 335–6; returns to his army, 337 *et seq.*; goes to the Pass of Panisars, 349; grants Philip IV a free passage over the Pyrenees, 350 *et seq.*; orders of, for a feigned siege of Mallorca, 358 *et seq.*; 362; illness of, 362–3; public reading of the testament of, 363; sends the Infante Alfonso to Salou, 363–4; testament of, 365–6; death of, 367–8.

Pedro IV of Aragon, Ordinances of, 234 note; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 721.

Pedro, Infante, son of Fadrique I of Sicily, 681.

Pedro, Infante, son of Jaime I, *see* Pedro III.

Pedro, Infante, son of Jaime II of Aragon, 707; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714, 717–8, 720, 724 *et seq.*; 732.

Pedro, Infante, son of Pedro III, liii; liv; lxxii; 31; 385 *et seq.*; illness of, 390; return of, to Catalonia, 392; governor of Aragon, 397; at Oloron, 403; governs the Kingdom until the arrival of Jaime II 422; 439; escorts the released hostages, 440; marriage of, 443; 444; invades Castile, 450; besieges Leon, 450; death of, 454–5.

Pedro, Infante, son of Sancho IV, 439.

Pera, 487–8; Entenza a prisoner at, 518.

Peralada, xlviii; l; description of, 308; huerta of, 310; brave woman of, 311–2; burnt by the almugavars, 314.

Peralta, Ramon de, 693 *et seq.*

Peratallada, Bernart de, chosen to go to Bordeaux with Pedro III, 209–10; 212; ride of, to Bordeaux, 213–4; in the lists, 216; 226.

Peris, Nicolas, alcaide of Alicante, 451; death of, 452–3.

Perpignan, 61; 96; French camp at, 301; obsequies of Philip III at, 356; the Infante Ferrando buried at, 649.

Philadelphia, 496–7.

Philip III of France, xxxix; xli; xlii; xliv; xlvi to l; close friendship of, with Pedro III, 93; invites Pedro to an interview, 94; promises of, to Pedro, 96; breaks his promise about Maguelonne, 97; absolved of his oath to Pedro, 181; promises of, to Charles of Anjou, 182 *et seq.*; arrival of, at Bordeaux, 205; 212; 216; endeavours to capture Pedro, 219; amazement of, at Pedro's boldness, 220–1; breaks up his camp, 221; 248–9; marches to Toulouse, 297; size of the army and the fleet of, 297–8; goes to Roussillon, 301; at Boulou, 301–2; fleet of, at Colibre, 303; goes over the Pass of Panisars, 303 *et seq.*; camp of, in the plain of Peralada, 308; enters Peralada, 315; besieges Gerona, 319, 321; 334; raises the siege of Gerona, 349; illness of, 350; advice of, to his son, 350–1; death of, 351; obsequies of, at Perpignan, 356.

Philip IV, xlvii; l; liv; lv; lvii; lx; lxi; at Toulouse, 221; quarrels of, with his brother, 247–8; in Roussillon, 301; keeps his father's death secret, 351; starts on his return to France, 353; attacked on the march, 353; rear-guard of, attacked, 354–5; at Perpignan, 356; at Oloron, 403; concludes peace with Jaime II, 437; 465.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Philip, Prince of Taranto, son of Charles I of Naples, marriage of, 629–30; death of, 630.
Philip, Prince of Taranto, son of Charles II of Naples, 631.
Philip of Savoy, marriage of, 630; recovers the Principality of Morea, 631.
Pica Baralla, fort of, 121, 121 note; battle of, 121; 126 *et seq.*
Pisans, the, at Cagliari, 674 *et seq.*; 688 *et seq.*; 700 *et seq.*
Poblet, xxxvii, funeral of Jaime I at, 70.
Porcelet, life of, spared in the Sicilian Vespers, 106 note.
Porcelet, prowess of, at the battle of Mazzara, 463.
Positano, the pirates of, 373; the inhabitants of, exterminated, 374.
Porto Pi, miracle at, 411 *et seq.*
Prescott, W. H., notes pp. 26; 43.
Procida, Juan de, in Sicily with Queen Costanza, 239–40, 239 note; speaks in the Cortes in the name of the Queen, 242, 244; advice of, to Fadrique, 445.
Puixmolto, Berenguer de, at the taking of Alicante, 451–2; governor of Alicante, 453.
Puixs, faction of, suppressed by Jaime II, 431.
Pujamilot, death of Philip III at foot of, 351.

Queralt, Pedro de, 146–7; at the battle of Nicotera, 148–9; in command of the expedition to Catona, 154–5.

Raids, Royal, 53.
Ramon Berenguer, Infante, son of Jaime II, 707; at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 714, 718, 720, 724 *et seq.*, 730.
Ribalta, P., 570–1.
Rich hom (richs homens, ricos hombres), 26 note.
Richard of Devizes, 257 note.
Ris, 393.
Robert I of Naples, lxii to lxiv; lxx; lxxiii to lxxvi; 31; 206, 206 note; at Catania, 455; 464; dispositions of, for the war in Sicily, 473; besieges Messina, 473; returns secretly to Calabria, 473; renews the war against Fadrique I 616 *et seq.*; sends Carrós to attack Jerba, 619; receives the castles in Calabria from the Pope, 680; again at war, 681.
Robert, Count of Flanders, indignation of, at the execution of Conradin, 88 note.
Robert, Duke, *see* Robert I of Naples.
Rocaberti, Jofre, Viscount, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 715.
Rocaberti, Dalmau de, lxxiv; entertains Alfonso X, 61; asks to accompany Pedro III, 117; escorts Queen Costanza to her ship, 232–3; at Perpignan, 244; at Perthus, 300; at Peralada, 307; with the Infante Alfonso in a sortie, 309–10; leaves Peralada, 313; at Gerona, 322; warns Alfonso III of the French preparations for war, 392; at the tournament at Figueras, 398; besieges Cagliari, 661.
Rocaberti, Pedro de, archbishop of Tarragona, 645.
Rocafort, Berenguer de, lxvi; lxvii; lxix; lxx; 483; 485; at Constantinople, 499; in Chios, 499; goes to Ani, 499; at Ephesus, 500; seneschal of the Grand Company, 501; betrothed to the daughter of Roger de Flor, 501; at the battle of the Iron Gate, 502; seneschal in Gallipoli, 512; 514; 521; at Rodosto and Panido, 530; destroys the shipping at Lestanayre, 532; differences of with Entenza, 545; popularity of, with the Grand Company, 545; besieges Nona, 546; refusal of, to accept Ferrando as representative of Fadrique I, 548 *et seq.*; order of the march of, to Salonica, 553; affray between the company of, and Entenza's, 555; 556; orders Garcia Gomez to be executed, 565; parleys with Chépoi, 566; swears fealty to Charles of Valois, 566; insubordination of, 566; alienates the Grand Company, 572; delivered to Chépoi

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

by the Grand Company, 573; starved to death by Robert I, 574.
Rocafort, Esberto, shares his brother Berenguer's fate, 573–4.
Roche, de la, Guillaume, 584.
Roche, de la, Guy II, lxx; visit of Muntaner to, 568; sends the Infante Ferrando to Naples, 571; knighted by Bonifazio de Verona, 584 *et seq.*; marriage of, 630; death of, 631.
Rodosto, 515; sacked by the Grand Company, 527.
Roger II of Sicily, 80 note.
Romaset, juglar, at the coronation of Alfonso IV, 731.
Romania, conquered by the Grand Company, 526.
Romey, 202 note.
Rosas, battle of, 331.
Rosinyoll, Bernardo, Queen Violante at the house of, 331.

Saguardia, Ponce de, procurator in Mallorca, 362; enters the Order of the Templars, 377; at Perpignan, 37
Saint Omer, castle of, Ferrando a prisoner in the, 564, 564 note; Muntaner at the, 568–9.
Salamandrana, Bonifazio de, liv; lx; on a mission to Jaime II, 398; negotiates an interview between Jaime II and Edward I, 403; at Oloron, 404–5; sent for by the Pope, 436; in Paris, 437; in Catalonia, 438; end of the negotiations of, 439.
Salavert, 240, 240 note; 446.
Salerno, Duke of, *see* Charles II.
Salerno, Duke of, son of Charles II, lxiv; 479.
Salona, widow of the Duke of, married to Roger Deslaur, 578.
Saluça, Felipe de, procurator-general of Sardinia, 676–7.
San Feliú, cruelty of the French at, 320; 323; flight of the French from, 346.
San Quirico, Philip III at, 307; monastery of, endowed at Peralada, 314.
Sancha, wife of Robert I, 616 note; present at the siege of Trapani, 622; signs a truce, 624.
Sanchez, Nuño, bequeaths Conflans to Jaime I, 25.
Sancho IV of Castile, xlii; xlviii; l; liii; lvii; lix; sworn heir to the crown, 100; interview of, with Pedro III, 100–1; in Aragon, 110; succeeds to the throne, 111; interview of, with Pedro at Ariza, 245; promises of, to Pedro, 246; breaks his promises, 299; challenged by Alfonso III, 388; territory of, invaded by Alfonso, 390–1; sues for peace, 427; concludes peace, 428; entertains Jaime II at Soria, 429; at Calatayud, 429; death of, 439.
Sancho I of Mallorca, lxxvi; 32; 648; death of, 678–9; testament of, 678–9.
Sancho, Infante, son of Jaime I of Aragon, archbishop of Toledo, 32; 32 note.
Sancho, Infante, son of Pedro III, lxiv; 477.
Santas Creus, Royal tombs at 369, 709; obsequies of Pedro III at, 382.
Saracens, cannot make war in winter, 93; at Pica Baralla, 130–1; 136.
Saragossa, feast at, 384; council at, 385 *et seq.*; coronation of Alfonso IV at, 714 *et seq.*
Sardinia, lx; lxxiv; lxxv; bestowed on Jaime II, 438; division of, 661 note; 676–7.
Sarriá, Berenguer de, lii; liii; lxxiv; 372; ravages the coast of Italy, 373–375; ravages Calabria, 376; at Perpignan, 439–40; 449; in Sicily, 617; defends Palermo against King Robert, 618; 623; takes Castellamare, 624.
Sarriá, Vidal de, 372.
Sassari, surrenders to the Infante Alfonso, 661–663.
Savoy, Amadeo Count of, 31 note.
Sciacca, siege of, by Charles of Valois, 476, 479.
Serignan, 378 *et seq.*
Serrá, Count de la, desertion of King Manfred by, 87.
Sicilian Vespers, the, 105, 105 note, 106.
Sicily, prosperity of, under Jaime I, 372; war renewed in, 456.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Sischar, G., at Gallipoli, 514; sent to Constantinople, 515; murdered at Rodosto, 516–7.
Sixena, Order of, 708.
Spinola, Antonio, lxix; offers his services to Andronicus II, 536; challenges the Grand Company, 536–7; attacks Gallipoli, 538–9; death of, 541.
Spoli, 563, 563 note.
Squilace, count, *see* Ampurias, Uguete.
Stampace, 695; battle of, 696–7; destruction of, 697.
Swift, F. D., notes, pp. 17, 71, 565, 674
Syracuse, 470.

Tagliacozzo, lxii; battle of, 87.
Taranto, Prince of, son of Charles of Anjou, *see* Charles II.
Taranto, Prince of, son Charles II, prisoner at Barcelona, 295; sent to Sicily, 459; disobedience of, 460; lands at Trapani, 461; at the battle of Mazzara, 461–2; prisoner at Cefalú, 464.
Tarascon, conference at, 419–20.
Tari, Juan, 563; friendship of, with Muntaner, 567–8; 571.
Tarragona, archbishop of, 274, 275; at Pedro III's death-bed, 365; *see* Olivella.
Tartars, number and customs of the, 73.
Termini, landing of Charles of Valois at, 476.
Termini, Mateo de, lxiv; accompanies Queen Costanza to Palermo, 237; reads the King's letter in public, 241; at Calatabellota, 477; Muntaner's regret at the death of, 686.
Thasos, 561.
Tlemcen, the King of, 49; 74; sends messengers with presents to the coronation of Alfonso IV, 713.
Tolmetta, 394.
Torre del Campo, battle of, 32 note.
Tortosa, lix, great stores of wheat and oats at, 111; factions at, suppressed by Jaime II, 431.
Toulouse, xlii; interview at, 94–5.
Tous, G. de, escapes from Adrianople, 513.
Trapani, xliii to xlv; 461; siege of, 618–9.
Troy, story of Paris and Arena of, 511; Artaqui and Adramyti gates of.
Tunis, the King of, 49; 75 *et seq.*; 292–3.
Turcopoles, lxviii; 513, 513 note; return of the, from Greece, 578–9.
Turks, the, lxiv to lxvi; reason of the conquests of, 85; in Minorca, 414; conquests of, in Asia Minor, 481, 488; rule of, in Anatolia, 488; attempt of, to take Artaqui, 489–90; defeat of, by Roger de Flor, 490–1; defeated at Cesa, Tiu, and Mondexia, 496–7; defeat of, at Tyre, 498; 500; at Alia, 501; defeat of, at Ani and at the Iron Gate, 501–2; cleared out of Anatolia, 503; re-conquer Anatolia, 543; great numbers of, join the Grand Company, 544; return of, to Gallipoli, 578–9.
Tyre, 497–8.

Urban IV, xli; 81.
Urgel, Count of, 309.

Vinsauf, Geoffroy de, 69 note.
Vaisete, 41 note.
Valencia, city of, Jaime II crowned at, 427.
Valencia, kingdom of, conquest of the, 23 *et seq.*; rebellion of the Moors of the, 26; 44, 44 note; 393.
Valguarnera, Simon de, at Sciacca, 476–7; at Trapani, 618; 681 *et seq.*
Valois, Charles of, xlvii; l; lx; lxi; lxiii; lxiv; at Toulouse, 221; hostility of, towards the House of Aragon, 247; crowned King of Aragon by the Pope, 248; nicknamed King of the Hat, 248; in Roussillon, 301; exchanges his claim to Aragon for the Duchy of Anjou, 437–8; in Sicily, 465–6; lands at Termini, 476; besieges Sciacca, 476; concludes peace with Fadrique I, 478; claim of, to the Eastern Empire, 563, 563 note.

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Vassayll, Frey Sergeant, lxii; winters at Brindisi, 467–8; love of, for Roger de Flor, 468.
Venice, value of the ducat of, 505; commune of, witness for the Grand Company, 515.
Ventayola, Berenguer de, 521; 335.
Vilanova, Arnaldo de, sent for in Jaime I's last illness, 363, 363 note.
Vilanova, Galceran de, Gesta of, 420.
Vilanova, Simon de, death of Philip III at the house of, 351.
Vilaragut, Berenguer de, lx; at Stilaro, 264; successes of, against Charles I, 266; raids of, 266–7; leaves Sicily, 444–5; besieged in Trapani, 618.
Villani, notes, pp. 30, 140, 663.
Villeneuve, Hugo de; 652 note.
Violante, wife of Alfonso X; xlii; marriage of, 17, 17 note; 56; journey of, to the Council of Lyons, 57, 61; takes the Infantes de la Cerda to Aragon, 101.
Violante, first wife of Robert I of Sicily, 31.
Virgili, surrenders Sicilian towns to Duke Robert, 455–6.
Vlachia, Angelo, Despot of, defies Walter de Brienne, 575–6; 581.
Vlachia, Despotate of, 584; 626.

Xanxis, Tozet de, governor of the castle of Narbonne, 270.
Ximelech, joins the Grand Company, 543.

Zaccaria, Ticino, appeals to Muntaner for help, 559; takes Fogliari, 560; at Thasos, 561; hands over the castle of Thasos to Muntaner, 562.
Zenetas, 36 note.

ERRATUM.

Page liv. *For* 'Oleron' *read* 'Oloron.'

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

LONDON:

PRINTED AT THE BEDFORD PRESS, 20 AND 21, BEDFORDBURY, W.C.

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google
Original from CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google
Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google
Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google
Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Digitized by Google

Original from
CORNELL UNIVERSITY